

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/



William Collins, Sons, & Co's Educational Works.

Antiv

NEW CODE PROGRESSIVE READERS:

AN ENTIRELY NEW SERIES OF READING BOOKS.

Illustrated by DALZIEL PROTHERS.

경우 그 그 그 그 그는 그 그 그렇게 하는 점점점점 하는 사람들이 되었다. 그 전에 모든 그리고 하는 것이 되었다면 하다.	- 3	S.	D.
FIRST PRIMER, 32 pp., Fcap. 8vo, sewed, 1d; cloth, .		0	2
SECOND PRIMER, 64 pp., Fcap. 8vo, sewed, 2d; cloth, .		0	3
FIRST STANDARD, 90 pp., Fcap. 8vo, flush, 4d; cloth, .		0	5
SECOND STANDARD, 124 pp., Fcap. 8vo, flush, 6d; cloth,		0	7
THIRD STANDARD, 174 pp., Ex. Fcap. 8vo, cloth,		0	9
FOURTH STANDARD, 208 pp., Ex. Fcap. 8vo, cloth, .		1	0
FIFTH STANDARD, 288 pp., Ex. Fcap. 8vo, cloth,		1	3
SIXTH STANDARD (for Boys), 352 pp., Ex. Fcap. 8vo, cloth,		1	6
SIXTH STANDARD (for Girls), 352 pp., Ex. Fcap. 8vo, cloth,		1	6
S:XTH STANDARD (for Mixed Classes), 480 pp., Ex. Fcap., cl.		2	0

EXADA DEVING BUOKS

OUTLINES OF NATURAL HISTORY. By Dr. A. H. Dick. 192 pp.,			EXIKA READING BOOKS.
to the 19th Centuries. Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	6	1	Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth,
EMINENT ENGLISH WRITERS. By W. LAWSON. Fcap. 8vo,cl., 1 OUTLINES OF NATURAL HISTORY. By Dr. A. H. Dick. 192 pp.,	ò	1	
	6		EMINENT ENGLISH WRITERS. By W. LAWSON. Fcap. 8vo,cl.,
Illustrated, Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	0	1	OUTLINES OF NATURAL HISTORY. By Dr. A. H. Dick. 192 pp., Illustrated, Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth,
OUTLINES OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY. By B. SIMPSON, LON-	0	1	OUTLINES OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY. By B. SIMPSON, LOn-
OUTLINES OF DOMESTIC ECONOMY FOR GIRLS. By J. HASSELL,	٦	-	
London. 150 pp., Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 1)	1	London. 150 pp., Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth,
OUTLINES OF POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR SCHOOLS. By Dr. A. H. DICK. 160 pp., Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 1	0	1	H. Dick. 160 pp., Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth,
ELOCUTION IN THEORY AND PRACTICE. By J. A. Mair.	d	4	
256 pp., Extra Feap. 8vo, cloth, BIBLE QUESTIONS, with Notes, Illustrative Lessons, &c. By			
Thomas Morrison, M.A. Fcap. 8vo, cloth,)	1	

HISTORY

HISTORY OF ENGLAND, for Junior Classes LL.D., London. Map and Illustration HISTORY OF SCOTLAND, for Junior Cla Illustrations, 192 pp., Fcap. 8vo HISTORY OF GREECE, By L.ZON, SCH HISTORY OF ROME. By L. SCHM HISTORY OF FRANCE. By SUTH HISTORY OF INDIA. By LANDMARKS OF GENER Extra Fcap. Svo, c OLD TESTAMENT HIS NEW TESTAMEN

William Collins, Sons, & Co.'s Educational Works

ARITHMETIC.	5.	D
FIRST LESSONS IN ARITHMETIC, 36 pp., 18mo,	0	3
SYSTEM OF PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC, 18mo, cloth,	0	9
THE STANDARD ARITHMETIC, Ex. Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	1	0
COMPLETE SYSTEM OF ARITHMETIC, 192 pp., 12mo, cloth,	. 1	(
ARITHMETIC, for Higher and Middle Classs Schools. By HENRY	_	_
EVERS, LL.D. Post 8vo, cloth.	2	(
Long Addition Exercises, as Required by Candidates for		_
Civil Service Examinations. By Henry Evers, LL.D., . ELEMENTS OF ALGEBRA, 48 pp., 12mo, cloth,	0	•
ALGEBRA, to Quadratic Equations. By E. Atkins. Post 8vo, cl.	0	0
ELEMENTS AND PRACTICE OF ALGEBRA. By J. LOUDON, M.A.	•	•
277 pp., Feap. 8vo, cloth,	2	6
ALGEBRA, for Middle and Higher Class Schools. By DAVID	_	٠
MUNN Fran Svo. cloth	2	6
EUCLID. Books I. to III. By E. ATKINS. Post Svo. cloth.	ī	ã
EUCLID, Books I. to III. By E. ATRINS. Post 8vo, cloth, EUCLID'S ELEMENTS, Books I. to VI., 12mo, cloth,	1	6
ELEMENTS OF EUCLID, adapted to Modern Methods in Geometry.	•	_
By JAMES BRYCE, LL.D., and DAVID MUNN. Post 8vo, cl.,	2	6
MENSURATION, for Junior Classes. By Rev. H. LEWIS. Fcap. 8vo.	1	0
METRIC SYSTEM OF WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES, 48 pp., cloth,	0	3
BOOKKEEPING, Single and Double Entry. By DR. BRYCE,	_	
Post, 8vo, cloth,	I	6
MUSIC.		
THE SINGING CLASS BOOK, with Exercises, By O. J. STIMPSON,		
168 pp., Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	_	_
EXERCISES FROM SINGING CLASS BOOK, 152 pp., Feap. 8vo, cl.,	,	Ţ
SCHOOL SONGS, 24 Simple Melodies, Old Notation. Fear 800	Ų	*
SCHOOL SONGS, 24 Simple Melodies, Sol-fa Notation, Frances	1	3
그 그 그 이번 이번 이번 사람들이 모르고 하고 있다면 하는데 하는데 이번 때문에 되었다면 되었다.	•	į
CLASSICAL SERI		
LATIN PRIMER, FCAP. 8vo, cloth,	4	
LATIN REDUKETE, With Copious Exercises		í
Larry Dinacres, with E- tory Notes:	•	ì
Clarate, vith Imitative Notes,	•	
Ber John V John John J. C.		
	•	·
	•	
/- /-		
2199		
The same of the sa		
The same of the sa		
67.		
Prove Louis	7	_
per en datu	Ŧ	
10.5	7	
150	_	•



Collins' School Series.

HISTORY

OF

THE BRITISH EMPIRE.

With Coloured Mays und Illustrations.

WITH QUESTIONS AND COPIOUS INDEX.

APPLICATIONS

ODLE

LONDON AND GLASGOW: WILLIAM COLLINS, SONS, & COMPANY.

226. k. 413.

••••• •••• •

•••

PREFACE.

This Work treats of British History from the Roman Invasion to the present time. It is divided into Eight Periods — the Roman, Saxon, Norman, Plantagenet, Lancaster and York, Tudor, Stuart, and Brunswick. Chapters on the Social Life, Manners and Customs of the different Periods, have also been given, which, it is hoped, will be found both interesting and instructive. There have also been added at the close of each Period a Chronological Summary of the Principal Events, a List of the Battles, Sieges, and Treaties, together with a short Biographical Sketch of the leading Authors of the Period. At the same time, each reign is followed by a Summary, which will enable the pupil all the more easily to remember the principal events that have been recorded. A copious List of Questions, chiefly intended as a test of home preparation work, is also given after each reign.

An intimate acquaintance with the Historical Maps and Chronological and Genealogical Tables will greatly facilitate the progress of the pupil, and, at the same time, render his knowledge of the subject more extensive and accurate.

As a fresh contribution to our present Historical School Literature, this Work, it is believed, will be found quite sufficient to ensure a Pass in History, whether in connection with the Government, University, or Civil Service Examinations.

For easy reference, the most important events have been printed in Clarendon type, and, in order to render the Work all the more complete, a carefully prepared General Index has been added.

In conclusion, the writer begs to acknowledge his obligations to the various authorities he has consulted, and from whom he has received many valuable suggestions.

November, 1877.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER,			PAGE 9
	•	•	
THE ROMAN PERIOR. 55—A.D. 420,	DD.	•	13
THE SAXON PERIO	D.		
CHAPTER I.			
The Saxon Settlements,	•		25
CHAPTER II. Anglo-Saxon Kings.—A.D. 827-901,	,		29
CHAPTER III.		•	
Anglo-Saxon Kings (Continued)901-1016	, ,		. 33
CHAPTER IV. England under the Danes.—1016-1042, .	,		36
CHAPTER V. Restoration of the Saxon Line.—1042-1066	3 , .		39
CHAPTER VI. Political and Social Condition of the Anglo	o Saxor	ns, .	47
THE NORMAN PER	IOD.		
CHAPTER I.			
William I. (The Conqueror).—1066-1087,	,		63
CHAPTER II. William II. (Rufus).—1087-1100,			72
CHAPTER III, Henry I. (Beauclerc).—1100-1135,	,		77
CHAPTER IV. Stephen (of Blois).—1135-1144,			81
CHAPTER V.			. 85

THE PLANTAGENET	PERIC	D.		
CHAPTER I. Henry II. (Plantagenet),		•	•	PAGE 92
CHAPTER II. Richard I. (Cœur De Lion).—1189-1199,	•			99
CHAPTER III. John (Lackland).—1199-1216, .	•	•		103
CHAPTER IV. Henry III. (Winchester).—1216-1272,			•	108
CHAPTER V. Edward I. (Longshanks).—1272-1307,		•	•	113
CHAPTER VI. Edward II. (Cærnarvon).—1307-1327,	•	.		116
CHAPTER VII. Edward III. (Windsor).—1327-1377,	•	•		120
CHAPTER VIII Richard II. (Bordeaux).—1377-1399,	•	•		126
CHAPTER IX. Social Life in the time of the Plantagene	ts,	•		132
HOUSE OF LANCA	omad.			
	STER.			
CHAPTER I. Henry IV. (Bolingbroke).—1399-1413,		•		142
CHAPTER II. Henry V. (Monmouth).—1413-1422,				146
CHAPTER III. Henry VI. (Windsor).—1422, deposed 14	161,		•	150
HOUSE OF YOR	k.			
CHAPTER I.				
Figure 1 TV 1461 1482			_	156

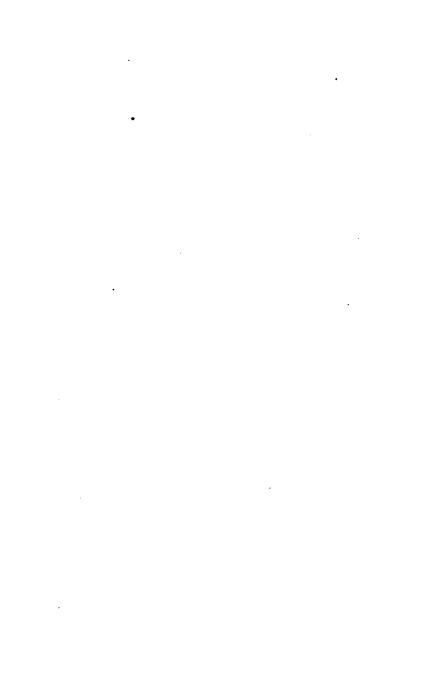
CONTENTS.	1	į

CHAPTER II. Edward V.—April 1483-June 1483,		PAGE 161
CHAPTER III. Richard III. (Crookback).—1483-1485,		163
CHAPTER IV. Social Life in the Lancaster and York Period, .	•:	166
HOUSE OF TUDOR.		
CHAPTER I. Henry VII.—1485-1509,	•	175
CHAPTER II. Henry VIII.—1509-1547,		182
CHAPTER III. Edward VI.—1547-1553,		193
CHAPTER IV		197
CHAPTER V. Elizabeth.—1558-1603,	•	202
CHAPTER VI. Social Life of the Tudor Period,	•	209
HOUSE OF STUART (in England).		
CHAPTER I. James I.—1603-1625,	•	255
CHAPTER II. Charles I.—1625-1640,		261
CHAPTER III. The Commonwealth and Protectorate.—1649-1660,		272
CHAPTER IV.		
RESTORATION OF THE STUART DYNASTY.		
Charles II. —1660-1685,	•	<i>318</i>

CONTENTS.

,	CHAPT	ER V				PAGE
James II.—1685-1688,	•	•	•	•	•	288
	CHAPT	ER V	I.			
William and Mary.—16			•		•	294
William alone.—1694-1	702,	•	•	•	•	298
	CHAPT	ER VI	II.			
Anne.—1702-1714, .	•	•	•	•	•	301
1	CHAPTE	R VI	II.			
Social Life of the Stuar	t Period,	•		•		308
			_			
HOUS	E OF 1			K.		
George I.—1714-1727,	CHAP?	cer i	•			331
George 1.—1/14-1/2/,	•		•	•	•	991
George II.—1727-1760.	CHAPI	ER I	[.			337
George 11.—1727-1700,	•	· 	•	•	•	901
George III 1760-1820	CHAPT	ER II	I.	•-		348
G001g0 1111700-1020	•	•		•	•	010
Commo III (Continued)	CHAPI		٧.			355
George III. (Continued)	-	•	•	•	•	999
G 777 (O () 70	CHAPT		.			001
George III. (Continued)			•	•	•	361
G 777 1000 1000	CHAPT	ER V	I.			909
George IV.—1820-1830	•	· 🥦	•	•	•	383
317:11: T37 1000 100	CHAPT	ER V	II.			200
William IV.—1830-183	·	•	•	•	•	388
	CHAPTI	er vi	Π.			909
Victoria.—1837, .	•	•	•	•	•	393
Curmor on Corosses	AND FOR	DIGIT I	Tunama			406
SKETCH OF COLONIAL		MUN I	u v en 18	, •	•	
THE BRITISH CONSTITU	TION,	•	•	•	•	425
Index,		•				429





HISTORY

OI

THE BRITISH EMPIRE.

PART FIRST.

INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER

Condition of the Early Inhabitants.

It is to the Romans we are indebted for the knowledge we possess of the early history of Britain. According to Julius Cæsar, the original inhabitants of the island were the Gauls, or Celts, who had passed over to Britain from the Continent of Europe. The tribes who inhabited the

south and south-eastern coasts were more advanced in civilization than those in the interior parts of the country. The former had some knowledge of agriculture, and traded with merchants from Gaul, in corn, cattle, lead, and tin. They wore a dress of their own manufacture, which consisted of a square mantle of various colours, covering a vest and trowsers fastened round the waist with a belt. Their houses were huts of a circular



BRITISH HOUSE.

houses were huts of a circular shape, built chiefly of wood, and covered on the top with straw; an opening was made in the centre of the roof for the twofold purpose of admitting the light and letting out the smoke.

A group of such dwellings formed a town, which was commonly situated in a wood or forest, and surrounded with a high bank and a ditch to protect the natives and their cattle from the incursions of their enemies. the other Britons, they painted their bodies with a blue dye procured from a plant called woad, to make them look more terrible in war; their bodies were also tattooed like the modern New Zealanders, and among the northern Britons this custom continued till the fifth century. people in the interior part of the country did not cultivate the land; they subsisted chiefly on the milk and flesh of their flocks, or on the animals they killed in the chase. They sheltered themselves in caves, or in the midst of those dense forests which covered so large a portion of the country. They clothed themselves with the skins of wild beasts, but in summer they had almost no clothing. and their arms and legs were always naked.

The ancient Britons were a brave, hardy, and warlike



BRITISH CHARIOT.

people. Their chief weapons were shields, spears, and javelins; and they fought from chariots having short scythes fastened to the end of the axle. War was their almost daily occupation; and distinction in arms formed the chief object of their ambition.

The population was divided into several tribes, each of which was governed by an independent prince. It was only in times of great emergency that the various states would unite to appoint a leader or commander-in-chief, who, by common consent, was entrusted with the power of making peace or declaring war.

Religion of the Ancient Britons.

The religion of the ancient inhabitants of Britain was a species of superstition termed Druidism. All matters connected with this system of religious belief, were under

the direction of an order of priests called Druids, who exercised an almost unlimited power over the minds and bodies of their countrymen. Druidism consisted of two sets of doctrines—the one intended for the initiated, the other prepared and designed to suit the ignorance and superstition of the people. The doctrines held sacred by the priests were those which inculcate a belief in the existence of a Supreme Being, the immortality of the soul, the end of the world, and a future state of reward and punishment. The multitude were taught the worship of numerous false gods, and to believe in the transmigration of the soul after death. The souls of the wicked were believed to do penance in the bodies of beasts or reptiles, and to be then permitted to resume the form of To this doctrine the Romans attributed their contempt of death. The sun, moon, and stars were regarded as superior deities; but there were also many inferior ones, whose residences were supposed to be in rivers, trees, and mountains.

There were three orders of Druids—the Druids-Proper, the Vates, and the Bards. The first of these performed all public and private sacrifices, administered the laws, and instructed and judged the people; the second were the musicians and poets, who composed sacred songs in honour of the gods, and were believed to be endowed with prophetic powers; the third were the historical and genealogical poets, who accompanied their poetical effusions on the harp, and sung in stirring strains the deeds of their heroes and princes. These three classes were under the government of a high-priest, or Arch-Druid, who was chosen from the rest of the priesthood by a majority of votes.

The Druids chose groves of oak trees for their residence and the performance of their religious rites. Their temples were of rude construction, and consisted of a circular row of huge stones, ruins of which are still to be seen in different parts of England, Scotland, Ireland, and Wales. The most famous of these is at Stonehenge, in Wiltshire; and there is another of considerable

dimensions at Stennes, in the Orkney Islands. Within such enclosures, criminals and prisoners taken in war were sacrificed to appease the wrath of their heathen gods.



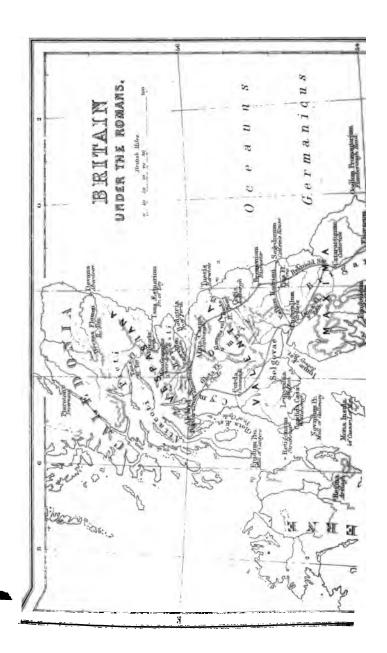
STONEHENGE.

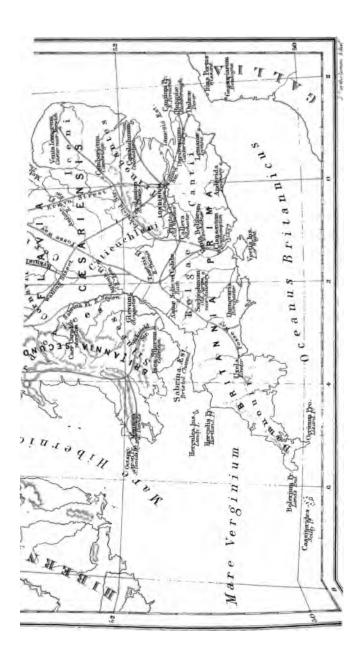
The mistletoe, when found growing on the oak, was held in great veneration by the Druids. On New Year's Day, which was then in the month of March, the Arch-Druid, clothed in a white garment, ascended the tree, and with a golden knife cut down the branch, while other priests who stood on the ground received it in a white cloth as it fell. Then two white bulls were offered in sacrifice, hymns were sung, and prayers said to the gods, that the mistletoe just severed from the tree might prove efficacious in the hands of the priests against poison and disease. Relics of ancient Druidism still exist in different parts of the British Islands. At Christmas many houses are ornamented with the mistletoe, and the custom, no doubt, arose from the use made of that plant by the ancient Britons.

The Romans, after the conquest of Britain, jealous of the powerful influence possessed by the Druids, advanced against them and spared neither their priests nor their altars. The island of Anglesea, one of the chief seats of Druidical power, was all but destroyed by the Roman general, Suetonius Paulinus, A.D. 61. 137 SS-,361351155

;

1







THE ROMAN PERIOD.

B.C. 55-A.D. 420.

Arrival of Julius Cesar. Cæsar Returns to Gaul. Revisits Britain. His Final Departure. Caractacus. Boadicea.

Julius Agricola. Roman Walls. Division of Britain into Picts and Scots. Roman Provinces. Government of the Ro- Results of the Roman In-

| Britain Independent. Roman Power Restored. Romans Leave Britain. vasion.

The Arrival of Julius Cæsar.

JULIUS CÆSAR, having completed the conquest of Gaul, resolved to invade Britain, for the purpose of adding it also to the dominion of Rome. After spending some time in obtaining information from the merchants of Gaul, respecting the new enemies he had to encounter, he embarked with an army of about Aug. 26. 12,000 men on board 80 vessels. In a few hours he reached the neighbourhood of Dover; but as the cliffs and rocks were covered with armed men prepared to dispute his landing, he sailed about seven miles northward along the coast, where he found an open and level This was near Deal, and here the Britons offered a gallant resistance to the invaders; but the well-disciplined legions of the Romans prevailed, and after a severe engagement the savage warriors were driven back, and the whole of Cæsar's army landed. At this period the real history of Britain begins.

Cosar Returns to Gaul—Revisits Britain—His Final Departure.

The Romans encamped for the first time in Britain on the shores of the Isle of Thanet; but a storm having shattered a portion of the fleet, Cæsar deemed it wise to delay further operations till next spring. He accordingly returned to Gaul, after an absence of about three weeks.

The following spring, Cæsar again set sail for Britain. He landed with a greater force at the same place where he had previously disembarked. On this occasion no enemy appeared to offer immediate resistance, and Cæsar was permitted, without opposition, to make a second encampment on the shores of Kent. It was not long, however, before he had to contend with the Britons who had united to arrest his progress, under Cassivellaunus, a brave and patriotic prince. Their efforts, notwithstanding the valour and skill of their leader, were In every action Cassivellaunus was defeated, unavailing. and, like the rest of the southern princes, was ultimately compelled to surrender Cæsar, having accepted hostages, and fixed the amount of annual tribute, returned to Gaul with all his forces and numerous captives, after having spent six months in the island.

Caractacus—Boadicea.

After the departure of Cæsar, Britain remained free from foreign aggression for nearly a hundred years; and in the interval, the people who dwelt in the parts nearest to Gaul made considerable progress in civilization. At length the Emperor Claudius sent Aulus Plautius at the head of an expedition to invade the island. The Emperor himself shortly afterwards followed, and received the submission of several of the tribes south of the Thames. Caractacus, a British prince, offered for many years a brave resistance to the Romans; but at the battle of Caer-Caradoc in Shropshire, he was defeated and sent captive to Rome with his wife and On his arrival he was led in triumph through the streets, and as he gazed on the splendid buildings of the imperial capital, he exclaimed, "Alas! is it possible, that a people possessed of such magnificence at home, can envy me a humble hovel in Britain?" The noble-minded captive was set at liberty by order of Claudius.

In the reign of the Emperor Nero, Boadicea, Queen of the Iceni,* was taken and beaten with rods by the *The people of Norfolk, Suffolk, Cambridge, and Huntingdon.

Roman soldiers. Hearing of the wrongs done toucheir heroic Queen, the Britons broke out into open rebellion. Headed by Boadicea, they attacked and defeated the Romans in several engagements; London, already a flourishing colony, was burned to the ground, its inhabitants massacred, and vast numbers of Roman citizens perished in the general slaughter. But this cruelty was speedily avenged by Suetonius, who, in a great and decisive battle near King's Cross, London, completely routed the army of Boadicea: eighty thousand Britons are said to have perished, and the warrior Queen, fearing lest she might fall into the hands of the victor, put an end to her life by poison.

Julius Agricola-Roman Walls.

The general who completed the subjugation of the island and finally established the Roman power in Britain, was Julius Agricola. He led his forces into the northern part of the country, and extended the influence of Rome as far as the Firths of Forth and Clyde. He gained a decisive victory over the Caledonians, under a chief named Galgacus. The scene of this battle is generally supposed to have been near Ardoch, in Perthshire. During his administration a chain of forts was raised between the Solway and the Tyne, and another between the Forth and the Clyde. A wall was afterwards erected by the Emperor Adrian, nearly in a

line with the first chain of forts built by Agricola, the ruins of which are called the Picts' Wall. Lollius Urbicus raised a similar fortification from the Forth to the Clyde, which was called the Wall of Antoninus, but which is now commonly designated Grime, or Graham's Dyke—a name applied to several other ramparts in



D

England.* Severus, the most warlike of all the Roman Emperors, after having driven back the Caledonians, ordered his celebrated rampart to be erected near to that of Adrian. In the following year he died at York.

The Romans made several attempts to subdue the Caledonians; and for that purpose penetrated, it is believed, as far north as the shores of the Moray Firth, as in that part of Scotland there still exist the remains of several Roman camps and roads, together with other relies of Roman art.

Division of Britain into Roman Provinces—Government of the Romans.

The country being thus conquered by the Romans, was afterwards divided into five provinces.

- 1. Britannia Prima, south of the Thames and the Bristol Channel.
- Britannia Secunda, which included the whole of Wales, and the counties west of the Severn and Dee.
- 3. Flavia Cosariensis, the midland counties from the Humber to the Thames.
- 4. Maxima Cæsariensis, the counties from the Mersey and Humber to the Wall of Severus.
- 5. Valentia, that part of Scotland south of the Wall of Antoninus,†

The government of the first three provinces was entrusted to presidents; the two latter were ruled by men of consular rank; and over all was an officer named Vicarius, who resided at York. Besides these there were three military officers: the Count of the Saxon Shore,

* Grime, in the Celtic language, signifies great or powerful.

⁺ The country extending north from the Wall of Antoninus, was called *Veepasiana* or *Caledonia*, but as this part was never conquered by the Romans, it cannot be regarded as one of their provinces.

whose duty it was to guard the coasts extending from Norfolk to Cornwall; the Duke of Britain, who had charge of the wall of Severus, and also command of the garrisons in the northern parts of the island; and the Count of Britain, who had charge of the west and southern districts.

Britain Independent—Roman Power Restored—Picts and Scots—Romans leave Britain.

For about eighty years from the death of Severus, no event of importance occurred in Britain; but in the reign of Diocletian, new enemies began to infest the eastern These were the Saxons who came from the opposite shores of Germany. The Emperor appointed Carausius, an expert and able commander, to repel the invaders; but he permitted them to land and ravage the country, and then seized upon the booty they had taken, and appropriated it to his own use. Carausius, being informed that an order had been issued to put him to death, usurped the imperial dignity, and resolutely maintained it for seven years, when he was slain by an associate named Allectus, who immediately assumed the sovereignty, and held it for three years. Constantius, having quelled the rebellion and scattered the forces of the usurper, restored Britain to the Roman Empire. He married a British A.D. 296. lady, and was the last Emperor who resided in the island. He died at York, and was succeeded by his son, Constantine the Great. Shortly after his accession, the country was disturbed by the northern tribes, who, at this time, began to be known by the names of Picts and Scots. The former are supposed to have been a tribe of the ancient Britons, and the latter came originally from Ireland, and settled along the western shores of Scotland. These fierce tribes, uniting together, invaded the southern provinces, and laid waste and oppressed the country during a long series of years.

The chain of northern forts was strong and well planned, but it was equally necessary to have brave and skilful

defenders. The Britons, however, had been so long in the habit of relying upon the Romans for all military science that they had lost much of their ancient valour, and had become utterly incapable of contending successfully with the fierce barbarians of the north. They sent to Rome and entreated assistance. A legion was immediately sent which repelled the invaders, many of whom were slain, and those who escaped fled beyond the confines of Britain. The Roman soldiers had scarcely left when the northern barbarians, ever on the watch, again assembled in vast numbers, and assailed the fortifications. The Britons, in their extremity, once more despatched messengers to Rome supplicating aid. Their cry for help was listened to, and an expedition sent which again delivered the Britons from their barbarous neighbours. This was the last detachment of troops ever sent by Rome to Britain. It was commanded by Gallio of Ravenna, who assembled the British chiefs and informed them that, as Rome required all her soldiers at home, they must henceforth rely upon their own resources and no longer depend on Rome for aid. Before taking their final departure, the Romans repaired the wall of Severus, erected forts, and supplied the natives with numerous warlike weapons, and exhorted them to defend themselves with perseverance and valour. this time (A.D. 420) the Roman Empire in Britain ceased, four hundred and seventy-five years after the arrival of Julius Cæsar on its shores.

Results of the Roman Invasion.

The condition of Britain was now altogether different from what it was when the Romans first landed on its shores. Five great roads traversed the country, and along their course or in their immediate neighbourhood were erected many beautiful towns, adorned with temples, palaces, theatres, and statues. In the construction of these, the Britons were greatly encouraged and assisted by Agricola, who also took pains to have the sons of the chiefs instructed in literature and science. Many of the

towns established by the Romans enjoyed the privilege of electing their own rulers or magistrates, and enacting their own laws, so that their municipal usages laid the foundation of our local system of self-government. ancient Britons had been taught the use of money; they had several coins, many of which have been preserved, and others have occasionally been discovered buried in the ground. There have also been found beautiful specimens of articles used in personal decoration, which prove that many of the inhabitants lived in a style of elegance and luxury. But, perhaps, the most interesting and valuable of all the Roman remains are the sepulchral urns which indicate the neighbourhood of towns, of which, perhaps, no other traces now exist.

Before the Romans left Britain, agriculture was well understood and extensively practised. Corn was grown in such abundance that immense quantities were exported to various parts of the Continent. But the most memorable, and at the same time the most important, event of the Roman period, was the introduction of Christianity into Britain, about the close of the first century. Some are of opinion that Roman soldiers, who had already become converts to the Christian faith, were the means of diffusing the light of the Gospel in our island; while others say that it was communicated by St. Peter or St. Paul. Little, however, is known regarding its early progress; but in the beginning of the fourth century, at the time of the Diocletian persecution, the Christian population of Britain had largely increased, and many of the inhabitants had contributed to swell the noble army of martyrs. When the Romans took their departure from the island, the religion of Christ was very generally professed by the people.

SUMMARY

OF

THE ROMAN PERIOD.

Julius Cosar first landed in Britain B.C. 55, and, having driven back the Britons, encamped on the shores of the Isle of Thanet. He then returned to Gaul, but came back to Britain the following year. He defeated the Britons under Cassivellaunus, and shortly after withdrew with all his forces from the island. Ninety-eight years passed away ere the Romans again invaded Britain. The Emperor Claudius sent Aulus Plautius, A.D. 43. Caractacus was defeated at Caer-Caradoc, and sent captive to Rome. Boadicea defeated the Romans in several engagements, but at the battle of King's Cross her army was completely routed. She afterwards poisoned herself, A.D. 61. Julius Agricola conquered nearly the whole of the island. He defeated Galgacus, a Caledonian chief, A.D. 84, and erected a chain of forts between the Solway and the Tyne, and another between the Forth and Clyde. Several other ramparts were raised, the principal of which were Adrian's wall, the wall of Antoninus, and the celebrated rampart of Severus.

The Romans divided that portion of Britain which they conquered into five provinces, Britannia Prima, Britannia Secunda, Flavia Cæsariensis, Maxima Cæsariensis, and Valentia.

Constantius was the last Emperor of Rome who resided in Britain. St. Alban was the first Christian martyr in this island. He suffered at the town which bears his name, St. Albans, in Hertfordshire.

The Roman legions, after having been in possession of Britain for more than four centuries, were at length called away by the Emperor Honorius to defend their own country from the terrible attacks made upon it by the Goths and Vandals, A.D. 420.

The Romans did much for Britain. They instructed the natives in agriculture, taught them the use of money, made extensive roads, built elegant and comfortable houses, established schools, and, above all, introduced into the country the religion of Christ.

QUESTIONS FOR WRITTEN OR ORAL EXAMINATION.

From the time of Julius Caesar to the Norman Period. B.C. 55 TO A.D. 420.

Condition of the Early Inhabitants.

- 1. To whom are we indebted for our knowledge of the early history of Britain?
 - Who were its original inhabitants?
 Where did they come from?
- 4. What part of the island did those tribes occupy who were most civilised? 5. What portion did the other tribes
- inhabit? How do you account for this differ-
- ence in civilization? 7. Describe the dress worn by the inhabitants of the south and south-
- eastern coasts. 8. Their houses.
- 9. What did a group of such dwellings form?
- 10. Where was it generally situ- sometimes to unite? ated?
 - 11. What surrounded it?

- 12. For what purpose?
- 13. With what did the Britons paint their bodies?
- 14. Why did they do this?
 15. What is meant by "tattooing" their bodies?
 - 16. How long did this custom con-
- tinue among the northern Britons?

 17. Describe the manner of living adopted by the tribes occupying the
- 18. What were the chief weapons of war used by the ancient Britons?
- 19. Describe their manner of fight-
- ing.

 20. How was each tribe governed?

 21. What caused the various states
- 22. How did they act on such occasions?

Religion of the Ancient Britons.

- What was the nature of the religion | of the ancient Britons?
 - 2. Who were the Druids?
 3. What was the extent of their
- power?
- 4. How many sets of doctrines did Druidism consist of?
- 5. What do you mean by doctrine?6. For whom was the one set in-
- tended? 7. Explain the meaning of initiated.
- 8. For what was the other set designed?
- What doctrines were held sacred by the priests? 10. What were the people taught to
- worship?
 11. Where were the souls of the
- wicked believed to go?
- 12. For what puspose?
 13. What did the Romans attribute to this doctrine?
- 14. What were regarded as superior deities by the Druids?
- 15. Where were the inferior ones suposed to reside?

- 16. Mention the three orders of Druids.
- What offices were performed by the Druids proper?
 - 18. Who were the Vates?
 19. What did they do?
- 20. Who were the Bards?
- 21. Under whose government were these three classes?
 22. How was he chosen?
- 23. Where did the Druids reside and perform their religious rites?
- 24. Describe their temples.25. Where are ruins of these still to be found?
 - 26. Which are the most famous? 27. What plant was held in great
- veneration by the Druids? 28. Describe the ceremony of cutting
- it down when found growing on the oak.
- 29. What practice is still observed at Christmas in different parts of the British Islands?
- 30. Account for the origin of this.

THE ROMAN PERIOD.—B.C. 55.—A.D. 420.

The Arrival of Julius Casar (Pp. 13-19).

- 1. What country had Julius Cæsar
- already conquered?

 2. Why did he now seek to invade Britain?
- 3. From whom did he receive information regarding the Britons?
 - 4. What was the number of his army?
 - 5. Of his vessels?
 - 6. What part of the coast did he reach?
- Did he land here?
- Why? 9. What then did he do?
- 10. What place did he reach?
- 11. Who opposed his landing?
 12. What was the result?
- 13. Give the date of Cæsar's arrival in Britain.

Cæsar Returns to Gaul-Revisits Britain-His Final Departure.

- 1. Where did the Romans first encamp in Britain?
 2. What happened to Cassar's fleet?
 3. What did he do in consequence?
 4. When did Cassar return to Britain?
- 5. How did his landing on this occasion differ from the last?
- 6. What British prince had he soon to encounter?
- 7. What was the result of every engagement that took place? 8. Explain what you mean by hostages

Caractacus—Boadicea.

and tribute.

- 1. After Cæsar had taken his departure, how long did Britain remain free from invasion?
 - 2. Who was the next invader?
 - 3. By whom was he sent?
 - 4. Mention the date.
 - Which of the tribes submitted?
- 6. What British prince offered a brave resistance to the Romans?

 - 7. Where was he defeated?
 8. What afterwards became of him?
- 9. Relate what is recorded of him on his arrival at Rome.

- 10. Who was Boadicea?
- 11. Who were the Iceni?12. How was Boadicea treated by the Roman soldiers?
- 13. What did the Britons do in consequence?
- 14. What calamity befell London and its inhabitants?
- 15. How was this cruelty avenged?
 16. What was the fate of the warrior
- queen?
 - 17. Give the date.

Julius Agricola—Roman Walls:

each.

- 1. What general completed the sub-jugation of Britain?
- . How far did he extend the influence of Rome?
- Over whom did he gain a victory?
 Where is this battle supposed to
- have been fought? 5. Give the date.

erected ?

- 6. What chain of forts did Agricola erect?
- 7. What wall was built by the Emperor Adrian?
 - 8. In what year?
 9. What other fortification was

- 10. By whom?
- 11. Mention the date.
- 12. By what name is it now commonly known
- 13. Where did Severus erect his rampart?
- 14. Tell the date. 15. How far north are the Romans supposed to have gone?
 16. What evidence is there of this?
- 17. What Roman Emperors have
- been mentioned in the preceding chapters? State what is recorded of 18.

Division of Britain into Roman Provinces-Government of the Romans.

- 1. Mention the names of the provinces into which Britain was divided by the Romans.
- 2. Where was each situated?
 3. What part of Britain was included under each?
- 4. To whom was the government of the three first named provinces entrusted?
- 5. Who ruled the other two?
- 6. What was the name of the officer placed over the whole?
- 7. Besides these what other officers were there?
- 8. What were their respective titles and duties?

Britain Independent-Roman Power Restored-Picts and Scots-Romans leave Britain.

- 1. Where did the Saxons come from? 2. In whose reign did they commence
- their inroads in Britain? 3. Who was appointed to repel them?
 - 4. How did he act?
 - 5. What at length befell him?
- 6. Who came after him?7. What was the name of the last Roman Emperor that resided in Britain?
- 8. By whom was he succeeded?
 9. What tribes now disturbed the
- country?
 10. Who are the Picts supposed to
- have been?
- 11. Why were they called Picts?
 12. Where did the Scots originally come from?

- 13. In what part of Scotland did they first settle?
- 14. When these two tribes united what depredations did they commit?
- 15. What course did the Britons now
- adopt?
 16. What was the result?
- 17. State what followed.
- 18. Who commanded the soldiers sent by Rome to Britain?
- 19. What did this commander afterwards say to the Britons?
- 20. What did the Romans do previous to their final departure?
- 21. How long had Britain been under the power of the Roman Empire?

Results of the Roman Invasion.

- 1. What was the condition of Britain at the time when the Romans left?
- 2. How many roads traversed the country?
- 3. What were erected along their course or in their immediate neighbourhood?
- 4. Who assisted the Britons in the construction of these?
- 5. What privileges did many of the towns established by the Romans enjoy?
 6. Of what was this the foundation?
- Besides the construction of roads and towns, what other advantages did the Romans confer on Britain?
- 8. What do you know about their coins?
- 9. What other articles of interest have been found?
- 10. What do these prove?

- 11. Which of all the Roman remains are the most interesting and valuable?
 - 12. Why? 13. What evidence have we that agri-
- culture was well understood before the Romans left Britain?
- 14. Which was the most important event of the Roman period?
 - 15. When did this take place?
 - 16. What is recorded regarding the spread of the gospel in Britain?
 - 17. Describe its progress, and condition at the time when the Romans took their departure.
- 18. Write from memory a summary of the principal events during the Roman period.
- 19. Draw a map of Britain under the Romans, showing the provinces, chief towns, and the five great roads.

CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY

OF THE

PRINCIPAL EVENTS DURING THE ROMAN PERIOD.

B.C. 55 TO A.D. 420.

B.C.

55. First invasion of Julius Cæsar.

54. Second invasion. Cassivellaunus defeated. Cæsar returns to Gaul.

First Century.

A.D

- 43. Aulus Plautius sent by the Emperor Claudius to invade the island.
- 50. Caractacus defeated at Caer-Caradoc in Shropshire.
- Caractacus sent prisoner to Rome. Released by order of Claudius.
- Boadicea defeated by the Romans, after which she poisoned herself.
- 64. Christianity introduced into Britain.

78. Agricola appointed Governor of Britain.

84. Agricola defeated the Caledonians under Galgacus. Built a chain of forts between the Solway and Tyne, another between the Forth and Clyde.

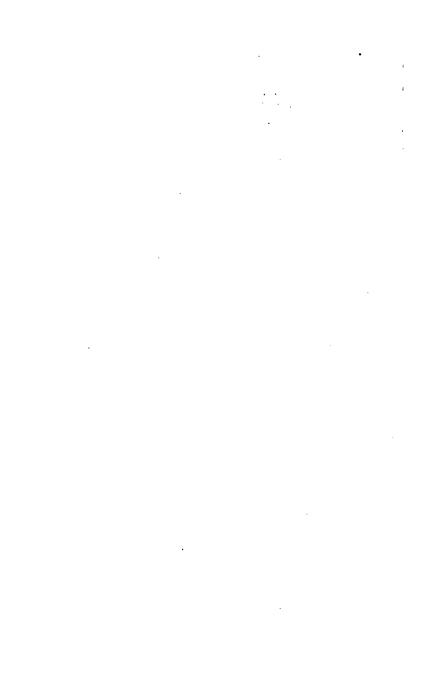
Second Century.

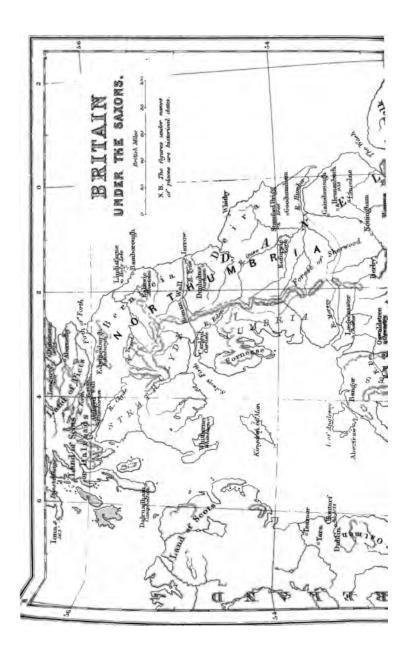
121. Adrian built a wall nearly in a line with the one erected by Agricola, between the Solway and Tyne.

140. Wall built by Lollius Urbicus, commonly called the wall of Antoninus, in honour of the Emperor.

Third Century.

- 210. Caledonians repelled by Severus. He raised a rampart parallel to Adrian's.
- 286. Cârausius usurped the imperial dignity, but was afterwards slain by Allectus.
- 296. The Emperor Constantius restored Britain to the Roman Empire. He died at York, 306, and was succeeded by his son Constantine.
- 420. The Roman Legions recalled from Britain. Roman Dominion in Britain ceases.







• •

THE SAXON PERIOD.

CHAPTER I.

THE SAXON SETTLEMENTS.

From the Saxon Invasion to the Reign of Egbert. A.D. 420-A.D. 827.

Condition of the Britons. | King Arthur. Tribes of the Saxons, The Heptarchy.

Title of Bretwalda. Christianity Restored.

Offa, King of Mercia. Saxon Kingdoms United under Egbert. 4

Condition of the Britons—Tribes of the Saxons—The Heptarchy.

AFTER the Romans had taken their final departure from the island, the Picts and Scots speedily returned and ravaged the country. The Britons found the ramparts which had been built a weak defence against their barbarous enemies, who drove them from their cities and habitations, and compelled them to seek shelter in the woods and mountains. The unhappy natives, for the last time, in a letter entitled the "Groans of the Britons," entreated the Romans to come to their aid; but Ætius, the Roman prefect in Gaul, could give no assistance. He was too much occupied in endeavouring to defend Italy against the attacks of the terrible Attiladespair, Vortigern, the most powerful of the British chiefs, called in the aid of some Saxons who were cruising in their ships off the British coasts, under the leadership of two brothers, named Hengist and Horsa. accepted the invitation of the Britons, they marched against the Picts and Scots, and drove them beyond the British territories. For their services they were rewarded with the Isle of Thanet; but having once obtained a settlement, they sent for additional bodies of their countrymen, and succeeded in taking possession of the whole of Kent. These invaders came from the northern shores of Germany, and on account of their fierce and warlike character were regarded as the most terrible of all the surrounding nations. They consisted of at least three powerful tribes—the Jutes, Saxons, and Angles, all of whom were afterwards known by the general name of the Saxons. These enterprising and hardy adventurers succeeded in establishing seven Saxon sovereignties or kingdoms, known by the name of the Heptarchy:—

- Kent, including modern Kent; founded by Hengist, A.D. 457.
- 2. Sussex (South Saxony), including Sussex and Surrey; founded by Ella, A.D. 490.
- 3. Wessex (West Saxony), including the western counties south of the Thames and Severn; founded by Cerdic, A.D. 519.
- 4. Essex (East Saxony), including Essex, Middlesex, and part of Hertford; founded by Ercenwin, A.D. 527.
- Northumbria, including all the country between the Humber and Forth; founded by Ida, A.D. 547.
- East Anglia, including Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridge; founded by Uffa, A.D. 575.
- 7. Mercia, including the Midland Counties, from the Thames to the Humber, and from the Severn to the Wash; founded by Cridda, A.D. 585.

During the fifth century every trace of Roman civilization and refinement was completely lost; the country relapsed into its ancient state of barbarism; the Britons themselves were nearly exterminated, and those who escaped sought refuge in Wales, Cornwall, Cumberland, and Strathelyde; whilst others crossed the Channel into Armorica, which they afterwards conquered, and changed its name to that of Brittany.

King Arthur-Title of Bretwalds-Christianity Restored.

It was in opposing the Saxons under Cerdic that the celebrated King Arthur acquired his fame. He was by far the most illustrious of the British chiefs that opposed the settlement of the invaders. His banner bore the image of a dragon embroidered in gold, which for four and twenty years smote terror into the hearts of his enemies, and waved triumphant over twelve battle-fields. He formed the best and bravest of his realm into an order of Knighthood, celebrated as the "Knights of the Round Table" in the fabulous ballads and chronicles of many a succeeding age. His nephew Mordred revolted, and in a battle which was fought on the Camlan in Cornwall, Arthur was mortally wounded, and, being conveyed by sea to Glastonbury, died and was buried there. It was long a superstitious belief among his countrymen, who cherished his name with love and reverence, that he was not dead, but had been carried off to be healed of his wounds, and that he was destined to return and deliver them from their oppressors.

Among the Saxon Kings there were several who, at different times, held the title of Bretwalda, a term which

signifies, "one whose sway is widely extended."

It was during the reign of Ethelbert, King of Kent, the third Bretwalda, that Christianity was introduced among the Saxons. Gregory, afterwards Pope Gregory the Great, was one day walking along the streets of Rome, when he observed some young slaves in the market-place, and being struck with their beautiful appearance, inquired from what nation they came. He was informed they were Angles, upon which he replied, "they would not be Angles, but Angels, if they were only Christians." Gregory afterwards sent St. Augustine as a missionary to England, with forty monks, to convert the pagan Saxons to Christianity. The mission was successful. Ethelbert, influenced by his queen, Bertha, who was already a Christian, became a convert, and his example was followed by thousands of his subjects. Sebert, King of Essex,

was also converted; and in less than ninety years from the arrival of Augustine, Christianity became the religion of the country. Ethelbert is still further distinguished as being the first Saxon King that prepared a written code of laws.

Offa, King of Mercia—Saxon Kingdoms United under Egbert.

At the close of the eighth century the number of independent kingdoms in England was reduced to three-Northumbria, Mercia, and Wessex. The first of these independent states soon gave way before the powerful kings of Mercia, amongst whom the celebrated Offa, surnamed the Terrible, was perhaps the most distinguished. The Britons having invaded his territory, he drove them into the mountainous parts of Wales, from which they continued to molest his subjects by their numerous and destructive incursions. In order to secure his dominions against their inroads, he constructed an embankment, one hundred miles in length, called Offa's Dyke, which extended from the estuary of the Dee to the mouth of the Wye in South Wales. Towards the close of his reign he treacherously murdered Ethelbert, King of East Anglia, and annexed his kingdom to Mercia.

Egbert, the only surviving descendent of Cerdic, now ascended the throne, and having obtained several victories over the native sovereigns, succeeded in uniting the whole of the separate states into one great kingdom, called Angle-land, or England, a name derived from the Angles.

CHAPTER IL

ANGLO-SAXON KINGS.

From Egbert, A.D. 827, to the Death of Alfred, A.D. 901.

Arrival of the Danes.

Egbert had scarcely established his supremacy when new and formidable enemies landed on various parts of the island. These were the Danes from the coast of Scandinavia and Denmark, and of the same Teutonic race with the Saxons, whom they resembled in their character and habits, but far surpassed in treachery and cruelty. They were a race of pirates who enforced their demands for booty with the axe and war-hammer. Their leaders. termed vikings, or sea-kings, were generally of royal blood, but with no heritage save the sea, and their banners bore the device of a large black raven. Like the Saxons, they were the devotees of a gloomy superstition, the worshippers of Thor and Woden, looked upon the Christianised Saxons as renegades from the religion of Thor, and this was a sufficient cause for the attacks of such merciless invaders. After committing numerous ravages they were at length defeated by Egbert at Hengston Hill, in Cornwall, and compelled to flee for safety to their ships. This was Egbert's last exploit; he died the following year, and was buried at Winchester.

Ethelwulf.—During this reign the Danes renewed the invasion of the country; they sailed up the Thames, burnt London and Canterbury, attacked and pillaged many of the southern districts, and established themselves permanently in the Isle of Thanet. It was in this reign that an annual tribute to the Pope, called Peter's Pence, was instituted for the purpose of maintaining an English school at Rome.

Ethelbald.—The brief reign of Ethelbald was not marked by any event of importance. His marriage with Judith, his stepmother, greatly displeased his subjects; but, influenced by Swithun, Bishop of Winchester, he reluctantly consented to a separation.

Ethelbert.—The reign of Ethelbert lasted only six years, during which time the Danes increased to such a degree, that the king agreed to pay them a sum of money

to induce them to desist from their ravages.

Ethelred I.—The whole of Ethelred's reign was one constant heroic struggle with the Danes. He is said to have fought no less than nine pitched battles against these savage warriors, and was at last mortally wounded at Merton in Surrey. Prince Alfred was created an Earl by Ethelred, and was the first to bear this title in

England.

Alfred, surnamed the Great, was born at Wantage, in Berkshire, A.D. 849. In early life he gave evidence of being endowed with those talents and virtues which afterwards rendered his reign so illustrious. He ascended the throne at the age of twenty-two. The Danes still continued to come in vast numbers, and the youthful monarch devoted all his energies to repel them. His efforts at first were unsuccessful; and, being deserted by almost all his adherents, he was compelled to disguise himself, for fear of being betrayed into the hands of his enemies who were searching for him in all directions. Destitute of food and clothing, the King engaged himself to a cowherd, in whose humble cabin he concealed himself for six months. One day the cow-herd's wife, not knowing the quality of her guest, desired him to watch some cakes which were baking on the hearth; but Alfred, busy with his weapons, forgot to turn the cakes, and the woman, on her return, finding them burned, scolded him for his negligence. "You, man!" said she, "you will not turn the bread you see burning, but will be very glad to eat it when done." The King good-humouredly bore this reproof, and afterwards amply rewarded the peasant for his hospitality.

Alfred retires to Athelney—Visits the Danish Camp— Victory over the Danes.

In his seclusion, Alfred still kept up communication with some of his friends; but at length he quitted the service of the cow-herd, and retired to the swampy Isle of Athelney, formed by the rivers Parret and Tone, in Here he built a fortress, to which he Somersetshire. summoned a number of his most faithful followers, who began to make arrangements for surprising the Danes. Before venturing on a general engagement, the King wished to ascertain the exact strength of the enemy, and, instead of trusting to the reports of others, he went disguised as a wandering minstrel into the Danish camp. where his singing and performances on the harp were so greatly admired that he was brought into the presence of Guthrum, their leader, who gave him permission to reside in the camp. While the ale and the mead were flowing fast and free around the chieftain's table, the poor strolling harper, all unsuspected, was learning, in the intervals of the music, from the free and careless talk of those around him, the nature of their plans and the extent of their resources. Having stayed a few days, he left the camp, hastened back to his soldiers, and led them against the enemy, whom he completely routed at Ethandune,
A.D. 878. near Chippenham in Wiltshire, and thus regained the throne of Essex.

The Danes now begged for peace, and were glad to accept the terms proposed by Alfred. He allowed all who embraced Christianity to remain in the country, and those who refused to do so were permitted to take their departure, under the command of one of their sea-kings named Hastings. Guthrum and thirty of his followers became converts to Christianity, and proved faithful in their allegiance to the King. They received from Alfred the whole of the eastern portion of the island, extending from the Tweed to the Thames, a district afterwards known by the name of Danelagh, or Danelaw.

Alfred's Social Schemes.

Peace having now been re-established, Alfred devoted all his energies to promote the prosperity of his country and the happiness of his people. He rebuilt London and other cities, erected many new fortifications, and trained the people to the use of arms; he also constructed a number of ships for the protection of the coasts, and thus laid the foundation of the British navy. In addition to the military organization of the country, Alfred did much to improve the social condition of his subjects; he established schools, and translated many Latin books into the Anglo-Saxon tongue for the instruction of the people: he also wrote several historical and geographical works, and invited learned foreigners to settle in England. likewise encouraged the arts and sciences, commerce and manufactures, and handsomely rewarded those who were skilful enough to invent anything useful. He formed a system of wise laws, and laid the foundation of many of those institutions which have contributed so much to the prosperity and greatness of Britain.

Country again Invaded—The Danes Defeated—Alfred's Death.

In the midst of such peaceful and useful labours, Alfred was interrupted by a fresh invasion of Northmen, who landed on the Kentish coast, under the command of the sea-king Hastings. In almost every engagement the invaders were repulsed with great loss; and Hastings, seeing that all his efforts and military skill were unavailing, left the island and never afterwards returned. Alfred diligently employed the remaining years of his life in carrying out the noble schemes he had previously formed for the honour and civilization of his country, and after an illustrious reign of twenty-nine years, he died at Farringdon in Berkshire, and was buried at Winchester, in a monastery which he had founded.

His is the most illustrious name in all those dark and dismal ages, and the distance of nearly one thousand years, and the civilization and advancement of the present day, instead of diminishing, have only tended to enhance his fame.

CHAPTER III.

ANGLO-SAXON KINGS-Continued.

From the Death of Alfred, A.D. 901, to the Accession of the Danish Line, A.D. 1016.

Edward the Elder, 901. Edred, - - - 946. Edward the Martyr, 975. Edward I., - - 925. Edwy, - - - 955. Ethelred the Unready, 978. Edmund I., - 941. Edgar the Peaceable, 959. Edmund II., - 1016.

Edward.—Alfred was succeeded by his son Edward, surnamed the Elder, from his being the first sovereign of that name, but his claim to the throne was disputed by his cousin Ethelwald. The quarrel lasted some time, but at last his rival was killed in an engagement with the men of Kent, and Edward was permitted to retain possession of the crown. He enlarged Cambridge University, and, according to some historians, was the first to assume the title of King of England.

Athelstan.—The Danes and Scots conspired against Athelstan, but at Brunanburgh in Yorkshire he gained a decisive victory over them. In this memorable conflict, Constantine, King of Scotland, and five other kings were slain. Athelstan encouraged commerce, and raised to the rank of a thane or nobleman all merchants who had made three voyages in their own vessels. By his orders the Bible was translated into Anglo-Saxon, and a copy of the sacred volume placed in every church throughout the kingdom.

Edmund I.—Shortly after his accession, Edmund defeated the Danes of Northumbria, who had risen up in rebellion under Anlaf, a Danish leader. He gave Cumbria to Malcolm, King of Scotland, on condition that he should become his vassal, and aid him in defending his country against all invaders. In the midst of his successes he was stabbed at a banquet by a robber named Leof, who had contrived to force his way into the royal presence.

Edred.—When Edmund died he left behind him two sons, named Edwy and Edgar, but on account of their infancy, Edred, the brother of Edmund, was elected King.

by the Witenagemote. On his accession, the northern Danes again rebelled, and chose for their leader Eric, brother of Haco, King of Norway. Edred advanced against the insurgents and subdued them. Towards the close of this reign the government of the country was entrusted to Dunstan, Abbot of Glastonbury, who acquired

great influence over the King.

Edwy.—This King ascended the throne at the age of He married Elgiva, a princess of great beauty; but Dunstan objected to the marriage, as they were within the prohibited degrees of affinity. On the day of his coronation, while the nobles were feasting in the royal banqueting hall, the young King, who preferred the company of his wife, withdrew to her apartment. followed by Dunstan, who dragged him off his seat, and led him back in the most insulting manner. treatment the insolent Abbot was banished from the kingdom. Odo, Archbishop of Canterbury, instigated a revolt in Northumbria and Mercia in favour of Edgar. the King's brother. Dunstan now returned from his brief exile, and the unfortunate queen was seized by Odo. who branded her face with a red-hot iron, and banished her to Ireland, where she gained a number of friends. As soon as her wounds were healed, she returned to join her husband, but was seized by some of Odo's retainers, who treated her so cruelly that death speedily put an end to her sufferings. Edwy died of grief not long after.

Edgar the Peaceable.—Many measures of great importance were introduced during the reign of Edgar. He improved the laws, encouraged and promoted trade, and renewed the coinage. The army and fleet were kept in a state of so great efficiency, that neither did his own subjects dare to revolt, nor foreign enemies to invade his dominions. The King relieved the Welsh of a tax which had been levied by Athelstan, and in its stead he exacted a yearly tribute of three hundred wolves' heads. This led, in a few years, to the complete extirpation of these ravenous animals from England. Edgar's vanity was so great, that on one occasion, while visiting Chester, he

compelled eight princes to row his barge on the river Dee, as a mark of their subjection. Though his reign was one of great prosperity, his own character was stained with vice. He was surnamed the Peaceable, because the country remained at peace during the whole of his reign.

Edward the Martyr.—Edward's accession was opposed by his stepmother Elfrida, who wished the crown for her son Ethelred; but Dunstan supported the claims of the rightful heir. His reign, however, was brief; for, whilst drinking a cup of wine at the gate of Corfe Castle in Dorsetshire, he was stabbed in the back by an assassin, who had been engaged for that purpose by the base and deceitful Elfrida. From the manner of his death, he received the surname of the Martyr.

Ethelred the Unready.—During this reign the Danes again renewed their incursions; but the King, instead of seeking to repel them by force of arms, had recourse to the cowardly expedient of purchasing their departure by large sums of money. He levied an annual tax, amounting to twelve pence on each hide of land. This was called the Danegelt, and was the first direct land-tax raised in England. Such policy, on the part of the King, only led to further ravages; and Ethelred now determined to rid himself of all the Danes in England by a general massacre, which took place on the 13th November, A.D. 1002. Men, women, and children, without distinction of age or rank, were slain without mercy. Gunhilda. sister of Sweyn, King of Denmark, had fallen a victim in the general destruction, and this so enraged the Danish monarch that he invaded the country, and inflicted terrible punishment on the English. After a protracted struggle of nearly ten years, Ethelred fled for safety to the Court of Richard, Duke of Normandy, taking with A.D. 1014. him his two sons, Alfred, and Edward, afterwards the Confessor.

Sweyn was now proclaimed King of England, but reigned only a few weeks, when he died at Gainsborough. The Danes then elected his son Canute King; but the Saxon nobles and prelates resolved to recal Ethelred, on the understanding that he would rule with greater propriety than he had done before. Canute, unable to withstand the forces opposed to him, was obliged to leave the kingdom; but out of revenge he caused the noble Saxon hostages whom his father had obtained, to be deprived of their noses, ears, and hands; and in this mutilated state they were landed in England, as tokens of the dreadful vengeance he was determined to exact for the murder of his countrymen. He soon returned with increased forces, and, after laying waste a great part of the country, was preparing to make an attack on London, when he was informed of the King's death.

Edmund II.—Edmund, surnamed Ironside, on account of the valour he had already displayed in fighting against the Danes, succeeded his father. His great energy and military skill seemed to revive the courage of the Saxons; but he was, ere long, reluctantly obliged to submit to a division of the kingdom. Edmund ruled over the southern, and Canute over the northern counties. This arrangement had scarcely been made when Edmund was murdered at Oxford, and Canute became sole monarch of England.

CHAPTER IV.

ENGLAND UNDER THE DANES. A.D. 1016. to A.D. 1042.

CANUTE,	.began	to re	ign	1016,	died	1035.
HAROLD I.,	. ,,		,,	1035,	,,	10 4 0.
HARDICANUTE,	٠,,		,,		"	1042.
SWEYN, reigned only three weeks.						

CANUTE, A.D. 1016—A.D. 1035.

Character of his Government. Canute's Early Acts. He Visits Rome.

ŀ

Reproves Flattery. Death of Canute.

Character of his Government—Canute's Early Acts.

THE government of Canute was at first cruel and despotic; he caused several of the nobles to be put to death, and

sent Edmund and Edward, the sons of Edmund Ironside, to the King of Sweden, with secret instructions, it is said, to despatch them; but the generous Swede placed them under the protection of Stephen, King of Hungary, who treated them with parental affection and regard. Edmund died young; but Edward married Agatha, daughter of the Emperor of Germany, and became the father of Edgar Atheling and Margaret. Alfred and Edward, the two sons of Ethelred, were still at the Court of Normandy, under the protection of their uncle, Duke Richard, who was preparing a fleet to support the claims of his royal nephews. Canute, to gain the favour of Richard, offered to marry their mother Emma, and leave the crown to the issue of that marriage. To this proposal Richard consented, and not long after, Canute married the widow of Ethelred.

Canute, finding that his authority was now fully established, commenced to rule with mildness and justice, combined with great ability and wisdom. He restored the Saxon customs, and granted to all his subjects, English as well as Danish, equal rights and protection both of person and property. This impartial administration of justice gained for him the respect and confidence of all his subjects.

Canute Visits Rome—Reproves Flattery—His Death.

Canute, having become zealous in the cause of religion, introduced Christianity into Denmark, and went as a pilgrim to Rome with a wallet on his back, and a staff in his hand, distributing liberally of his substance to several of the churches which he visited on his journey. Before his return to England he addressed a letter to his people, expressing a sincere desire to atone for the violence of his youth, and promising to govern in accordance with the dictates of mercy and justice.

It was some time after this that Canute, while residing at Southampton, administered the well-known reproof to his courtiers, who one day thought to flatter him by saying that his power was unbounded, and that everything would be obedient to his commands. To convince them of their folly, he directed his chair to be placed on the sea-shore whilst the tide was rapidly coming up, and commanded the waves not to advance, as both land and sea were his. The tide continued to flow, and in a short time surrounded the chair of the monarch. Then leaving his seat, he turned to his flatterers, and administered to them a wholesome rebuke. "Learn," said he, "that He only is almighty who can say to the sea, 'Thus far shalt thou go and no farther.'"

It is said that after this incident he placed his crown in Winchester Cathedral, and never afterwards wore it. He died at Shaftesbury, leaving behind him three sons, Sweyn, Harold, and Hardicanute. To Sweyn he left Norway, to Harold, England, and to Hardicanute, Denmark; but the last, being the son of Emma, should have obtained the throne of England.

HAROLD I. A.D. 1035—A.D. 1040.

Harold I., surnamed Harefoot, on account of his swiftness of foot, succeeded Canute; but the Earl of Godwin, at this time one of the most powerful of the Anglo-Saxon nobles, supported the claims of Hardicanute, the son of Emma. A compromise was effected between the two rival princes; Harold obtained London and the counties north of the Thames, while the south was given to Hardicanute. The only event worthy of notice during this reign was the cruel murder of Alfred, son of Emma, by Ethelred. Harold died soon after at Oxford.

HARDICANUTE. A.D. 1040—A.D. 1042.

The short reign of Hardicanute was marked by great oppression. To keep up his Danish navy he levied heavy Danegelt, the collectors of which more than once fell victims to the hatred which they excited. He showed an intense dislike to the memory of Harold, by causing his body to be dug up and then cast into the Thames.

It was afterwards recovered by some Danish fishermen, who buried it in their cemetery of St. Clement's. The King was much addicted to intemperate habits, and, at the marriage banquet of one of his Thanes, he suddenly dropped down, and almost immediately expired. With his death the Danish line in England ceased, and, to the great delight of the English, the Saxon line was again restored in the person of Edward the Confessor, the second son of Ethelred and Emma.

CHAPTER V.

RESTORATION OF THE SAXON LINE. A.D. 1042—A.D. 1066.

EDWARD THE CONFESSOR began to reign A.D. 1042, died 1066.

HAROLD II. began to reign Jan. 1066, died Oct. 1066.

EDWARD THE CONFESSOR.

Accession of Edward.
He favours the Normans.
Earl Godwin.
William of Normandy
William Duke of Norand Harold.

Accession of Edward—He favours the Normans—Earl Godwin.

EDWARD, surnamed the Confessor, from his attachment to religion, now ascended the throne, although Edward, the son of Edmund Ironside, was the legitimate heir of the Saxon line. This prince being on the Continent, the English, with the concurrence of the Earl Godwin, supported the claims of the Confessor, who was accordingly proclaimed King. He made himself popular with the people by restoring the laws of the Saxons, and abolishing the obnoxious Danegelt. Shortly after his accession he married Editha the Fair, Godwin's daughter; but after a time his popularity diminished on account of the peculiar favour he showed to the Normans. Having resided in

Normandy for twenty-seven years, he naturally had a strong regard for the people of that country, many of whom followed him to England, and were appointed to some of the highest offices of honour and emolument. In a short time the foreigners began to treat the Anglo-Saxons with contempt, which roused the indignation and jealousy of the nobles, and especially of Earl Godwin. An insurrection seemed inevitable, but the attempt failed, and the instigators of the rebellion were punished. Godwin and all his family were banished, and Editha the queen, being a daughter of the Earl, was confined in a monastery. Godwin fled to Flanders, and here Tostig, one of his sons, married the sister of Matilda, wife of William, Duke of Normandy, a marriage which brought Tostig at a subsequent period under the powerful influence of the Norman Duke.

William, Duke of Normandy, Visits England—Death of Godwin.

William now came to England on a visit to the King. He spent much of his time in inspecting the castles and visiting the towns throughout the country, and was often surprised as well as delighted to find so many of the people able to converse in French. So much was this the case that he could not help occasionally thinking he was still in Normandy. During his sojourn in England, William formed the acquaintance of many of the principal nobility, and, it is said, persuaded Edward to appoint him his heir.

AD 1050. This year Godwin returned at the head of a

A.D. 1052. This year Godwin returned at the head of a powerful force, and, having been joined by his son Harold and vast numbers of the Saxons, prepared for war. The national feeling was in his favour, and Edward found it necessary to enter into negotiation with the powerful Earl. By the advice of his nobles, the King reversed the sentence passed upon him, and restored him and his sons, with the exception of Sweyn, who had carried off a nun from a convent, to all their honours and estates. Godwin died soon afterwards, and Harold succeeded to his father's title and possessions.

William of Normandy and Harold.

Edward, like many of his countrymen, now proposed to go on a pilgrimage to Rome; but he was opposed by the Witenagemote, as he had no heir, and his absence might give rise to the horrors of a disputed succession. This caused them to think of Edward, surnamed the Outlaw, who was still in Hungary, but was now invited to return to England. Shortly after his arrival he took suddenly ill and died, leaving behind him two children, Edgar Atheling and Margaret. Edgar was weak in body and in mind, and utterly unfit to sway the sceptre in such turbulent times, yet on this side the Channel he was the only competitor with Harold, who now looked forward to be king. Across the Channel, however, there was a still more powerful rival, William, Duke of Normandy, who had also resolved to obtain possession of the English throne.

A circumstance now occurred which gave William an immense advantage over Harold, and most dishonourably did he avail himself of it. Harold, whilst sailing in the English Channel, was shipwrecked on the coast of Ponthieu, near the river Somme. It was a custom there, as in many other places, that the lord of the land was entitled to the wreck as well as to the people cast ashore. Harold and his companions were therefore imprisoned by Count Guy till a sufficient ransom should be paid for them. William, seeing his advantage, demanded the prisoners, and Guy surrendered them, on receiving from the duke a large portion of land. William treated Harold with great apparent courtesy, but he was merely playing with his victim. He managed to obtain from Harold a promise that he would support him in his claims to the English throne. But this did not suffice; he called upon the Saxon Earl to confirm by oath the promise he had made. Harold, taken by surprise, rose with a troubled air, and, laying his hand upon the missal, or book of devotion, swore by the Holy Evangelists to observe the promise. William immediately made a sign, and the cloth of gold on which the missal rested being removed, there was displayed to view a chest filled with bones and skeletons of the saints, upon which sacred relics the son of Godwin had sworn without knowing it. An oath taken upon such relics was supposed to be doubly binding and solemn, as the saints were thus in a manner regarded as witnesses. Harold was now permitted to depart; but he did not regard the oath, which had been thus forced upon him, as binding on his conscience.

Revolt of the Danes in Northumbria-Death of the King.

When Harold returned to England, he found that the Danish inhabitants of Northumbria had revolted against his brother Tostig, Earl of that district. Edward despatched Harold to quell the insurrection; but seeing the formidable character of the revolt, and ascertaining the cause of it, he could not advise the king to insist on the restoration of his brother. Tostig, in great wrath, left the kingdom for Flanders, where he openly joined his wife's relations in aiding the Norman Duke against his brother—a proceeding which afterwards proved most disastrous to the interests of Harold.

Edward's life was now drawing to a close. The minds of the English people were filled with alarm, for the signs of the coming struggle were visible to all. Despondency had taken hold of the mind of the Confessor, as he felt that the calamity which threatened the nation was caused by his too great partiality for the Normans. He gave himself up to religious observances; but these did not bring him peace, and his deathbed was disturbed by frightful visions of coming evil. Weak as was the mind of Edward, he had the courage, it is said, to declare Harold his successor. This gentle, amiable, but feeble and facile King died on the 5th January, 1066, and on the following day the royal remains were buried in Westminster Abbey, which had been consecrated with great solemnity a few days before. About a century after his death, he was canonised by Pope Alexander III., with the title of Confessor.

CHAPTER V.—Continued.

THE LAST SAXON KING.

HAROLD II.-A.D. 1066.

Accession of Harold. Duke of Normandy Claims the Throne. William Prepares to Invade England. Battle of Stamford Bridge.
William arrives in England.
Battle of Hastings.

Accession of Harold-Duke of Normandy Claims the Throne.

HAROLD II., eldest son of the great Earl Godwin, caused himself to be proclaimed King on the evening of the day of the Confessor's death. Possessed of no hereditary title, his accession nevertheless received the approval and sanction of the Witenagemote, and was hailed with satisfaction by the great majority of the people. already mentioned, he had a formidable rival in Duke William of Normandy, who justified his claims to the throne by declaring that he had in his possession a will which the late King had made in his favour, and that Harold had pledged himself by a most solemn oath to William sent a messenger to maintain his succession. remind Harold of the oath he had taken with his mouth. and his hand upon good and holy relics. "It is true," replied the Saxon King, "that I took an oath to William, but I took it under constraint; I promised what did not belong to me-what I could not in any way hold; my royalty is not my own, I could not lay it down against the will of the country."

William Prepares to Invade England.

Before commencing hostilities, William submitted his claims to the decision of the Pope, but Harold refused to acknowledge any such tribunal. The counsels of the Vatican were at that time swayed by the great Hildebrand, whose life-long purpose it was to have the crowned heads of Europe subject to the Holy See. Pope Alexander II., influenced by him, empowered the Norman Duke to invade England, and bring it back to the obedience of

the Church. A banner, consecrated and blessed by the Pope for the invasion of this country, was sent to William; and the clergy throughout the Continent were zealous in their efforts to represent the enterprise as undertaken in the cause of religion. Multitudes from all parts of Christendom flocked to the holy banner, and in a short time an army of 60,000 men assembled, and a fleet of 1000 vessels was prepared, to effect the conquest of England.

Battle of Stamford Bridge.

The preparations made by Harold were also on an extensive scale; but when William was about to embark for England, Harold was called away to contend with his own brother Tostig, who, instigated by William, had formed an alliance with King Harald Hardrada of Norway, and had landed with an immense army of Norwegians on the coast of York. Before the battle commenced, King Harold offered his brother Tostig a portion of the kingdom if he would desist from the contest. In reply, he said, "that such an offer in the preceding winter would have saved many lives; but," added he, "if I accept these terms, what compensation will you offer to the King of Norway, my ally?" "Seven feet of ground; or, as he is a very tall man, perhaps a little more," was the reply. The invaders were completely defeated in a desperate Sept. 25, battle at Stamford Bridge; and in the conflict A.D. 1066. Tostig and Hardrada fell, along with thousands

William Arrives in England-Battle of Hastings.

of their followers.

Three days after the battle of Stamford Bridge, William landed unopposed at Pevensey on the coast of Sussex. Harold immediately advanced towards London; but the march was long and tiresome, and the loss he had sustained in his encounter with the Norwegians was considerable, so that his forces were now greatly diminished in numbers, and those that remained were exhausted by the fatigue which they had already endured. Harold was advised to rest his troops, and wait for reinforcements

to supply the place of the veteran soldiers who had fallen at Stamford Bridge. But both he and his troops, although greatly inferior in numbers, were impatient to meet the When it became known in the Norman camp that Harold had marched southward, but a brief interval ensued before the two hosts met in decisive encounter. The English promised, by an unanimous oath, to make neither peace, nor truce, nor treaty, with the invader, but to die, or drive away the Normans. The night before the battle is said to have been spent by Harold's soldiers in singing their national songs, and draining huge horns of ale and wine round their camp-fires. The Normans devoutly listened to the prayers of the priests, from whose hands they received the sacrament, after they had solemnly made confession. The great battle was fought at Senlac, nine miles from Hastings, on Saturday the 14th of October.

When the morning began to dawn, both armies were formed and ready for the conflict. The battle commenced by the Norman archers discharging a shower of arrows. but the assailants were instantly met by the Saxons, who inflicted upon them prodigious blows with their battle-Again an attack was made, but it failed to make any impression on the solid masses of the English. cavalry then charged, but they too were successfully repulsed. William's horse was shot under him, and a The Normans now report spread that he was killed. began to fly, but the Duke immediately mounted another horse, rode through the ranks, and, uncovering his head, exclaimed, "Here I am, look at me; I live, and, with God's help, I will yet conquer." He instantly made another charge on the ranks of the English, but they still stood firm; at this crisis William had recourse to his favourite stratagem, which had stood him in good stead in many a hard fought field. He ordered a portion of his army to pretend flight, to try, if possible, to draw the enemy from their strong position. The plan succeeded; the English immediately set off in pursuit of the fugitives, but upon a given signal, the Normans turned, and great numbers fell on both sides. Harold, with unabated energy, continued to inspire his troops, and the contest was warmly maintained till night came on, when a random arrow entered his eye, and penetrated the brain. He fell mortally wounded, and his two gallant brothers, who fought by his side, shared a similar fate. The English now began to give way, but not before they had made one desperate effort to defend the Royal Standard, which, however, was taken and plucked from the ground, and the consecrated banner planted in its stead. Without a leader, and without a standard, the English fled from the scene of conflict, and thus ended the decisive and memorable battle of Hastings.

On the morning after the battle, two monks obtained permission of the Conqueror to search for the body of the fallen monarch. They failed, however, to recognise it among the heaps of slain around them; but at last it was discovered by his former lover, the fair and swan-necked Edith. Harold's mother now solicited from the victorious Norman the dead body of her son, offering as a ransom its weight in gold. William refused, and ordered it to be buried on the beach; but he afterwards relented, and the remains of the King were deposited in Waltham Abbey, which had been founded by Harold shortly before he ascended the throne.

To commemorate the battle, William founded Battle Abbey, the ruins of which still mark the place where Harold's army was posted. "The high altar on the Abbey stood on the very spot where Harold's own standard was planted during the fight, and where the carnage was the thickest. In this once fair and stately pile the monks for many ages prayed and said masses for the souls of those who were slain in the battle, whence the Abbey took its name."

CHAPTER VI.

POLITICAL AND SOCIAL CONDITION OF THE ANGLO-SAXONS.

Government.
Classes of Society.
The Witenagemote.
Political Divisions of the Country.

Courts of Justice,
Modes of Trial.
Saxon Literature.
Houses—Food—Dress—Occupations.

Government.—The government of the Anglo-Saxons was, for the most part, an elective monarchy, limited to one family; the principle of hereditary succession not being always observed. On the death of a King, the claims of his nearest heir were frequently set aside, when some other member of the family was considered better qualified to discharge the duties of the regal office; thus, Alfred was chosen in preference to the children of Ethelbert, his elder brother, and Edred, in preference to Edwy and Edgar, the sons of Edmund I.

Classes of Society.—As head of the government, the King was the fountain of honour and justice. the power of summoning and proroguing the Witenagemote; of granting pardon; of appointing ealdormen and sheriffs, and of superintending the coinage. The sons of the King were called aethelings. Next in rank to the King were the ealdormen or earls. Their duties were to provide for the defence of their districts or shires; to lead to battle those residing within their territories; and to preside with the bishop in the county court. Next to the earls were the thanes, or owners of land. They were divided into two classes, the King's thanes and the common thanes. The former acted as magistrates, and were themselves tried as peers; the latter were much more numerous, but of less social importance. None could hold the rank of thane who did not possess five hides of land, or nearly six hundred acres. The next in order were the ceorles, or cultivators of the land. Though reckoned as freemen, they were, in most cases, bound to the soil which they cultivated; but a ceorl, on acquiring a sufficient quantity of land, might be raised to the rank of thane. By far the most numerous class were the *villeins* or slaves, who were regarded as part of the personal property of their owners. They enjoyed none of the privileges of the other classes, but were entirely at the mercy of their masters, who could confine, scourge, and brand them with impunity. The value of a slave was estimated at four times that of an ox.

The Witenagemote.—This was the great council of the nation. It was held usually at the great festivals of the year, Christmas, Easter, and Whitsuntide, or at any time of political emergency. It was presided over by the King, and attended by the prelates, abbots, earls, and the superior thanes. According to Kemble, the Witan, or wise men, deliberated upon the making of new laws; it had the power of making alliances and treaties of peace, of electing the King, of deposing him, of regulating ecclesiastical matters, such as the appointment of fasts and festivals, of levying taxes, and of raising land and sea forces; and, finally, it acted as the supreme court of justice.

Political Divisions of the Country.—The country was divided into counties, hundreds, and tithings. A tithing was a district which comprised ten families, the members of which were held responsible for each other's conduct. A hundred included ten tithings, and is first mentioned in the reign of Edgar. A county was the largest territorial division, but its origin cannot be exactly determined.

Courts of Justice.—At the head of the courts of justice, as already mentioned, was the Witenagemote. Next in order of dignity was the shire-mote, or county court, which met twice a-year, and was presided over by the bishop and the earl, or his deputy, the shire-reeve, or sheriff. It took cognizance of all causes relating to the church or the crown, as well as other matters of grave importance. The next in importance was the hundred-mote, or court of the hundred, which was held monthly, and attended by all the freemen within the bounds of its jurisdiction. This court adjudicated on civil and criminal causes, and was under the presidency of the alderman of the district,

Besides these, there were other courts possessed of more limited powers, such as the *hall-motes* and *ward-motes*. No man was allowed to make an appeal to the King's court, until he had applied first to the hundred, and then to the shire-mote.

Modes of Trial.—Among the Anglo-Saxons all crimes. even murder, were punished by fines, although capital and other punishments were sometimes resorted to. person accused of a crime was acquitted if he could produce a certain number of persons as witnesses, called compurgators, who would swear to his innocence. the crime of murder seventy-two compurgators were required; but for minor offences a smaller number was sufficient. If the accused failed to produce the requisite number of witnesses, he might appeal to trial by ordeal, of which there were various kinds; but the following three were most frequently adopted-hot-water, hot-iron, and consecrated bread, called corsned. The trial took place in a church, under the direction of the priests. In the hot-water ordeal, the accused plunged his arm into a caldron of boiling water, and took a stone from the bottom of the vessel; the priest then bandaged up the arm, and if, after three days, no mark appeared, the alleged culprit was pronounced innocent. In the hot-iron ordeal, the prisoner under trial was required to carry a bar of red-hot iron to a distance of nine feet; his hand was then bound up, and if, at the end of the third day, it was found perfectly healed, he was acquitted. corsned was a piece of dry bread which was to be eaten by the accused, after repeating an imprecation that it might choke him if he were guilty. By such trials it was believed that the guilt or innocence of all persons charged with crime would be satisfactorily established.

Saxon Literature.—As the tribes who successively invaded England came from different districts, they had at first various forms of dialect, and it was not till about the time of Egbert, who established the supremacy of the kingdom of Wessex, that they became, as it were, one people, and adopted the same form of speech, known as

the language of the Anglo-Saxons. From this language most of the words used in our modern English tongue are derived. The earliest specimens of Anglo-Saxon literature consist of metrical productions, the most ancient of which are the songs of Caedmon, a monk of Whitby, who died about the year 680. Gildas, the first British historian. the venerable Bede, and other learned Saxon authors, wrote their works in Latin. Bede's "Ecclesiastical History of England" is the most important of his numerous works, and the one from which our knowledge of the early portion of Anglo-Saxon history is chiefly derived. He also translated a considerable portion of the Bible into the Saxon language. At a later period Alfred, anxious to advance the cause of learning, translated into Anglo-Saxon the historical works of Bede, portions of the Scriptures, and, some suppose, Æsop's Fables. Among other important works compiled in the language of the time, may be mentioned the civil and ecclesiastical laws from the time of Ethelred of Kent to that of Canute; also the "Saxon Chronicle," in which are recorded the chief events of English history from the time of Alfred to the reign of Henry II.

Houses.—The best houses were built of wood, having a thatched roof, and seldom consisted of more than one apartment. The ground formed the floor, in the centre of which the fire was kindled, and, as there were no chimneys, the smoke escaped either through the doorway or through a hole in the roof. The walls in the inside were ornamented with rich hangings of tapestry or silk, embroidered with gold. The only stone buildings were churches and places for defence. The poorer classes lived in clay huts.

Food.—The Saxons ate and drank to excess. They were particularly fond of eels and swine's flesh, but other meats were also used. They drank various kinds of fermented liquors, as ale, cider, and mead; and frequent mention is made of their excessive indulgence and riotous mirth.

Dress.—The dress of the Anglo-Saxons consisted of a

tunic, which reached to the knee. It was fastened round the waist with a belt, and over the tunic was sometimes thrown a short cloak. They all wore shoes or short boots, but few had stockings. They allowed the hair to grow till it reached the shoulders, and they seldom covered the head except when in the house or engaged in battle. The dresses of the women were loose robes, which reached the ground, and completely concealed the shape of the wearer. The rich of both sexes decked themselves with a profusion of ornaments.

Occupations. — The only occupation of the upper

classes, when not engaged in war. was hunting, hawking, or fishing. Every nobleman had a number of vassals, who had been taught various kinds of trades, in order that they might be able to supply everything necessary for his establishment. Of the manual occupations, that of a smith was regarded as one of the most honourable and important. There were also carpenters, shoemakers, weavers, bakers, and others, all of whom were engaged in the service of their respective lords. The Saxon women were very industrious; those of high rank spent most of their time in spinning, weaving, and embroidery.



A SAXON SOLDIER.

SUMMARY OF THE SAXON PERIOD.

After the departure of the Romans, the Picts and Scots returned and ravaged the country. The Britons asked the Saxons to aid them in repelling the attacks of their barbarous enemies, and for their services they received the Isle of Thanet, but they ultimately succeeded in taking possession of the whole of Kent. These foreigners consisted of three powerful tribes—the Jutes, Saxons, and Angles, all of whom were afterwards known by the name of Saxons. They established seven kingdoms in England called the Heptarchy.

King Arthur acquired his fame in opposing the Saxons. Christianity was introduced in the reign of Ethelbert by Augustine, and forty monks sent by Pope Gregory. Towards the close of the eighth century the number of the Saxon kingdoms was reduced to three:—Northumbria, Mercia, and Wessex. Egbert, king of Wessex, united the whole country into one great kingdom, called Angle-land, or England.

The Danes from the coasts of Scandinavia and Denmark made inroads on various parts of the island. They were defeated by A.D. 835. Egbert at Hengston Hill, in Cornwall. During the succeeding reigns of Ethelwelf, Ethelbald, Ethelbert, and Ethelred, they continued their ravages, and so increased in numbers, that the efforts made to repel them were unavailing.

On his accession, Alfred the Great found he was unable to A.D. 871. cope successfully with the Danes. After wandering for some time in disguise, and in constant danger of falling into the hands of the enemy, he at length collected all A.D. 878. Ethandune in Wiltshire. Peace having been restored, Alfred devoted all his energies to the improvement of his country, but his labours were interrupted by a fresh invasion of the Danes under a sea-king named Hastings. They were repulsed with great loss on the coast of Kent; their leader left the country and never afterwards returned.

From the death of Alfred to the accession of the Danish line,

nine kings reigned in England. His son and successor, Edward. was the first to assume the title of King of England. Athelstan, who succeeded, encouraged commerce by conferring the title of thane on all merchants who had made three voyages in their own ships. Edmund I., the next king, defeated the Danes A.D. 934. of Northumbria who had risen in rebellion under Aniaf. Edred next ascended the throne. In this reign Glastonbury Abbey was rebuilt. Its abbot, Dunstan, had acquired so much influence over the king that the management of affairs was chiefly entrusted to him. Edwy, nephew of Edred, became king at the age of sixteen. He married Elgiva; Dunstan, who objected to the marriage, was banished from the kingdom. After a brief exile he returned. Edgar the Peaceable succeeded. No foreign enemies invaded England during this reign. The king was successful in extirpating wolves from the kingdom. Edgar displayed his vanity on the occasion of a visit to Chester, when he compelled eight princes to row his barge on the river Dee. He was succeeded by Edward, surnamed the Martyr, from the manner of his death. The next king was Ethelred the Unready. The Danes during this reign again renewed their incursions. The king endeavoured to purchase their departure by large sums of money which he raised by means of a tax called Danegelt. Finding they did not desist from their ravages, he ordered a general

massacre of the invaders to take place. He afterwards fled to France, and Sweyn was proclaimed king, who reigned only about three weeks. Canute his son then became king, but on the recall of Ethelred he left the kingdom. Edmund II., surnamed Ironside, now ascended the throne. A division of the kingdom having taken place, Edmund ruled over the southern, and Canute over the northern counties. The king was murdered at Oxford, and Canute became sole monarch of England.

ENGLAND UNDER THE DANES.

Four Danish Kings reigned in England:—Sweyn, Canute, Harold I., and Hardicanute. Canute's government was at first cruel and despotic, but after his authority had been fully established, he ruled with mildness and justice. He went on a pilgrimage to Rome, and after his return visited A.D. 1031. Southampton, where he administered the well-known reproof to his courtiers for their flattery. Harold I. succeeded, but the Earl of Godwin was in favour of Hardicanute. A compromise was effected: Harold obtained London and the countries north of the Thames, while the south was given to Hardicanute. The king died at Oxford. Hardicanute's reign lasted only two years. He killed himself by intemperance. With his death Danish rule in England ceased, and the Saxon line was restored in the person of Edward the Confessor.

RESTORATION OF THE SAXON LINE.

On his accession, Edward made himself popular by restoring the Saxon laws and abolishing Danegelt. He afterwards incurred the displeasure of his nobles by the peculiar favours he showed to his Norman followers. An insurrection seemed in witable, but the attempt failed. Tostig, one of Godwin's sons, married the sister of Matilda, wife of William, Duke of Normandy. The duke visited England, and made the acquaintance of several of the leading nobility; it is also said that he persuaded Edward to appoint him his successor. As Edward had no heir, the Witenagemote invited Edward the Outlaw to return to England, but he died shortly after his arrival, leaving behind · him a son named Edgar, who was quite unfit to govern. Harold, second son of Earl Godwin, whilst sailing in the English Channel, was shipwrecked, and fell into the hands of William, who exacted from him a promise, afterwards confirmed by an oath, that he would support him in his claims to the throne of England. It is said that Edward, shortly before his death, had declared Harold his successor.

The accession of Harold II. was sanctioned by the Witenagemote, and hailed with delight by the people. Duke William now put forward his claims, and, at the same time, reminded. Harold of the oath he had taken, but Harold maintained that an

oath taken in such circumstances could not be binding. parties then prepared for the conflict which was to decide whether a Saxon or Norman was to occupy the throne of England. Before the struggle commenced, Harold defeated an army of Norwegians at Stamford Bridge, in which A.D. 1066. engagement Tostig was slain. William in the mean-Sept. 25. time had landed at Pevensey in Sussex. advanced to meet him, and the great and decisive battle was fought at Senlac, nine miles from Hastings. Har-A.D. 1066. old fell mortally wounded, the English were de-Oct. 14. feated, and so William, duke of Normandy, became William, the Conqueror of England.

QUESTIONS FOR WRITTEN OR ORAL EXAMINATION. THE SAXON PERIOD.

CHAPTER I.—SAXON SETTLEMENTS.

From the Saxon Invasion to the Reign of Egbert. A.D. 420-A.D. 428 (Pp. 25-29).

- 1. To what enemies were the Britons
- exposed after the Romans had left?

 2. To whom did they apply for aid?

 3. What answer did they receive?
- 4. Why could no further assistance be given?
- 5. What did the Britons then resolve
- What were the names of the leaders of those from whom they sought assistance?
 - 7. State what followed.
- How were the Saxons rewarded for their services?
- 9. Were they satisfied with this, or what did they do?
- 10. Where did these invaders come from ?
 - 11. What was their character?

- 12. How many tribes did they consist of?
- 13. What was the general name by which they were afterwards known? 14. How many kingdoms did they
- establish in England? 15. What name was given to these
- kingdoms? 16. Mention them in the order in which they were established.
- 17. What part of England was included under each?
- 18. What do you know of the condition of Britain during the fifth cen-
- tury? 19. What became of those Britons who escaped from the cruelty of the Saxons?

King Arthur-Title of Bretwalds-Christianity Restored.

- famous? 2. What order of knighthood did he
- form ?
 - 3. Where was he mortally wounded? 4. Where is Glastonbury? 5. What superstitious belief existed
- for a long time among his countrymen regarding him?
 6. What is meant by the title,
 "Bretwalda?"
- 7. In whose reign was Christianity introduced among the Saxons?
 - 8. What did Pope Gregory observe.

- 1. How did King Arthur become on one occasion, whilst walking along the streets of Rome?
 - 9. What answer was given to his
 - inquiry?
 10. What did he reply?
 - 11. Whom did he afterwards send to England?
 - 12. For what purpose?
 - 13. What Saxon king became a con-
 - vert to Christianity?

 14. Who followed his example?

 15. For what else is the reign of Ethelbert distinguished?

Offs, King of Mercia-Saxon Kingdoms United under Egbert.

- 1. How many Saxon Kingdoms were there at the close of the Eighth Century? What were their names?
 Which of these was the first to give
- way ?
- 4. Who brought about its fall?
 5. Where did Offa drive those Britons who invaded his territory?
- 6. How did he provide against their inroads?
- 7. How far did this embankment
- extend? 8. What kingdom did he annex to Mercia?
 - Who succeeded Offa?
- 10. What did he accomplish? 11. What name was then given to the whole kingdom?
- 12. From what is it derived?

CHAPTER II. ANGLO-SAXON KINGS.

From Egbert, A.D. 827, to the Death of Alfred, A.D. 901. (Pp. 29-33).

- 1. On the accession of Egbert what) new enemies landed in England?
- 2. Where did they come from?
- 3. In what respect did they resemble the Saxons?
 - 4. What were their leaders termed?
 - 5. What device was on their banner? 6. What deities did they worship?
- 7. What was their opinion of the Christianised Saxons?
 - 8. What did this account for?
- 9. After committing numerous ravages where were they at length defeated?
 - 10. By whom?
 - 11. Who succeeded Egbert?
- 12. What depredations did the Danes commit during his reign?
 13. Where did they permanently es-
- tablish themselves? 14. What annual tribute was insti-
- tated during this reign?
 - 15. Who succeeded Ethelwulf? 16. Whom did he marry?

- 17. Who were displeased at this? 18. What was the result?
- 19. Who succeeded Ethelbald?
- 20. What was the nature of his policy with the Danes?
 - 21. Who was the next Saxon king?
- 22. How was he engaged during the whole of his reign?
 - 23. How many battles did he fight?
 24. What was his fate?
- 25. Who was the first "Earl" in England?
- 26. Where was King Alfred born?
 27. How old was he when he ascended the throne?
- 28. With whom had Alfred immediately to contend?
 29. Was he successful?
 - 80. By whom was he deserted?
- 31. What was he then compelled to do?
- 82. Where did he conceal himself? 83. Relate the story told about Alfred and the cakes.

Alfred Retires to Athelney-Visits the Danish Camp-Victory over the Danes.

- 1. Where did Alfred go after quitting the service of the cow-herd?
 - 2. What did he build at this place? 8. Who were summoned to his
- presence? 4. What means did the king employ to ascertain the strength of the Danes?
- 5. Who gave him permission to reside
- in the camp?
 6. What did he learn from the talk of the Danes?
- 7. Of what advantage was this to him?
- 8. What did the Danes now desire? 9. What were the terms proposed by Alfred?
- 10. How many became converts to Christianity?
- 11. What did they receive from the
- king?
 12. By what name was this district afterwards known?

Alfred's Social Schemes-Country again Invaded-Danes Defeated-Alfred's Death.

- 1. What means did Alfred now take to promote the prosperity of the country?
- 2. How did he improve the social condition of his subjects?
- 3. How was he interrupted in the midst of such useful labours?
- 4. What happened to the invaders?
 5. What became of their leader?
- 6. How did Alfred spend the remain-
- ing years of his life?
 7. When and where did he die?
 8. Where was he buried?

 - How long did he reign?

CHAPTER III .- ANGLO-SAXON KINGS-(Continued).

From the Death of Alfred, A.D. 901, to the Accession of the Danish Line, A.D. 1016 (Pp. 28-31).

- Who succeeded Alfred?
 What was he surnamed?
- 8. Why so called?
- 4. Who disputed his claim to the throne?
- 5. What circumstance put an end to the quarrel?
 - 6. Who was the next king?
- 7. Who formed a conspiracy against him?
- 8. Where did he gain a great victory?
- 9. Who were slain in this conflict? 10. What did Athelstan do to encour-
- age commerce? 11. What orders did he give with regard to the Bible?
- 12. Who was the next king?13. Whom did he defeat shortly after his accession?
 - 14. To whom did he give Cumbria?
 - 15. On what condition? 16. How was Edmund I. killed?
 - 17. Who succeeded?

 - 18. Who were thus passed over?
- 19. Why? 20. State what you know about Dun-
- stan. 21. Who succeeded Edred? 22. Whom did he marry?
- 23. Tell what happened on the day of his coronation.

- 24. To what cruel treatment was his queen subjected?
- 25. Who was the next king?
- 26. What important measures were introduced during his reign?
- 27. What benefit did he confer upon Wales?
- 28. How did he show his vanity?
- 29. Why was he surnamed the "Peaceable?"
 - 30. By whom was he succeeded?
 - 31. Who opposed his accession?
- 32. Why?
 33. Relate the circumstances connected with his death
 - 84. Who succeeded Edward?
 - 35. Explain the origin of Danegelt. 86. What means did the king next
- adopt to get rid of the Danes?
 - 87. What was the result?
- 88. Who was the first Danish king that reigned in England?
- 39. How long did he reign?
 40. What act of cruelty did his son
- 41. What division of the kingdom was made in the reign of Edmund II.?
 - 42. What was the fate of this king?
 43. Who now became sole monarch
- of England?
- 44. Mention in order the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from the death of Alfred to the accession of the Danish Line.

CHAPTER IV .- ENGLAND UNDER THE DANES.

A.D. 1017 TO A.D. 1042.

Canute—Harold I.—Hardicanute (Pp. 31-33).

- 1. What Danish kings reigned in England?
- 2. What was the nature of Canute's Rome? government at first?
- 3. Give instances to show that such Was the case.
- 4. How did he afterwards rule?
- 5. What induced the king to visit
- 6. Give an account of his visit.
- 7. How did he reprove his flatterers?
- 8. Where did he die?

England under the Danes-Continued.

9. What were the names of his three sons? 10. What did he leave to each?

11. Who succeeded Canute?

12. What was his surpame?
13. Why so called? [Hardicanute?
14. Who supported the claims of

of 15. How was the matter settled?
16. What is the only event worthy of

notice during this reign?

17. Where did Harold I. die?18. By whom was he succeeded?19. How did he show his dislike to

the memory of Harold?
20. Relate the circumstances con-

nected with the death of Hardicanute. 21. What line of kings now ceased in England?

22. How was the Saxon line restored?

CHAPTER V.-RESTORATION OF THE SAXON LINE. A.D. 1042,-A.D. 1066 (Pp. 89-47).

Edward the Confessor-Harold II.-Edward favours the Normans-Earl Godwin-Duke of Normandy visits England.

1. Why was Edward surnamed the Confessor?

2. Was he the rightful heir?
3. How then did he obtain the

- throne? 4. How did he render himself popular
- with the people?

 5. What afterwards caused his popu-
- larity to diminish?
 6. What favours did he show to the
- Normans? 7. How did these foreigners treat the England?
- Anglo-Saxons? 8. What powerful noble was offended
- at this? 9. What became of him and his family?
 - 10. Who was Tostig?

11. Whom did he marry?

12. To what did this marriage afterwards lead?

13. When the Duke of Normandy first came to England, how did he spend much of his time?

14. What was he surprised to find in the various towns he visited?

15. What did he persuade Edward to do?

16. Who at this time returned to

17. For what purpose?18. How was this prevented?

19. How did the king now act towards Godwin?

20. What was the name of Godwin's son?

William of Normandy and Harold—Revolt of the Danes in Northumbria—Death of the King.

1. What previous king had gone on a pilgrimage to Rome?

2. What did Edward now propose to do ?

8. Who opposed this?
4. Why?
5. Who at this time was invited to return to England?

6. What happened shortly after his arrival?

7. Whom did he leave behind him? 8. State what you know about Edgar.

Who was his rival for the crown on this side the Channel?

10. What powerful competitor was there on the other side of the Channel? 11. What happened to Harold whilst sailing in the English Channel?
12. What was then the custom when

a wreck took place?

- 13. What was done to Harold and his companions?
- 14. Who demanded the prisoners? 15. How was Harold treated by William?
- 16. What promise did he obtain from Harold?
- 17. Was this all, or what else did he do?

18. Relate what followed.
19. What reason did Harold give for not regarding the oath he had taken as binding on his conscience?

20. During his absence, who had revolted against his brother? 21. What did Edward do on his re-

turn?

22. What advice did Harold give the king?

23. Who now left the kingdom?

Restoration of the Saxon Line-Continued.

- 24. Where did he go?
- 25. What did he do there?
- 26. What did this proceeding afterwards turn out to be?
- 27. Whose life was now drawing to a close ?
- 28. What gave the people cause for alarm?
 - 29. What caused a feeling of despon-
- dency to take possession of the Con-
- 30. Whom did he appoint as his successor ?
- 81. When did Edward die?
- 32. Where was he buried?
- 83. When, and by whom was he canonised?

THE LAST SAXON KING-HAROLD II.

Duke of Normandy claims the Throne—Prepares to Invade England—Battle of Stamford Bridge.

- 1. Who was Harold II.?
- When was he proclaimed king? 8. Had he any hereditary title to the
- throne?
 - 4. How then did he succeed?
 - 5. Who opposed his claims?
 6. On what grounds?
- 7. What reply did Harold send to William?
- 8. To whom did William submit his claims?
- 9. Who at this time guided the counsels of the Vatican?
- 10. To whom did he wish the kings of Europe to be subject?

- 11. How did the Pope at length decide? 12. What was sent to William?
- 13. What was the number of his army?
- 14. Of his fleet? 15. With what other person had Harold to contend?
- 16. How do you account for this?
 17. Where did the invaders land?
 18. What did Harold offer his brother?
- 19. What did he say in reply?
- 20. What compensation was Harold willing to give to the King of Norway?
 - 21. State what followed.

William Arrives in England—Battle of Hastings.

- Where did William land?
- Who advanced to meet him?
- 3. What had caused Harold considerable loss?
 - 4. In what state were his forces?
- 5. What was he advised to do?
- 6. Did he act upon this advice, or what did he do?
- What solemn promise did the English make previous to engaging in battle with the Normans?
- How did Harold's soldiers spend the night before the battle?
- How were the Normans engaged? 10. Where and when was this great battle fought?
- 11. Who commenced the attack?
- 12. How was it met by the Saxons? 13. Who had his horse shot under
- 14. What report then spread?

Ł

15. What effect had this upon the Normans?

- 16. What did the duke immediately do?
- 17. What did he exclaim? 18. What favourite stratagem did he
- now adopt? 19. With what success?
- 20. How long was the contest maintained?
 - 21. What befel Harold? 22. Who shared a similar fate?
- 23. What desperate effort did the English make before they finally gave way?
 - 24. With what result?
- 25. Who discovered the body of Harold?
- 26. What ransom did his mother offer for it?
- 27. Where was it afterwards deposited?
- 28. What was done by William to commemorate the battle?

CHAPTER VL-POLITICAL AND SOCIAL CONDITION OF THE ANGLO-SAXONS (Pp. 47-51).

Government-Classes of Society-Witenagemote-Political Divisions of the Country.

- What was the nature of the government of the Anglo-Saxons? 2. When a king died whose claims
- were frequently set aside?
- 3. Why was this the case?
 4. Give instances to show that this custom prevailed.
- 5. What powers were invested in the king?
- 6. What were the sons of the king celled?
- 7. Who were next in rank to the king?
 - 8. Describe the nature of their duties. 9. Who came next in order of rank?
- 10. Into how many classes were they divided ?
- Tell their names.
 How did the one differ from the other?

- 13. What qualification was necessary for holding the rank of thane?
 - 14. Who were next in order?
 - 15. What was their occupation?
 16. Which was the most numerous
- class? 17. Describe the nature of their condition.
- 18. What was the Witenagemote?
 19. When was it usually held?
- 20. Who presided over this assembly?
 - 21. By whom was it attended?
 22. With what powers was it in-
- vested? 23. How was the country divided for
- political purposes?
 24. What was the largest division called?
 - 25. What was a tithing? a hundred?

Courts of Justice-Modes of Trial-Saxon Literature-Houses —Food—Dress—Occupation.

- 1. Which was the supreme court of justice?
- 2. What one came next in order of dignity?
 - 3. How often did it meet?
- 4. Who presided over it?
 5. What matters came under its jurisdiction?
- 6. What court followed in importance ?
- 7. How often was it held?
- 8. By whom was it attended?
- 9. What causes did it decide?
- 10. Who presided over it?
 11. What other courts existed in the time of the Saxons?
 - 12. How were crimes punished?
- 13. How might a person accused of a crime be sequitted?
 - 14. What were compurgators?
- 15. How many of these were necessary in the case of a person accused of murder?
- 16. When was trial by ordeal appealed to !
- 17. What three forms of this kind of trial were most frequently adopted?
- 18. State what the accused had to do in the hot-water ordeal.

- 19. In the hot-iron ordeal.
- In the ordeal of the corsped.
- 21. How was the guilt or innocence of the accused, under each of the three kinds of ordeal, determined?
- 22. How do you account for the different dialects among the early Saxons?
- 23. When was one form of speech adopted? 24. What are derived from the Saxon
- language ? 25. Mention the names of some Saxon
- authors and their works. 26. How were the houses of the
- Anglo-Saxons constructed? 27. What kind of food was greatly
- relished? 28. State what you know regarding the dress of the Saxons.
- 29. What were the occupations of the
- upper classes? 30. Why were the vassals of the Saxon nobles taught various kinds of trades?
- 31. Specify some of these trades.32. How did the Saxon ladies employ their time?

1.5

CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY

OF THE

PRINCIPAL EVENTS DURING THE SAXON PERIOD.

A.D. 420 TO A.D. 1066.

- Fifth Century. A.D.
- 449. At the request of Vortigern, Saxons land in England under Hengist and Horsa.
- 450. Vortigern cedes Isle of Thanet to Hengist.
- 457. Hengist founds the Kingdom of Kent.
- 490. Ella, a Saxon chief, founds the Kingdom of Sussex.

Sixth Century.

- 519. Cerdic founds the Kingdom of Wessex.
- 527. Ercenwin founds the Kingdom of Essex. 542. Death of King Arthur.
- 547. Kingdom of Northumbria founded by Ida.
- 575. East Anglia founded by Uffa. 585. Mercia founded by Cridda.
- 592. First civil war among the Saxon kings. Sussex joined to Wessex.
- 596. Re-introduction of Christianity by Augustine, who is sent by Pope Gregory.

Seventh Century.

- 627. Edward of Northumbria professes the Christian religion.
- 672. Bede, the historian, born at Jarrow, near Durham.

Eighth Century.

- 735. Death of Bede.
- 787. First landing of the Danes in England.

Ninth Century.

- 827. Egbert, King of Wessex, becomes sole king of England. 835. Danes defeated by Egbert at **Hengston Hill** in Cornwall.
- 849. Alfred the Great born at Wantage in Berkshire.
- 871. Accession of King Alfred.
- 878. Danes under Guthrum defeated by Alfred at Ethandune in Wiltshire.
- 893. Danes under Hastings defeated by Alfred on the coast of Kent.

Tenth Century.

- 901. Death of Alfred at Farringdon in Berkshire.
- 934. Athelstan gains a great victory over the Anglo-Danes and Scots at Brunanburgh in Yorkshire.
- 991. Tax called Danegelt levied. (One hide of land equal 120 ac.).

Eleventh Century.

- 1002. Massacre of the Danes throughout England by order of Ethelred.
- 1014. Ethelred escapes to Normandy. Sweyn proclaimed King of England.
- 1015. Death of Sweyn at Gainsborough. His son Canute elected
- 1016. Edmund Ironside divides the kingdom with Canute. 1017. Death of Edmund. Canute becomes sole king.
- 1031. Canute performs a pilgrimage to Rome.
- 1042. Saxon Line restored under Edward the Confessor.
- 1051. William, Duke of Normandy, visits England.
 1052. Earl Godwin invades England, and is restored to power.
- 1053. Death of Earl Godwin.
- 1066. Death of Edward. Harold II. elected king by the Witenagemote.
- Harold defeats an army of Norwegians under his brother Tostig and Hardrada at Stamford Bridge, near York (Sept. 25).
- William, Duke of Normandy, lands with an army at Pevensey, in Sussex, to vindicate his claim to the throne of England (Sept. 28).
- Battle of Hastings. Harold defeated and slain. Overthrow of the Saxon monarchy (Oct. 14).

EMINENT PERSONS.

Arthur, king of the tribe of ancient Britons called the Silures. Gildas, the first British historian, was a monk of Bangor. He wrote a work on the destruction of Britain, the earliest British history known (570).

Caedmon, a monk of Whitby, and the most ancient English poet (680).

Aldhelm, a Saxon writer of Latin poems (709).

Bede, surnamed the Venerable, was the most learned of all the Saxon authors. He wrote an "Ecclesiastical History of England," and translated the Scriptures into the Saxon language (735).

Alcuin, a Saxon writer on history and theology, was a scholar of the Venerable Bede (804).

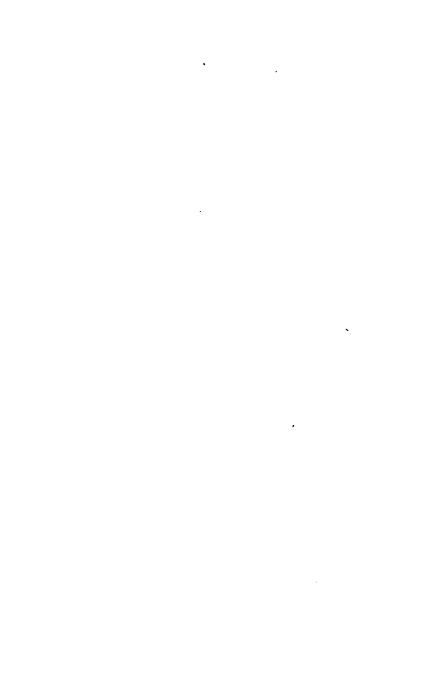
Nennius, Abbot of Bangor, wrote a history of Britain (858).

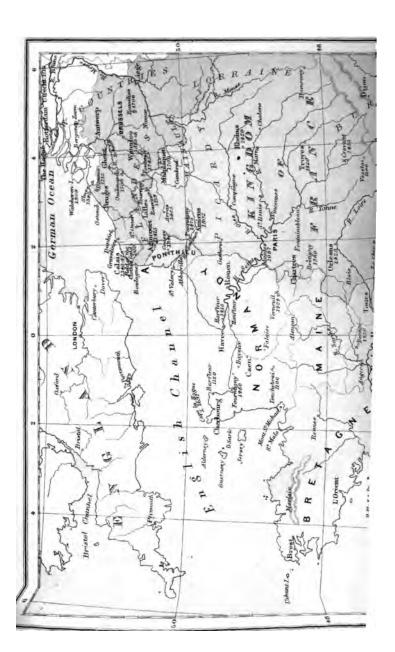
Asser wrote the life of Alfred the Great (909). Dunstan, Abbot of Glastonbury (959).

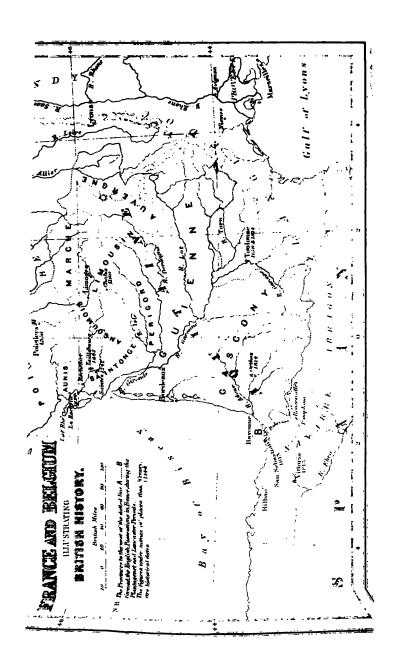
Earl Godwin, one of the most powerful of the Saxon nobles (1053).

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE SAXON KIN OF ENGLAND.

Telegrah			907 L	0 A.D.				
Egbert,		rom A.D.		0 A.D.				
Ethelwulf,		_	836					
Ethelbald,	_	_	857					
Ethelbert,	_		860	_				
Ethelred,	_	-	866	_				
Alfred,		-	871					
Edward the Elder,	_	-	901	_				
Athelstan,	_	_	925	_				
Edmund L,		-	941	_				
Edred,	_	_	946	-				
Edwy,	_	_	955					
Edgar,		_	959	_				
Edward the Martyr	_		975	_				
Ethelred the Unready	. –	_	978	_				
Edmund Ironside,	. –	-	1016					
DANISH KINGS.								
Canute,reigned from A.D. 1016 to A.D.								
Harold L,			1035	_				
Hardicanute,		_	1040	_				
Sweyn reigned only a few weeks.								
SAXON LINE RESTORED.								
Edward the Confessor,								









PART SECOND.

THE NORMAN PERIOD.

NORMAN KINGS.

WILLIAM I.,	began	to reign	1066, died	1087.
WILLIAM II.,	,,	••	1087, ,,	1100.
HENRY I.,	,,	,,	1100, ,,	1135.
STEPHEN,	• •	"	1135, ,,	1154.

CHAPTER I.

WILLIAM I. (THE CONQUEROR).

William's Personal History—Origin of the Normans—Submission of the Saxons
—Tumult at the Coronation—The King Visits Normandy—Discontent of
the People—William's Campaigns—Camp of Refuge—Norman Barons
Revolt—Rebellion of Robert—Death of the King—His Character.

William's Personal History—Origin of the Normans— Submission of the Saxons.

WILLIAM I., the illegitimate son of Robert, sixth Duke of Normandy, was born at Falaise, a town in France, in 1027. He married Matilda, daughter of Baldwin, Earl of Flanders. His children were: Robert, Duke of Normandy; Richard, who was killed in the New Forest; and William and Henry, who became successively Kings of England. He had also six daughters, one of whom, named Adela, married Stephen, Count of Blois.

William, Duke of Normandy, was descended from one of the most formidable of the Norwegian Sea-Kings, Rollo, or Rolf the Ganger, who about a century and a half before had landed in the north-west of France at the head of a band of Scandinavian pirates, and obtained

possession of a large extent of territory, to which he gave the name of Normandy. The Northmen or Norsemen, that is Normans, as the followers of Rollo were called, gradually adopted the language, manners, and customs of the people among whom they resided; but the bold and adventurous spirit of their ancestors was never suffered to degenerate.

William, after the battle of Hastings, remained for several days in the neighbourhood of the scene of his victory over Harold; while a number of nobles, at the head of whom were Stigand, Archbishop of Canterbury, and Aldred, Archbishop of York, proclaimed Edgar Atheling, grandson of Edmund Ironside, King of England. The Conqueror, in the meantime, advanced against Romney, and put to death many of the inhabitants for attacking several of the sailors belonging to the Norman fleet. He next marched upon Dover—the key of England -which immediately surrendered, and afterwards pushed on to London; but the people, becoming alarmed at the ravages already committed by his troops in the neighbouring counties, were disposed to submit to his authority; The two archbishops, the clergy, and all the chief nobility of the Saxons, now declared for William, and Edgar himself soon delivered up his crown.

Tumult at the Coronation—The King Visits Normandy— Discontent of the People.

The ceremony of coronation was performed in Westminster Abbey, on Christmas day, 1066. When Aldred, Archbishop of York, was placing the crown on his head, the acclamations of assent, which proceeded from the nobles within the abbey, caused the Norman soldiers to imagine that the person of their monarch had been assailed, and they immediately began to burn and plunder the houses, as well as attack and put to death many of the Saxons. William succeeded, with some difficulty, in quelling the tumult.

William began to reign at the age of thirty-nine. At first he endeavoured to gain the confidence of his subjects

by an impartial administration of justice: the Saxons were permitted to keep possession of their property; their laws and customs were preserved, and a pardon extended to those who had taken up arms against him. was treated as a friend, and with the respect due to his rank and position. In March, 1067, the King visited Normandy, and during his absence the government of the country was entrusted to his half-brother Odo, Bishop of Bayeux, and his friend Fitz-Osborne, Earl of Hereford. William had not been long absent when disturbances broke out in various quarters. Odo ruled with terrible severity; the Louses of the Saxons were pillaged, and their wives and daughters suffered all kinds of abuse. Unable to endure such insolence and oppression, they formed a plan for the destruction of all the Normans in the land. The time fixed upon for carrying out this design was during Ash-Wednesday, * when the victims would all be at church; but Odo having been made aware of the plot immediately informed William, who hastened back with a number of soldiers to inflict punishment on the insurgents.

William's Campaigns—The Camp of Refuge.

The King now regarded the English as his determined enemies. In 1068 he led an expedition against the city of Exeter, which had refused admittance to a Norman garrison. It made a brave resistance, but was taken after a siege of eighteen days. In 1069 a rebellion broke out in the north; a number of Norman soldiers, who had taken possession of the city of Durham, in spite of the remonstrance of the Saxon bishop, was suddenly attacked by the inhabitants on the following day, and slain without mercy. Sweyn, King of Denmark, shortly afterwards sent a fleet under the command of his two sons Harold and Canute, who captured York, slew the garrison, numbering three thousand men, and completely demolished the Norman fortifications. William immediately hastened

^{*} So called from a custom in the church of Rome, of sprinkling sahes that day upon the heads of penitents,

northwards, regained York, and laid waste the whole country from the Humber to the Tees. What was formerly a flourishing and fertile district, was now turned into a barren wilderness. In consequence of such devastations, famine and pestilence followed, and more than one hundred thousand persons are said to have perished of hunger. Some of the survivors afterwards took refuge in Scotland, where they were kindly treated by Malcolm Canmore, who had married Margaret, sister of Edgar Atheling. The King next proceeded to divide the estates of the Saxon nobility among his Norman friends, who now became the possessors of nearly all the lands in the kingdom. The English bishops and clergy were deprived of their livings and dignities, and all offices of honour and importance were given to foreigners.

In the meantime, a strong party of Saxons who would neither desert their country nor submit to the Normans, formed what was called a "Camp of Refuge" in the Isle of Elv. which, on account of the marshes and woods that surrounded it, was almost inaccessible. This patriotic band was commanded by Hereward, who, along with Stigand, Morcar, and some others, bravely withstood the attacks of the Normans. At length William constructed a causeway across the fens, which enabled him to reach their retreat; -and by this means and the treachery of the monks of Ely they were compelled to surrender. A.D. 1071. Thus was crushed the last effort made for freedom by the Saxons. Some of those who submitted were executed as rebels. Hereward escaped, but the King afterwards restored him to favour.

Norman Barons Revolt-Rebellion of Robert.

Although William had now completely reduced the whole of England, a number of his own barons began to revolt, and attempted to deprive him of the kingdom. Their rebellion was quickly suppressed, and the chief conspirators punished. William, when about to invade England, had promised to give up Normandy to his eldest son, in the event of the enterprise proving successful.

Robert now claimed his right, but the King refused, saying, "he was not accustomed to undress till he went to bed." Robert accordingly took up arms, and for some years father and son were at war with each other. Philip I., King of France, favoured Robert, and gave him the castle of Gerberoi. William laid siege to the castle, and on one occasion the young prince and the King met in single combat. Their features were concealed from each other by their helmets, and after a fierce combat, William was wounded and unhorsed by Robert, who, on hearing his father's voice, as he called for help, threw himself on his knees and implored pardon. William after some time forgave him; a reconciliation took place, and the unseemly contest was brought to a close.

Death and Character of the King.

Towards the close of his reign, William had become exceedingly corpulent. Philip, the French King, had one day indulged in a coarse joke against his person; this gave great offence to the English monarch, who, entering the dominions of Philip, reduced the town of Mantes to ashes. As he was riding amongst the ruins of the city, his horse, happening to tread on some hot embers, started, and threw him forward on the saddle. The injury he received proved fatal; he was conveyed to a village in the neighbourhood of Rouen, where he died on the 9th of September 1087, in the sixty-first year of his age, and the twenty-first of his reign over England. His body was afterwards conveyed to Caen, where it was buried in the church of St. Stephen.

William was endowed with great natural abilities. He surpassed all the other monarchs of his time in capacity for governing, whether in peace or war. On the other hand, he was ambitious and passionate, and although his cruelty and tyranny caused him to be dreaded by his own subjects, he nevertheless "transmitted his power to posterity, and the throne is still filled by his descendants, a proof that the foundations which he laid were firm and

solid."

GENERAL FACTS.

The Feudal System—The New Forest—Curfew Bell—Domesday Book—Cinque Ports—Courte Established—Public Buildings.

The Feudal System

1. The feudal system had existed for many centuries on the continent of Europe before its introduction into It originated in this way: When a chief or prince conquered a new country, the land was to a large extent divided amongst the invaders. The chief or leader of the expedition obtained the largest portion, and the rest was parcelled out among his followers according to their rank and merit, and these again would subdivide their estates into smaller portions among their dependents. Such grants of land were made on condition that the recipients would take up arms in defence of the domains of the donors, and perform other military service whenever occasion required it. The estate which the sovereign gave to any of his principal followers was at first called a benefice, but about the middle of the tenth century it got the name of feud or fief.

This system was brought to perfection in England by William, who, after the Conquest, became the owner of all the lands in the kingdom. He distributed large estates among his followers, who were obliged to take the oath of fealty or fidelity, and do homage. The King was called their lord or suzerain, and they were his vassals. In doing homage for lands, the vassal, ungirding his sword and uncovering his head, knelt before his lord, between whose hands he placed his own, and then solemnly declared that he would thenceforward become his man (homme, hence the word homage), and serve him with life and limb, and worldly honour. The ceremony was generally ratified by the vassal kissing the cheek of his lord, which compliment the lord returned. Traces of this are still found to exist at the coronation of our sovereigns. The peers, all kneeling, with heads uncovered, kiss the cheek of their monarch, an emblem of affection, submission, and fidelity.

The feudal system, as established by William, had for its object the preservation of his conquest, by establishing and maintaining a standing army throughout the kingdom. The whole country was divided into 60,215 parts, called *knights' fees*, each of which contained from 300 to 400 acres, on which was kept an armed soldier, with a suitable horse, ready for active warfare whenever required. By this means the King could call out into the field, on the shortest notice, and free of expense, an army of 60,000 men, mounted on good horses, and commanded by their own chiefs.

The New Forest-The Curfew Bell-Domesday Book.

2. The Normans were particularly fond of hunting, and William took so much delight in this sport that he formed a hunting-ground for himself, called the New Forest, near his favourite residence at Winchester. For the preservation of the King's game severe forest laws were introduced, from which the game laws of the present day take their origin.

3. William introduced into England the Norman custom of ringing a bell, called the curfew (couvre feu), at sunset in summer, and about eight o'clock in winter, as a signal for the people to put out their fires and other lights. This was done to prevent secret assemblages of the people after nightfall for the purpose of plotting incurrection, but it was also of use as a precaution against fire, seeing that most of the houses were made of wood. The English, however, looked upon it as a memorial of bondage, and a mark of degradation.

4. The Domesday Book, still preserved in the British Museum, gave the result of a general survey of the country, instituted for the purpose of ascertaining the extent of each estate, its division into arable land, meadow, pasture, and wood; the names of the owners and tenants; the number of people, and their condition, whether bond or free; and the revenue of the whole, before and at the time of the Conquest. The survey was commenced in 1080, and completed in 1086.

Cinque Ports—Courts Established—Public Buildings— Bayeaux Tapestry.

To guard against invasion, William fortified the Cinque Ports-Dover, Hastings, Romney, Hythe, and Sandwich. The Channel Islands, off the coast of France, are all that now remain to Britain of the Norman possessions of the Conqueror. The Courts of Chancery and Exchequer were established in the reign of William; the former was the grand court of equity, and the latter regulated all matters affecting the revenue of the sovereign. Justices of Peace were appointed by William in 1079. The principal public buildings which he erected were the Tower of London, Windsor Castle, and Westminster School. The Bayeaux Tapestry, said to have been the work of Queen Matilda and captive Saxon ladies, represents in a number of worsted pictures the most important events of the Conquest. The whole forms a valuable Pictorial History, wrought on a piece of canvas, 19 inches in breadth, and 68 vards in length. It is still preserved in the Cathedral Church of Bayeaux.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF WILLIAM; I. (Conqueror).

A.D. 1066. -A.D. 1087.

William, son of Robert, Duke of Normandy. Born at Falaise, 1027. Married Matilda, daughter of Baldwin V., Count of Flanders. Died at Rouen, 1087. Reigned 21 years.

After the battle of Hastings several nobles proclaimed Edgar Atheling king, but he resigned in favour of William, who was crowned in Westminster Abbey on Christmas day, 1066. During the king's absence in Normandy his subjects revolted. Rebellions broke out in the south-west and north; on his return he captured Exeter and York, and laid waste the whole of the northern counties.

The last effort made by the English to withstand the Normans was in the Isle of Ely. Hereward, the leader of the Saxons, escaped, but afterwards submitted.

William established the Feudal System in England, enacted severe forest laws, and introduced the curfew-bell. It was also in this reign that the Domesday Book, a register of land was compiled.

QUESTIONS.

THE NORMAN PERIOD.

William's Personal History—Origin of the Normans—King's Coronation-Visits Normandy-Discontent of the People.

- 1. Relate the personal history of William I.
 - 2. From whom was he descended?
 8. What were the followers of Rollo
- called?
- 4. Who was first proclaimed king
- after the battle of Hastings? --5. What led the people afterwards to submit to William?
- 6. What disturbance took place at his coronation?
 - 7. How did he endeavour to gain the
- confidence of his subjects? 8. Whom did he appoint as regents
- during his absence in Normandy? 9. How did they treat the Saxons?
 - 10. Relate what followed

William's Campaigns—the Camp of Refuge—Rebellion of Robert-Death and Character of the King.

- 1. What event is connected with the
- year 1068 ? 2. In what part of England did a rebellion break out in 1069?
- 3. What was the cause of it?
- 4. Who enabled the Saxons to take possession of York?
- 5. What cruelties were perpetrated on this occasion?
- 6. By whom was the town afterwards
- 7. Describe the condition at this time of the northern part of England. 8. Where did some of the survivors
- find refuge?
- 9. How were they treated there? By whom?
- 10. In what other way did William punish the Saxons?
- 11. Who were deprived of their livings and dignities?

- 12. On whom were these conferred?
- 13. Where was the last effort made by the Saxons to withstand the Normans?
- 14. Who was their leader?
- 15. How was their place of concealment discovered?
- Relate what followed.
 What was the result of the rebellion formed against William by his own barons?
- 18. What was the nature of Robert's claim to Normandy?
 - 19. Who favoured Robert?
- 20. In what were father and son now
- engaged?
 21. What incident happened during the contest?
- 22. Relate the circumstances connected with William's death.
 - 23. Describe his character.

The Feudal System-The New Forest-The Curfew Bell-Domesday Book.

- 1. How did the feudal system originate?
- 2. On what conditions were grants of land made?
 - 3. What was called a benefice?4. What name did it get about the
- middle of the tenth century?
- 5. After the Conquest who became the owner of all the lands in the kingdom? 6. Explain the meaning of fealty,
- suzerain, vassals, homage 7. For what reason did William estab-
- lish the feudal system in England? 8. Into how many parts was the country divided?
- 9. Of what advantage was this arrange- | Bayeaux Tapestry. ment to William?

- 10. What was the New Forest?
- 11. From what do the game laws of the present day take their origin?
- 12. What was the Curfew?
 13. Why was it introduced into England?
- 14. What information did the Domesday Book give?
- 15. Mention the names of the Cinque Ports.
- 16. What courts were established in William's reign?
- 17. Name the principal public build-
- ings that were erected.

 18. State what you know of the

CHAPTER II.

WILLIAM II. (RUFUS).—1087-1100.

Accession of Rufus—Odo's Conspiracy—Invasion of Normandy—Prince Henry Rebels—Malcolm invades England—Death of the King.

Accession of Rufus.

WILLIAM II., surnamed Rufus from his red hair, was the third son of the Conqueror. His father shortly before his death expressed a wish that William, who was his favourite son, should succeed him on the throne of England, and that Robert should inherit the dukedom of Normandy. William accordingly hastened over from Rouen to England, and was crowned by Lanfranc, Archbishop of Canterbury, on the 26th September, seventeen days after the death of his father.

Odo's Conspiracy.

A number of Norman barons, who held estates both in England and Normandy, felt greatly annoyed at the separation of those countries; they began to see that difficulties would arise in endeavouring to serve two masters, and that they would be obliged to give up either their possessions in Normandy, or those they had recently acquired in England. They desired that Robert, whose claims they considered superior to those of his brother, should rule over both countries; and at length Odo, uncle of the King, at the head of a number of the discontented barons, formed a conspiracy to dethrone Rufus, A.D. 1088. The King, who knew the critical position in which he was placed, lost no time in soliciting aid from the native Saxons. He promised to govern them by good and just laws, to grant them exemption from many taxes, and to give them the liberty of hunting in the New Forest; and on the understanding that William would be as good as his word, they gave him their support. In a short time the rebellion was crushed; but the King, instead of rewarding the Saxons as they deserved, disregarded all the promises he had made, and heaped upon those who

had supported him severer burdens than any they had borne during the reign of his father.

Invasion of Normandy-Prince Henry Rebels,

Normandy, on account of the indolence and misgovernment of Robert, had fallen into a state of anarchy and William, taking advantage of this confusion, endeavoured to drive out his brother and take possession of the dukedom; but by the mediation of the French King, a peace was concluded by which it was agreed, that England and Normandy should, after the death of either of the brothers, belong to the survivor. The younger brother, Henry, felt himself aggrieved by this arrangement, and retired to Mount St. Michael, a fortress on the coast of Normandy. While here he was besieged by his two brothers, who compelled him to surrender, A.D. 1090, but afterwards permitted him to retire to Brittany, where he found shelter among strangers, and wandered about for two years in much poverty.

Malcolm Invades England—Death of the King.

During the absence of William in Normandy, Malcolm, the Scottish King, invaded England and ravaged the northern counties; but William on his return led an expedition into Scotland, and compelled Malcolm to yield to him Cumberland, which for more than a century had been held by the Scottish Kings. Two years after, Malcolm again invaded England, but was killed, along with his son Edward, while besieging the castle of Alnwick. Margaret, Malcolm's queen, was so affected by the intelligence, that she survived her husband only four days.

William was killed while hunting in the New Forest. It is generally believed that the arrow of Sir A.D. 1100. Walter Tyrrel, his favourite hunting companion, glanced from a tree as he shot at a stag, and pierced the King to the heart. Sir Walter immediately rode up, and finding him dead, put spurs to his horse, hastened to the sea-coast, embarked for France, and soon after joined.

the Crusades. The body of the King was found in the evening by a charcoal-burner, who conveyed it in his cart to Winchester, where it was decently interred. It is right to add, that Tyrell, after he returned from the Crusades, solemnly declared that he had neither seen the King on the day of his death, nor had he been in that part of the forest in which it occurred. It was the opinion of some that William, who was greatly disliked on account of his tyranny and oppression, fell by the hand of some secret enemy.

GENERAL FACTS.

The Crusades—Public Buildings—Goodwin Sands.

The Crusades were a number of expeditions, or religious wars, undertaken by the Christian nations of the West to deliver Palestine from the Turks. They commenced in the reign of Rufus, and derived their name from the cross, which was wrought on the dress, and worn on the right shoulder of those who engaged in them. Peter the Hermit, a native of Amiens, visited the Holy Sepulchre of Jerusalem, and beheld with indignation the cruel and insolent manner in which the Christian pilgrims were treated by the Mohammedans. On his return he gave such a description of their sufferings, that multitudes, desirous of plunder and enterprise, and assured of eternal salvation, enlisted under his banner, and commenced their journey eastward. By the time they reached Constantinople, the undisciplined army of the Hermit was greatly reduced in numbers, and shortly afterwards completely destroyed. This is considered the first crusade. In 1097, a larger and better conducted army of pilgrim soldiers arrived at Constantinople, and having entered Palestine, advanced to Jerusalem, which, after a siege of six weeks, they took by storm, and massacred twenty thousand of its inhabitants. Robert, Duke of Normandy, who was one of the leaders in this expedition, was obliged to mortgage his duchy to his brother William for five years, in order to raise funds sufficient to equip himself in a manner consistent with his rank and dignity. The Crusades ended in the reign of Edward I., after having lasted for about 200 years. It is reckoned that in the whole of these eight expeditions to Palestine, more than two millions of Europeans perished by the sword of the Saracens, or by the far more fearful ravages of fatigue, famine, and pestilence.

Westminster Hall was erected by Rufus, and intended as a place for the entertainment of the King's guests and dependents. He also built London Bridge, and

raised a new rampart round the Tower.



WESTMINSTER HALL.

In 1100 the sea burst over a considerable quantity of land on the coast of Kent, which formerly belonged to the Earl Godwin, and formed the Goodwin Sands, a place of great danger to mariners. This disaster is said to have been caused by the Abbot of Canterbury, who at that time possessed the land, but neglected to keep the wall that defended it from the sea in a proper state of repair.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF WILLIAM II. (Rufus).

A.D 1087,-A.D. 1100.

William II., third son of William I. Born in Normandy, 1056. Killed in the New Forest, 1100. Reigned 13 years,

Robert, being the eldest son of the Conqueror, should have succeeded to the throne, but he had to be content with the dukedom of Normandy. A number of the Norman barons, with Odo at their head, formed a conspiracy to dethrone Rufus. Saxons aided the king, and the rebellion was soon quelled.

William invaded Normandy to deprive Robert of his dukedom, but afterwards withdrew. Malcolm, the Scottish king, ravaged

the northern counties of England in 1091.

The Crusades commenced in the reign of Rufus, the first in 1095. Robert joined the ranks of the Crusaders, and mortgaged Normandy to William in order to raise money to equip himself for the enterprise. Westminster Hall and London Bridge were built during this reign. The king was found dead in the New Forest, A.D. 1100.

QUESTIONS.

Accession of Rufus-Odo's Conspiracy.

- 1. Why was William II. surnamed
- Rufus? 2. Who was the rightful heir to the throne? Why?
 - 3. How then did William succeed?
 - 4. By whom was he crowned?
- 5. What gave annoyance to a number of Norman barons?
- 6. Whom did they wish to rule over both England and Normandy?
 7. To what did their discontent lead?
- 8. From whom did the king solicit aid?
- 9. What promises did he make to them?

7. What afterwards became of him? 8. How many invasions of England by Malcolm of Scotland took place

10. How were they rewarded?

during this reign?

Invasion of Normandy—Prince Henry Rebels—Malcolm Invades England—Death of the King.

- 1. How did Robert govern Normandy? 2. What did William endeavour to do?
- 3. How was this prevented?
- 4. What was at length agreed upon? 5. Who felt aggrieved at this arrange-
- ment?
- 9. Give the result of each. 10. Relate the circumstances con-6. Where was he besieged? By whom? nected with the death of Rufus.

The Crusades—Public Buildings—Goodwin Sands.

- What were the Crusades?
- 2. In whose reign did they commence? 8. From what did they derive their
- nama? 4. To whom did they owe their
- origin? 5. Show that such was the case.
- 6. Give the date of the First Crusade.
- 7. Relate the particulars of the Second Crusade, give the date.
- 8. Who was one of the leaders in this
- expedition?

 9. What did he do in order to raise
- the necessary funds? 10. How long did the Crusades last?
- State their number.
- 11. In whose reign did they end?
 12. What public buildings were erected by Rufus?
- 13. How were the Goodwin Sands formed?

CHAPTER III.

HENRY I. (BEAUCLERC).—1100-1135.

Henry's Personal History—His Accession and Policy—Robert Arrives in England—Henry Conquers Normandy—Prince William Drowned—Death of the King.

Henry's Personal History—His Accession and Policy.

HENRY I., brother of the late King, and youngest son of the Conqueror, married first, Matilda or Maud, daughter of Malcolm III. and Margaret of Scotland; and afterwards, Adelicia, daughter of Geoffrey, Duke of Brabant. His children by Maud were, William, who was drowned at sea, and Maud, who was married, first to Henry V., Emperor of Germany, and afterwards to Geoffrey Plantagenet, Earl of Anjou. By his second wife he had no children.

Henry, surnamed Beauclerc, or the good scholar, was hunting in the New Forest when Rufus died. He immediately hastened to Winchester, where he was proclaimed King, and on the third day after his brother's death was crowned in Westminster Abbey. Robert should have succeeded to the throne, but ignorant of the prize that awaited him, he trifled away his time in Italy on his return from Palestine, and Henry, taking advantage of this, had himself proclaimed King.

Immediately after his coronation, Henry endeavoured to strengthen his throne by reforming abuses, and granting a charter of liberties to all classes of his subjects. Still further to conciliate the Saxons, he re-enacted the laws of Edward the Confessor, and married Matilda, a princess of the royal Saxon blood.

rincess of the royal baxon blood.

Robert Arrives in England—Henry Conquers Normandy.

Robert, on his arrival in Normandy, found many ready to join him in vindicating his right to the dominion of England. He accordingly landed with a considerable force at Portsmouth, but Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, endeavoured to effect a reconciliation between the two brothers. Robert at length

agreed to resign his claim, on condition of receiving a pension of 3000 marks a year, and several of the castles which his brother held in Normandy. The King also bound himself to pardon those who had supported the claims of Robert. Henry, however, on his brother's return to Normandy, soon found pretexts for punishing the partisans of Robert. Many of them were deprived of their estates, and banished from the kingdom.

Henry next endeavoured to persuade his brother to resign the government of Normandy in exchange for a sum of money; this he refused, and the King immediately resolved to obtain possession of it by force of a.D. 1106. He defeated the forces of Robert at Tenchebrai, took him prisoner, and confined him in Cardiff Castle, in Wales, during the remainder of his life.

Prince William' Drowned-Death of the King.

When Henry had obtained possession of Normandy, he passed over to that country, taking with him his only son, William, in order to have him recognised as his Having gained his object, the King and the successor. prince prepared to return. Henry embarked at Barfleur, and reached England in safety; but Prince William remained behind and treated the crew of his vessel, which was named the White Ship, to an abundant supply of wine. When he set sail the seamen were intoxicated. and in a short time the vessel struck with full force against a hidden rock. The prince was put into an open boat, and would have been saved, but he ordered the sailors to put back and rescue his natural sister, Margaret, from the wreck. So many leaped into the little boat that it instantly upset, and all on board perished. A.D. 1120. Two men still clung to the wreck—the one was the captain, who, when he learned that the prince was lost, threw himself into the sea, and was drowned; the other was a butcher of Rouen who, of all the passengers and crew, alone escaped. He kept clinging to the mast until he was taken off by some fishermen the following morning. When the sad tidings reached the ears of the

King, he fainted away, and was never afterwards seen to smile.

Henry's only surviving heir was his daughter, Maud or Matilda, whom he immediately proposed as his successor, and caused all the bishops and barons to swear that they would maintain her succession. As she was now a widow, he gave her in marriage to Geoffrey Plantagenet, by whom she had three sons. When Henry, the eldest, was born, the King again assembled the nobility, and caused them to renew their oath of allegiance to Maud and her son.

Henry died at Rouen in the sixty-fourth year of his age. His death is said to have been caused by indigestion, brought on by eating too freely of lampreys, a dish of which he was particularly fond. His A.D. 1135. body was conveyed to England, and buried in Reading Abbey, which he had founded.

GENERAL FACTS.

Charter of Henry I.—Knights Templars.

The Charter of Henry I. shows what were the grievances of the nation during the two preceding reigns, and exhibits the greater part of those privileges which were afterwards more firmly established by Magna Charta. A marked change took place in the coinage. The penny had hitherto borne on the reverse a cross, so as to allow it to be cut into two or four parts to answer for halfpence and farthings. Henry now ordered the halfpenny and farthing to be coined in a circular form like the pennies.

The celebrated order of Knights Templars had its origin in the Crusades, and was established for the protection of the pilgrims who visited the Holy Land. It afterwards had for its object the defence of the Christian faith, and of the Holy Sepulchre against the A.D. 1118. Saracens. They received the name of Templars from their residence being in the immediate neighbourhood of the temple of Jerusalem.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF HENRY L (Beauclere).

A.D. 1100.-A.D. 1135.

Henry, fourth son of the Conqueror. Born at Selby in Yorkshire, 1070.

Married, first, Matilda, daughter of Malcolm III. of Scotland, and of Margaret, sister of Edgar Atheling; and, second, Adelicia, daughter of Geoffrey, Duke of Louvain. Died at Rouen, 1135. Reigned 35 years.

Robert, having returned from the Crusade, landed in England to assert his claim to the crown. He renounced his pretensions Henry invaded on condition of receiving 3000 marks a-year. Normandy and defeated his brother Robert at Tenchebrai. A.D. This victory put Henry in possession of Normandy. Prince William, Henry's only son, was drowned whilst crossing the English Channel in the White Ship, 1120. The Plantagenet royal family was founded by the marriage of Henry's daughter Maud, to Geoffrey Plantagenet, Count of Anjou.

QUESTIONS.

Henry's Personal History—Robert arrives in England—Henry conquers Normandy-Prince William Drowned-Death of the King.

- 1. Relate the personal history of
- Henry I.

 2. Why was he surnamed Beauclerc?
- 8. Give the date of his accession. 4. Who should have succeeded to the
- throne? 5. Why were his claims again over-
- looked? 6. How did Henry endeavour to
- conciliate the Saxons?
- 7. When did Robert arrive in England?
- 8. On what condition did Robert agree to resign his claim to the crown? 9. What led to the battle of Tenchebrai ?
- 10. Give the result and date of the lattle.

- 11. For what purpose did Henry take Prince William to Normandy?
- 12. On their return, in what ship did the prince set sail? 13. Relate what happened during the
- voyage. 14. What effect had the news upon the king?
- 15. Who was now Henry's heir? 16. Whom did she marry?
- 17. What family was thus founded?
 18. What is said to have been the
- cause of the king's death?
- 19. When and where did he die?
 20. What change took place in the coinage during this reign?
 21. State what you know of the
- Knights Templars.



CHAPTER IV.

STEPHEN (OF BLOIS).—1135-1144.

Accession of Stephen—His First Acts—The Scots Invade England—Battle of the Standard—Battle of Lincoln—Matilda Restored—Matilda Deposed—Stephen Regains the Crown—Prince Henry declared Successor—The King's Death.

Accession of Stephen-His First Acts.

STEPHEN, son of the Count of Blois, and Adela, daughter of William the Conqueror, had solemnly sworn to maintain the succession of Matilda; but he had no sooner heard of the death of his uncle than he hastened to violate the sacred promise he had made by seizing the crown. Having gained the influence and support of the clergy who, in those days, were all-powerful in England, Stephen was crowned King in Westminster Abbey, or the 26th December 1135.



WESTMINSTER ABEEY.

The first acts of Stephen after his coronation were, like those of other usurpers, intended to gain the favour of the people. He granted a charter, in which he promised to secure to his subjects certain rights and privileges; to restore to them the good laws and customs of Edward the Confessor; to give up all the forests which belonged to his predecessors, and to allow the barons to fortify their castles and build new ones. In consequence of this last promise, the whole country in a short time became covered with numerous strongholds, garrisoned with a barbarous soldiery.

The Scots Invade England—Battle of the Standard.

David I., King of Scotland, who had sworn to support the claims of Matilda to the English throne, invaded England at the head of a powerful army, and fought the famous battle of the Standard at Cutton Moor, a.D. 1138. near Northallerton, where, after a desperate conflict, the Scots were defeated with great slaughter. In the following year a peace was concluded at Durham, by which Prince Henry obtained the earldom of Northumberland.

Battle of Lincoln—Matilda Restored and Deposed.

Robert, Earl of Gloucester, natural son of the late King, thought the present opportunity favourable to assert the claims of his sister Matilda, who accordingly landed in England at the head of one hundred and forty knights, and established herself in Arundel Castle, in Robert went to Bristol in disguise, in the expectation of receiving a number of followers. In the meantime, Stephen hearing of Matilda's arrival, hastened to besiege the castle in which she had taken refuge; and although he might easily have taken her prisoner, he allowed her to depart, and rejoin her brother at Bristol. The civil wars now began which brought terrible calamities on the country. During two years many battles had been fought with varying success, till at last a decisive engagement took place near Lincoln, which ended in the defeat of the King's forces. Stephen was made captive, and delivered into the hands of Matilda,

who loaded him with chains, and cast him into a prison at Bristol. Matilda now advanced to London, where she was gladly received, and immediately proclaimed Queen.

Matilda's success was of short duration. She exasperated her enemies by her vindictive temper, and alienated her friends by her insolence and arrogance. She indignantly refused a petition made by Stephen's queen that her husband might be liberated, on condition of his giving up the crown; she also excited the Londoners by imposing upon them a heavy tax for having supported Stephen. The city revolted, and Matilda was obliged to seek for safety by a hasty retreat to Winchester, where she sustained a signal defeat, and her brother Robert was taken prisoner. He afterwards obtained his liberty in exchange for Stephen, who, after nine months' imprisonment, thus recovered his freedom, and resumed the government. Robert died shortly after, and Matilda, worn out with fatigue, and downcast in spirit, retired to Normandy.

Prince Henry Declared Successor to Stephen—The King's Death.

Matilda's son, Prince Henry, now in his sixteenth year, and already one of the most powerful princes on the continent, gave great alarm to Stephen. He landed in England, attended with a small retinue; but he had not long to wait till great numbers of adherents flocked to No engagement of any importance, howhis standard. ever, took place; for Eustace, the King's eldest son, having died the following year, the barons on both sides were anxious to terminate the contest by negotiation. treaty was at length entered into at Winchester, by which it was agreed that Stephen should A.D. 1153. keep possession of the throne during his life, and that Henry should be his successor. After all the barons had solemnly given their assent to this treaty, Henry left England, and retired to Normandy. Stephen did not long survive this agreement; he died A.D. 1154. the following year, and was buried in the monastery of Faversham, in Kent.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF STEPHEN (of Blois).

,A.D. 1135.-A.D. 1154.

Stephen, son of Stephen, Earl of Blois, and of Adela, daughter of William the Conqueror. Born 1096. Married Matilda, daughter of the Count of Boulogne, and niece of David I. of Scotland. Died at Canterbury, 1164. Reigned 19 years.

Stephen had promised to maintain the claims of Matilda, but now took possession of the crown for himself. cause was supported by her natural brother Robert, Earl of Gloucester, and by David I. of Scotland. On her behalf David invaded England, but was defeated at Northallerton in the battle of the Standard, 1138. Matilda, accompanied by Robert, landed in England, and at the battle of Lincoln in 1141, Stephen was made prisoner, and Matilda proclaimed queen. Robert, in retreating from Winchester, was captured and afterwards exchanged for Stephen. The war was brought to a close by the Treaty of Winchester in 1153, which provided that Henry, Matilda's son, should succeed to the throne on the death of Stephen.

QUESTIONS.

Accession of Stephen-Scots Invade England-Battle of the Standard.

1. Who was Stephen?

2. Whose claims had he promised to half? maintain?

3. What measures did he adopt to gain the favour of the people?

4. Who were the supporters of peace concluded? Matilda?

5. What did David do on her be-

6. Give the date and result of the battle.

7. When and where was a treaty of

Battle of Lincoln-Matilda Restored and Deposed-Prince Henry declared Stephen's Successor-Death of the King.

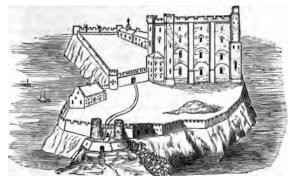
- 1. Where did Matilda take refuge on her arrival in England?
 - 2. Who besieged the castle?
 - 8. Where was Matilda's brother?
- 4. What now commenced?
- 5. In what battle was Stephen defeated? Give the date.
 - 6. What became of Stephen?
 7. Who was proclaimed queen?
- 8. Why was her success of short duration?
- 9. How did she give offence to the Londoners? [safety ?
- 10. Where was she obliged to seek for 11. Who at this time was taken prisoner?
- 12. How did he regain his liberty?
 13. What circumstances led both
- parties to desire peace? [upon?
- 14. What treaty was finally agreed
 15. How long did Stephen survive
 this arrangement?

CHAPTER V.

SOCIAL LIFE IN THE TIME OF THE NORMANS.

Houses-Food-Dress-Amusements-Occupations-Language and Literature.

Houses.—The houses of the common people were small, rude huts, generally built of wood and plastered with clay, but those of the nobility were mostly large castles, the walls of which were of great thickness, having a number of small windows near the top. As the Norman lords passed but little of their time inside their strongholds, the furniture was of the most meagre description.



NORMAN CASTLE.

A large hall formed the principal apartment, in which were a number of rough tables or benches. There were no carpets, but the floors of the governor's rooms were covered with rushes or straw in winter, and with grass in summer. A bench, or a part of the floor spread over with a mat, formed the common sleeping-place; but the bedroom of the master and his family was often furnished with a few stools, couches, and a crib containing a straw bed.

Food.—In eating and drinking the Normans did not indulge so freely as the Saxons. As has been already

mentioned, the Saxons had four meals a day, whereas the Normans were satisfied with two—dinner and supper; the former was taken at nine in the morning, and the latter at five in the afternoon. Hence the rhyme:—

"To rise at five, to dine at nine, To sup at five, to bed at nine, Makes a man live till ninety-nine,"

They are said to have been more scrupulous than the Saxons in the method of cooking their food, but in eating it, the fingers had still to do the duty of forks. The upper classes used wheaten bread, and on the table of a Norman lord were various kinds of dishes, including fish, fowl, mutton, and beef, as well as others of a more delicate kind. The names of the various kinds of flesh meats in common use at the present day afford an evidence of the servile condition of the Saxon under the Normans. Thus, whilst animals when alive and under the care of the Saxon serf are called oxen, sheep, swine, etc., they become beef, mutton, pork, etc., when killed and prepared for the table of his Norman lord. The diet of the common people was the same as in the Saxon period.

Dress.—During the Norman period many changes took place in the article of dress. In the reign of Rufus the higher orders of society dressed in a far more expensive manner than in the time of the Conqueror. ments were ampler, of a finer texture, and ornamented with lace, and often lined with rich and costly fur. shoes of young men of fashion were of great length; they tapered to a point, which often projected to such an extent that the wearer was compelled to support the extremity by means of a cord or chain, sometimes of gold or silver, reaching from the knee. The Normans, not long after their arrival in England, gave up the practice of shaving the face and back of the head, and adopted the Saxon fashion of wearing the hair and beard long. The clergy denounced this custom, and on one occasion when Henry the First was attending mass in Normandy, the officiating priest took occasion to speak strongly against the practice. The King was so much impressed with what he had heard that he permitted his beard and love-locks to be cut off, and the whole of his courtiers immediately followed his example. The dresses of the Norman ladies were as gay and costly as those of the other sex, and of such a length that they swept the ground behind, a fashion not uncommon at the present time.



TOURNAMENT.

Amusements.—The chief out-door amusements among the Normans were the tournament and hunting. The tournament was a mock fight, performed by knights on horseback, for the purpose of exhibiting their courage and skill in arms. The place of combat was a large open space, around which were erected galleries for the accommodation of spectators, among whom were ladies, who acted as judges of the fight. The weapons usually employed were lances without heads; but not unfrequently the combatants were wounded, and sometimes killed. When the encounter was over, the victor received the prize from the hand of the "Queen of Beauty," a lady elected to preside over the sports of the day.

Occupations.—Of the various occupations practised by the Normans, that of agriculture was specially attended to. The desolating wars between the Saxons and the Danes had laid waste many fertile tracts of country, but these the Norman husbandmen tilled and cultivated. Many of the implements used in field operations, such as scythes, sickles, and spades, were similar in construction to those now in use, but the plough consisted of a single stilt or shaft. Orchards became numerous, and great attention was paid to the cultivation of the apple.

Language and Literature.—After the Conquest, the Normans endeavoured to destroy every vestige of Saxon manners and customs. The language itself shared in the work of general degradation; and Norman-French, being the speech of the conquerors, became that of the law-courts and of the upper classes in general. "For centuries after the Conquest a confusion of tongues prevailed, the different orders of the people speaking a different lan-This was so much the case in the early part of the fourteenth century, that public speakers were sometimes obliged to pronounce the same discourse three times to the same audience—once in Latin, once in French, and once in English. Latin was the language of the church, of schools, of courts of justice, and in general of the learned of all professions. The Norman-French was the language of the court and people of fashion; Anglo-Saxon of the burgesses and common people." The literature of the period was confined almost exclusively to the clergy. Ingulphus, Abbot of Croyland in Lincoln, wrote the history of his own monastery. Lanfranc, Archbishop of Canterbury, and his successor, Anselm, were the authors of several works on theological subjects. William of Malmesbury, a learned monk, bequeathed to the world several valuable works, the most important perhaps of which is a history of England, from the invasion of the Saxons to 1143. Another writer of English history was Geoffrey of Monmouth, who died in 1154.

QUESTIONS.

SOCIAL LIFE IN THE TIME OF THE NORMANS.

Houses-Food-Dress-Amusements-Occupations-Language and Literature.

1. Describe the houses of the common people.

- 2. Those of the nobility.
 3. What is mentioned regarding the furniture?
 - 4. What served for carpets?
- 5. Describe the sleeping apartments. 6. How many meals had the Saxons a day?
 7. The Normans?
- 8. Repeat the rhyme having reference to the meals of the Normans.
- 9. What kinds of dishes were to be found on the table of a Norman lord? 10. What evidence have we at the present day of the servile condition of the Saxons under the Normans?
- 11. What were animals called when alive and under the care of the Saxon
- serf? 12. What were they called when killed?
- 13. How did the higher order of society dress in the time of Rufus?
- 14. Describe the shoes of young men of fashion.

- 16. What fashion did they adopt?
 17. Who denounced this custom?
- 18. Relate what happened on one occasion when Henry the First was
- attending mass in Normandy.

 19. State what you know regarding the dresses of the Norman ladies.
- 20. What were the chief out-door amusements of the Normans?
- 21. Describe the tournament-the place of combat—the weapons used.

 22. Who was designated "the Queen
 of Beauty?"

23. What occupation was specially attended to by the Normans?

- 24. What implements were in common use?
- 25. How were they constructed? 26. What language was spoken by the
- Normans? 27. What led to much confusion in
- the manner of speech? 28. Show that such was the case.

 - 29. Of what was Latin the language? 80. Norman-French? Anglo-Saxon? 81. Mention the names, together with
- 15. What practice did the Normans the works, of the chief literary persons give up after their arrival in England? of the Norman period.

CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY

OF THE

PRINCIPAL EVENTS DURING THE NORMAN PERIOD.

A.D. 1066 TO A.D. 1154.

Eleventh Century.

WILLIAM I. (the Conqueror). A.D.

- 1066. William crowned in Westminster Abbey on Christmas day.
- 1067. William visits Normandy; during his absence the regents
- excite revolts among the English.

 1071. The Saxon under Hereward surrender. Conquest of England completed.
- 1085. Feudal System established in England.
- 1086. Domesday Book completed.
- 1037. Death of the King.

WILLIAM II. (Rufus).

1088. Norman barons conspire to dethrone Rufus. The Saxons support the king and the barons are defeated.

1091. William invades Normandy. Malcolm III., King of Scotland, invades England.

1095. The First Crusade,

1097. Robert, Duke of Normandy, joins the Crusade.

1100. William found dead in the New Forest.

Twelfth Century.

HENRY I. (Beauclerc).

- 1101. Robert, returned from the Crusade, lands at Portsmouth. 1120. Prince William, the king's only son, drowned in the
 - English Channel.
- 1135. King Henry dies, leaving his daughter Matilda as his successor.

STEPHEN (of Blois).

- 1135. Stephen claims the throne, and is crowned at Westminster.
- 1141. Matilda proclaimed queen.
- 1154. Death of Stephen.

BATTLES AND SIEGES DURING NORMAN PERIOD.

B. Battle. S. Siege.

- B. Hastings, 1066. Between Harold and William, Duke of Normandy. Harold defeated and slain.
- S. Exeter, 1068. Captured by William I.
- 8. York, 1069. Taken by assault by William I.
- S. Gerberoi, 1079. Held by Robert, and besieged by the Conqueror. In the contest William was wounded and unhorsed by Robert before he recognised his father.

 Mount St. Michael. 1090. Captured by William II. and his brother Robert.

S. Alnwick Castle, 1093. Besieged by Malcolm III. of Scotland. Scots defeated, and Malcolm and his son Edward slain.

B. Tenchebrai, 1106. Between Henry I. and his brother Robert; the latter defeated and taken prisoner.

B. Standard, 1138. Between David I., King of Scotland, and the Northern English barons under Thurstan, Archbishop of York.

B. Lincoln, 1141. Between Stephen and Robert, Earl of Gloucester. Stephen defeated and taken prisoner.

TREATIES.

- 1139. Durham, peace concluded with Scotland.
- 1153. Winchester, Treaty of, between Prince Henry, Matilda's son, and Stephen, which provided that Stephen should hold the crown during his life, and that Henry should be his successor.

AUTHORS.

Ingulphus, Abbot of Croyland, wrote the history of his own monastery. Died A.D. 1109.

Malmesbury, William of, author of an ecclesiastical history of England, and several other valuable works. Died A.D. 1143. Geoffrey of Monmouth, author of a chronicle of the history of Britain. Died A.D. 1154.

Huntingdon, Henry of, author of the history of England to the death of Stephen. Died A.D. 1163.

EMINENT PERSONS.

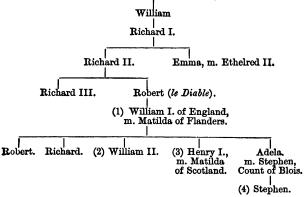
Aldred, Archbishop of York, who, on the death of Edward the Confessor, crowned Harold, and afterwards did the same for William the Conqueror. Died A.D. 1068.

Lanfranc, succeeded Stigand as Archbishop of Canterbury; he is said to have been the first who introduced the construction of vaults, and the practice of interment near the high altar in England. Died A.D. 1089.

Anselm, was consecrated Archbishop of Canterbury by William II.
Hereward, a brave and patrictic Saxon who lived in the time of William I., and gallantly withstood the Normans for several months in the Isle of Ely.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE NORMANS.

Rollo, first Duke of Normandy.



Note—The numbers within parenthesis show the order in which the Kings reigned.

THE PLANTAGENET PERIOD.

PLANTAGENET KINGS.

HENRY II.,	·began to	o reign	1154,	died	1189.
RICHARD I.,		,,	1189,	,,	1199.
JOHN,			1199,		
HENRY III.,			1216,		
EDWARD I.,			1272,		
EDWARD II.,			1307,		
EDWARD III.,			1327,		
RICHARD II		••	1377.	••	1399.

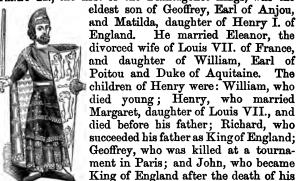
CHAPTER I.

HENRY II. (PLANTAGENET*).

Henry's Personal History—His Extensive Dominions—Reform of Abuses—
Thomas à Becket—His Promotion—He Quarrels with the King—Constitutions of Clarendon—Becket leaves the Kingdom—His Return and Death— The King does Penance—Conquest of Ireland—Henry's Domestic Troubles -His Death.

Henry's Personal History—His Extensive Dominions— Reform of Abuses.

HENRY II., the first of the Plantagenet kings, was the



GEOFFREY PLANTAGENET. brother Richard. He had also three

^{*} This name was given to the first Earl of Anjou, on account of his wearing in his cap a piece of broom-in French, planta-degenet; in Latin, planta genista,

daughters, Maud, Eleanor, and Joan, and a grandson named Arthur, son of Geoffrey.

On his accession to the throne, Henry became one of the most powerful monarchs of his time. In addition to his extensive continental dominions which he inherited from his father and mother, his marriage with Eleanor put him in possession of nearly all the western coast of France, from the Loire to the Pyrenees. More than one-third of that country acknowledged his authority, and his power in France was even greater than that of the French King himself. Henry was in Normandy at the time of Stephen's death, and on his arrival in England he was received with joyful acclamations, and crowned with his queen, Eleanor, at Westminster.

Henry had no sooner ascended the throne than he applied himself vigorously to the correction of those abuses which had brought so many and terrible calamities on the nation during the reign of his predecessor. He banished from the country the mercenary soldiers of Stephen, demolished many of the castles, and reclaimed from the feudal barons the property which belonged to the crown. He enforced obedience to the laws, curbed the power of the nobles; and still further to gain the affections of his subjects, he granted charters to a number of the cities and principal towns, and thus confirmed the rights and privileges guaranteed by Henry I.

Thomas à Becket-His Promotion.

Thomas à Becket, son of Gilbert à Becket, a London merchant, was a man endowed with great natural abilities, combined with pleasing manners and a handsome person. On Henry's accession to the throne he was raised to the dignity of Chancellor, and appointed tutor to the young prince. The many valuable appointments which he held enabled him to live in a style of greater magnificence than any nobleman in the kingdom. But when he became Archbishop of Canterbury he resigned the Chancellorship and all other secular honours, and lived in the most

was the of t as : cod

Offa

pen Non ind kim surgui dra wh his em Do the cla

to tl c:

austere and self-denying manner. He wore sackcloth next his skin, lived on the commonest food, washed the feet of beggars, and frequently scourged himself with knotted cords. On account of such seeming humility and sanctity he was regarded as a saint, and held in great veneration by the common people.

Becket Quarrels with the King—The Constitutions of Clarendon.

A controversy now commenced between Henry and Becket respecting the jurisdiction of the ecclesiastical Becket maintained that when a churchman committed any offence, he was amenable only to the tribunals of the Church; but the punishment awarded was so slight, that atrocious crimes, perpetrated by ecclesiastics, were of frequent occurrence. This induced Henry to hold an assembly at Westminster, and inquire of the bishops whether they would observe the "customs" used in the time of Henry I. They agreed to do so, "saving the rights of their own order." This evasion displeased the King, and in the following year he held A.D. 1164 another council at Clarendon in Wiltshire, when the sixteen articles known as the "Constitutions of Clarendon" were passed. These enactments rendered the clergy amenable to the jurisdiction of the civil courts. The prelates gave in their adhesion; Becket hesitated for some time, but at length submitted. The "Constitutions." however, were condemned by the Pope, and the primate immediately retracted his consent, and set them at defiance. This roused the indignation of the King, who exclaimed, "Either this man must cease to be archbishop, or I to be King.

Becket Leaves the Kingdom-His Return and Death.

Becket now fied to France, and after the quarrel had lasted for six years, Henry proceeded to the continent, where, through the mediation of Louis VII., an apparent reconciliation was effected between the King and the exiled archbishop. Becket then returned to England,

and entered Canterbury, where he was joyfully received by the people. He immediately proceeded to excommunicate the Archbishop of York and two other bishops, whom he regarded as his chief enemies. When the news of his insolence reached the ears of the King, he became excited, and in a fit of passion exclaimed: "Will none of all those lazy, cowardly knights whom I maintain, deliver me from this turbulent priest?" On hearing this, four of his Norman knights immediately set out for England, and having reached Canterbury, they entered the Cathedral, and murdered the archbishop on the steps of the altar.

The King does Penance.

Becket was canonised as a saint and martyr by the court of Rome, and for nearly four centuries Canterbury was regarded as a sacred city; thousands of pilgrims from all parts of the world came to visit it, and miracles were said to have been performed at the tomb of the saint. When the intelligence of the assassination reached the ears of the King, he was filled with deep melancholy, and on his return to England did penance for the murder, by making a pilgrimage to the shrine of à Becket. made confession of his sin, and submitted to be scourged before the saint's tomb by a number of bishops, abbots, and monks, whom he had assembled for that purpose. Having been informed that his general, Glanville, had defeated and taken prisoner at Alnwick, William the Lion, King of Scotland, he returned to London with a joyful heart, believing that this victory was the result of the atonement he had made, and that Heaven had forgiven the crime of Becket's murder.

Conquest of Ireland.

The only other important event during the reign of Henry was the conquest of Ireland, which at that time was divided into five separate kingdoms—Ulster, Leinster, Connaught, Munster, and Meath. Dermot, King of Leinster, had been driven from his dominions by O'Connor,

King of Connaught, for carrying off the wife of O'Ruarc, Prince of Leitrim. The exiled Irish sovereign informed Henry of the treatment he had received, and the English monarch gave permission to any of his subjects to aid Dermot in his efforts to regain his throne. Stronghow, Earl of Pembroke, agreed to assist him. provided Dermot would give him in marriage his only daughter. Eva, and appoint him his successor to the throne These conditions having been accepted, of Leinster. Strongbow and several other adventurers having passed with their followers into Ireland, advanced against the natives, and defeated them in every engagement; Dermot was restored to all his possessions, and the whole of the kingdom of Meath was laid waste. The Earl of Pembroke now married Eva, and on the death of her father, shortly afterwards, he ascended the throne, and assumed the title of King of Ireland. His term of power, however, was brief. The English King ordered all his subjects to return to England. Strongbow obeyed the summons, and surrendered to Henry, Dublin and the other principal cities, castles, and harbours, and agreed to hold the rest of his A.D. 1171, possessions as tenant-in-chief of the English crown. Henry then paid a visit to Ireland to take possession of his new dominions, and in a short time all the kingdoms, with the exception of Ulster, submitted to the authority of the English monarch.

Henry's Domestic Troubles—His Death.

Henry's troubles increased as he advanced in life. His own sons, Henry, Richard, Geoffrey, and John, encouraged by their mother, and countenanced by the Kings of France and Scotland, rebelled against him. When the King discovered that his fourth and favourite son, John, was among the rebels, he gave way to despair, and cursed his children and the day of his own birth. His health now rapidly declined, and the sorrows of the broken-hearted monarch were only terminated by his death, which took place at the castle of Chinon in Normandy.

Henry has ever been regarded as one of the greatest of English monarchs, and his reign gives ample evidence of his abilities as a politician, of his wisdom as a legislator, and of his intrepidity as a warrior. His private life, however, was not free from fault: his marriage was an unhappy one, and the story of "Fair Rosamond," though a mere legend, discloses the name of one of his favourites,

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF HENRY II. (Plantagenet).

A.D. 1154.-A.D. 1189.

Henry II., eldestson of Geoffrey Plantagenet, and Matilda, daughter of Henry I. Born at Mans, A.D. 1133. Married Eleanor of Poitou. Died at Chinon, A.D. 1189. Reigned 25 years.

On his accession Henry applied himself diligently to the removal of those evils which had been brought on the country in the time of Stephen. Next to the King, the most powerful man in England was Thomas a Becket, who was made Chancellor in 1155, and Archbishop of Canterbury in 1162. Henry endeavoured to reduce the power of the clergy and to make them subject to the jurisdiction of the secular courts. In this he was opposed by Becket, who took the part of the church. The Constitutions of Clarendon—so called from the place in Wiltshire where they were drawn up—were passed A.D. 1164. The archbishop fled to France, where he remained for six years. On his return he was murdered on the steps of the altar of his own cathedral at Canterbury, A.D. 1170.

An invasion of Ireland took place in 1169. The country was

afterwards conquered and annexed to England, A.D. 1171.

In 1174, William of Scotland invaded England, and was taken prisoner at Anwick. He afterwards regained his liberty on submitting to become Henry's vassal.

QUESTIONS.

Henry's Personal History—His extensive Dominions—Reform of Abuses—Thomas a Becket—Constitutions of Clarendon—Becket leaves the Kingdom—His Return and Death—King does Penance.

- 1. Relate the personal history of Henry II.
- 2. What was the extent of his Continental dominions?
- 3. To what did he apply himself on his accession?
- 4. Who was Thomas à Becket?
 5. What offices did he successively
- 5. What offices did he successively hold?
- 6. What style of living did he adopt before, and after he became archbishop? 7. What opinions were respectively held by the King and by Becket regard-
- held by the King and by Becket regarding the trial of clergymen? 8. What were the Constitutions of
- Clarendon?
 9. By whom were they condemned?
 - 10. What did Becket then do?
- 11. What effect had this upon the success?

- 12. Before whom was Becket summoned to appear? Where? For what
- purpose?
 13. What was the result of this interview?
- 14. How was a reconciliation afterwards effected?
- 15. How was Becket received on his return?
- 16. What did he at once proceed to do?
 17. What rash speech did this draw
- from the King?
 18. State what followed.
- 19. What effect had the news of Becket's murder upon the King?
 20. What tidings reached him from Scotland?
- 21. To what did he attribute this success?

Conquest of Ireland-Henry's Domestic Troubles-His Death.

- 1. Into how many kingdoms was 8. WI Ireland divided in the reign of Henry II? adopt?
- Tell their names.
- 3. Who at this time was King of Leinster?
- 4. What had happened to him?
 5. What encouragement did he receive from Henry?
- 6. On what condition did Strongbow agree to assist him?
 - 7. How did the enterprise succeed?
- 8. What course did the King then adopt?
 - 9. State the result.
- 10. When did Henry visit Ireland?11. What part of it did he reduce?
- 12. What was the nature of Henry's domestic troubles?
- 13. By whom were his sons encouraged in their rebellion?
- 14. Where and when did the King die?



CHAPTER II.

RICHARD I. (CŒUR DE LION).-1189-1199.

Richard's Personal History—His Coronation—Massacre of the Jews—The Third Crussde—Richard's Success—Leaves Palestine—His Imprisonment—His Release—War with France—Death of the King—General Facts.

Richard's Personal History—His Coronation—Massacre of the Jews.

RICHARD, the eldest surviving son of Henry II., was born at Oxford in 1157. He married Berengaria, daughter of Sancho, King of Navarre, but had no family. The marriage took place at Cyprus, when Richard was on his way to Palestine to join in the third Crusade.

Richard remained on the continent for nearly two months after the death of his father, and on his return was crowned at Westminster, on the 3rd of September At his coronation a number of wealthy Jewish merchants, who were desirous of doing homage to the King, entered the banquet hall, carrying with them valuable presents intended for Richard. Having been recognised they were speedily ejected, and the populace rushed upon them, and killed many of them on the spot. The mob having proceeded to that part of the city where many of the Jews resided, immediately set fire to their houses, and cruelly massacred all who attempted to escape, without distinction of age or sex. Nor were such atrocities confined to London alone; they were perpetrated at Norwich, Lincoln, Stamford, and several other places: but the most dreadful scene occurred at York. Here five hundred took refuge in the castle, which was instantly besieged by the populace, and the unfortunate inmates, seeing no way of escape, burned their own property, put to death their wives and children, and then plunged their weapons into their own breasts, rather than fall into the hands of their merciless persecutors.

The Third Crusade-Richard's Success.

Richard, from the day of his coronation, commenced preparations to join in the third Crusade, along with Philip of France. In order to raise the necessary funds for this enterprise—the most brilliant that had yet been undertaken—he sold the royal lands, castles, fortresses, towns, and the offices of state; he likewise gave up his superiority over the kingdom of Scotland for the sum of 10,000 marks. He even declared he would sell London itself, if he could only find a purchaser. Having by these means collected an immense sum of money, he embarked at Dover with one of the finest armaments that had ever left England. He joined the forces of Philip at Vezelai on the borders of Burgundy, the combined armies amounting to one hundred thousand men.

Richard continued his march to Marseilles, at which port he embarked for Messina, "where he was joined by his fleet, which was to convey him and his army across the Mediterranean to the wished-for shores of the sacred Palestine."

At length he arrived before the port of Acre, and in a short time the town was taken, and the garrison surrendered to the English monarch. Richard continued to achieve brilliant exploits at Ascalon and Joppa, and after a stay of sixteen months in Palestine, concluded a truce of three years with his great opponent Saladin, the Sultan of Egypt and Syria, who agreed to allow the Christians to make pilgrimages to the Holy Sepulchre without being subject to the insults and annoyances of the infidels. The prodigies of valour which the "Lion-hearted" King performed in the East are said to have produced such an impression on the inhabitants, that the Syrian mothers used, and still use, his name as a word of terror to quiet their fretful children.

Richard Leaves Palestine—His Imprisonment and Release.

Richard's departure from Palestine was hastened by the news that his brother John had formed the design of claiming the throne. He accordingly left the country, but on his way home was shipwrecked on the coast of Istria, near the head of the Adriatic, and travelling in disguise as a pilgrim through Germany, he was discovered, and taken prisoner at Vienna by Leopold, Duke of Austria, whom he had offended at the taking of Acre.

The Duke sold his royal captive to Henry VI., Emperor of Germany, who confined him for fourteen months in one of the castles of the Tyrol. Richard regained his liberty for the sum of 150,000 marks, which was cheerfully paid by his English subjects. After an absence of more than four years, he landed in England, amidst the joyful acclamations of his people. John was deprived of his estates for having endeavoured to prevent the release of his brother, but through the intercession of his mother, Richard generously forgave him. "I forgive him," said the King, "and I hope I shall as easily forget the wrongs he has done me, as he will forget my pardon."

War with France-Death of the King.

The remainder of Richard's reign was occupied in hostilities against Philip of France who, along with John, had endeavoured to extend the term of the King's captivity. After three months' fighting, the King, while besieging the castle of Chaluz, was wounded in the shoulder by an archer named Gourdon. The King died the following day, and was afterwards buried at the feet of his father in the abbey of Fontevraud.

Richard had been King for nearly ten years, and during the whole of his reign had passed only four months in England.

GENERAL FACTS.

In the reign of Richard, Robin Hood, the famous outlaw, and a companion named Little John, together with one hundred followers, took up their residence in Sherwood Forest, where, setting the law at defiance, they lived on the King's deer, and attacked and robbed those who came within their reach. Whilst rich nobles and ecclesiastics were the especial objects of their attacks, they refrained from robbing or injuring the fair sex, and were particularly kind to the poor, amongst whom they divided much of their booty.

Coats of arms were first used in the Crusades, in order that mail-clad knights, when in battle, might be distinguished by the devices on their shields. Richard was the first King of England to adopt the three lions, which are still to be observed on the royal shield, and also the motto, Dieu et mon Droit, "God and my Right."

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF RICHARD I. (Cour de Lion). A.D. 1189.-A.D 1199.

Richard I., eldest surviving son of Henry II. Born at Oxford, A.D. 1157.

Married Berengaria, daughter of Sancho, King of Navarre. Was mortally wounded whilst besieging the castle of Chaluz in France. Died A.D. 1198. Reigned 10 years.

A cruel massacre of unoffending Jews throughout the kingdom marks the commencement of Richard's reign. His management of the third Crusade and the brilliant exploits he achieved in Palestine have rendered the reign of the "Lion-hearted" King memorable. On his return to England he was captured and imprisoned in one of the castles of the Tyrol, but afterwards regained his liberty on payment of a heavy ransom. In this reign lived Robin Hood the famous outlaw. Richard died from the effects of a wound which he received whilst besieging the castle of Chaluz in France, A.D. 1199.

QUESTIONS.

Richard's Personal History-Massacre of the Jews-The Third Crusade-Richard leaves Palestine.

- 1. What was Richard I. surnamed?
- Relate his personal history.
- What took place at his coronation?
 Describe what occurred at York.
- 5. How did Richard raise funds to enable him to embark in the third
- Crusade? 6. Who joined him in this enterprise?
- 7. What was the first town taken by Richard in Palestine? Tell the date.
- 8. At what other places did he distinguish himself?
- 9. How long did he remain in Palestine?
- 10. What was the nature of the truce he concluded with Saladin?
- 11. What induced Richard to leave Palestine? 12. What befel him on his way home?
 - 13. By whom was he thrown into prison?

 - 14. How was his release obtained?15. Why did he deprive his brother John of his estates?

War with France-Death of the King-General Facts.

- 1. How was the remainder of Richard's reign occupied?
- 2. How did he come by his death?

 8. What famous outlaw lived during
- this reign? 4. What was the number of his
- followers?
 - 5. Where did they reside?
- 6. What was their occupation? 7. What kindness did they show to
- the poor?
 8. Why were coats of arms used in the Crusades?
- 9. What emblem and motto on the royal shield did Richard adopt?

CHAPTER III.

JOHN (LACKLAND).-1199-1216.

John's Personal History—His Accession—Prince Arthur—John Quarrels with the Pope—Magna Charta—War with the Barons—Death of the King—General Facts.

John's Personal History—His Accession—Prince Arthur.

JOHN, the fifth son of Henry II., was born at Oxford in 1166. He was surnamed Lackland, as he was the only son of Henry who held none of those possessions which belonged to the crown. He married first Hawisa, grand-daughter of Robert, Earl of Gloucester, but having divorced her shortly after his accession, he took for his second wife Isabella, daughter of the Count of Angouleme, who had already been affianced to the Earl of Marche, and whom she married after John's death. The children of John were: Henry, who succeeded him; Richard, Duke of Cornwall, and King of the Romans; Joan, who married Alexander II. of Scotland; Eleanor, who married first William, Earl of Pembroke, and after his death Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester; and Isabella, who married Frederick II., Emperor of Germany.

On hearing of the death of Richard, John, who was residing in Normandy, set out for England, and shortly after his arrival was crowned at Westminster by the Archbishop of Canterbury. Arthur, the A.D. 1199. son of Geoffrey, John's elder brother, was the rightful heir to the throne, and his claims were supported by Philip of France. This disputed succession led to a war with that country, and after it had lasted for several years, the young prince was taken prisoner by his uncle, and confined in the castle of Rouen, where John is said to have assassinated him with his own hands, and then to have cast his body into the Seine.

John Quarrels with the Pope (Innocent III.).

On the death of Hubert, Archbishop of Canterbury, the King wished to appoint John de A.D. 1205. Grey, Bishop of Norwich, to the vacant see; but the

Pope had resolved that Stephen Langton, an Englishman, should be the future primate of England. A. violent quarrel now took place between John and the Pope. The former refused to admit the new archbishop to his A.D. 1208. office, and the latter, finding all remonstrance in vain, placed the kingdom under an interdict. This act caused the churches to be shut up, and the ringing of bells to be stopped; the dead were deprived of the right of Christian burial, and were cast into fields and ditches; the relics of the saints were thrown to the ground; the priests were forbidden to perform any religious ceremony, except baptising infants, and administering the sacrament to the dying.

The Pope, finding that John still continued obstinate. A.D. 1209. next laid the country under sentence of excommunication. This act absolved his subjects from their allegiance, and gave permission to all Christian princes to unite in dethroning him. Philip, the French King, empowered by the Pope, began to make preparations for such an enterprise; but John became so seriously alarmed at the prospect of a French invasion, that the abject monarch consented to resign his kingdom to the Pontiff, and solemnly promised to do homage to him as his vassal, and to pay him an annual tribute of one thousand marks. The sentence of excommunication was now formally revoked, and Philip was ordered to disband his army. The interdict was also removed, after it had continued for more than six years.

Magna Charta.

After John had obtained the protection of the Pope, he became more tyrannical than ever. His oppressive rule had long excited general discontent among all classes, but the time had now come when the barons, with Stephen Langton at their head, resolved to unite to restrain his insolent tyranny. For this purpose they met at Bury St. Edmunds in Suffolk, where they framed their demands for a redress of those grievances which pressed so heavily on the nation. On presenting

their petition to the King, he solicited delay, in order to consider their proposals. His request was granted, and when the time expired, the barons, fully armed, assembled at Stamford, and marched towards Oxford, where Here they again renewed their John was residing. demands, but the King still refusing to comply, they threw off their allegiance, appointed Robert Fitz-Walter as their leader, and immediately commenced hostilities. John's adherents began to forsake him, and at last, finding ·himself deserted by all but a few knights, he consented to an interview with the rebels, at a place called Runnymeade, a meadow on the banks of the Thames, 19th June. between Staines and Windsor, and at this A.D. 1215. memorable spot John was compelled to affix his seal to the celebrated document, called Magna Charta, the "keystone of English liberty."

palagnaph in magna charta.

The same in Roman letters.

Nullus liber homo capiatur, vel imprisonetur, aut dissaisiatur, aut utlagetur, aut exuletur, aut aliquo modo destruatur; nec super eum ibimus, nec super eum mittemus, nisi per legale judicium parium suorum, vel per legem terrae.

Translation of the above.

No freemen shall be taken, or imprisoned, or disseised, or outlawed, or banished, or any ways destroyed; nor will we pass upon him, nor will we send upon him, unless by the lawful judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land.

Magna Charta provided that no freeman should be imprisoned but by the judgment of his peers and the law of the land; that justice should not be sold, denied, or

delayed to any man; that the rights and privileges of cities and boroughs should be protected; that foreign merchants should be allowed to reside in, and depart from, England at pleasure; and that the abuses of the Forest Laws should be redressed. The original copy of the Great Charter is still preserved in the British Museum.

War with the Barons—Death of the King.

No sooner had the barons taken their departure than the faithless monarch began to meditate revenge upon them for the humiliation to which they had subjected He retired to the Isle of Wight, and sent a number of his adherents to collect mercenary troops on the Continent. These were raised in such numbers that the barons solicited aid from Louis, son of the French king, and offered him the crown. The young prince soon landed in England with an army of seven thousand men, whose numbers were speedily increased by numerous desertions from the mercenaries of John, as well as by many of his nobles. The contest for a while seemed doubtful; but the arrogance of Louis, united with too great partiality for his own countrymen, caused many of the barons to rejoin the forces of the King, so that his position now began to improve. But as he was crossing the marshes of Lincoln, he lost, by a sudden rising of the tide, the carriages which contained his baggage, treasures, and regalia. Grieved on account of his misfortunes, and the critical state of affairs, he was seized with a fever, and removed to the castle of Newark, where he died. Never was any monarch more detested than King John; and his memory has been handed down to us, blackened with almost every species of crime, treachery, cruelty, and even murder itself.

GENERAL FACTS.

Christians were prohibited from lending money at terest, which was called usury. The Jews still enjoyed privilege, but it caused them to be much disliked by at of the people. Chimneys were for the first time

used in houses, and the custom of marrying in churches The Bible was divided into chapters and was adopted. verses by Stephen Langton, Archbishop of Canterbury.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF JOHN (Lackland). A.D. 1199-A.D. 1216.

King John, brother of Richard. Born at Oxford, A.D. 1166. Married, first, Hawisa, grand-daughter of the Earl of Gloucester, from whom he was divorced; second, Isabella, daughter of the Count of Angouleme. Died at Newark, A.D. 1216. Reigned 17 years.

Arthur, the King's nephew, was the rightful heir to the throne. He was seized by John and assassinated at Rouen, A.D. 1202. The King quarrelled with the Pope for having appointed Stephen Langton Archbishop of Canterbury. England was in consequence laid under an Interdict by the Pope, A.D. 1208. In the following year John was excommunicated and afterwards deposed, and the crown of England offered to Philip II. of France. The refractory monarch now submitted to the Pope and promised to do homage to him as his vassal.

The most memorable event in the reign of King John was the signing of Magna Charta, which took place at Runnymeade, on the banks of the Thames, A.D. 1215.

The barons, displeased at the subsequent conduct of the King, offered the crown to Louis of France, who landed in England with an army of 7000 men. John, while endeavouring to repel the invaders, was seized with fever, and died at Newark, A.D. 1216.

QUESTIONS.

John's Personal History-Prince Arthur-John Quarrels with the Pope.

- 1. Relate the personal history of
- 2. How did he get the surname of " Lackland?"
- 3. Who was the rightful heir to the throne?
 - 4. Who supported his claims? 5. What was the fate of Arthur?
- 6. How did John become involved in a dispute with the Pope?
 7. What measures were adopted by
- the Pope to punish the King for his obstinacy?
- 8. Who began to make preparations for dethroning John?
- 9. What effect had these upon him?

Magna Charta-War with the Barons-Death of the King.

- 1. Relate the progress of the dispute between the King and his barons.

 2. When and where was Magna
- Charta signed?

 3. What are its chief provisions?
- 4. What reasons had the barons for taking up arms?
- 5. From whom did they ask assistance? 6. How did Louis afterwards give offence to the barons?
- 7. What was the cause of the King's death?
- 8. What general facts are recorded in this reign?

CHAPTER IV.

HENRY III. (WINCHESTER).-1216-1272.

Henry's Personal History—Regency of Pembroke—Hubert de Burgh—Peter des Roches—Simon de Montfort—Provisions of Oxford—Battle of Lewes— Origin of Parliament—Battle of Evesham—Death of Leicester—Death of the King—General Facts.

Henry's Personal History.

HENRY III., the eldest son of King John, was born at Winchester in 1207. He married Eleanor, daughter of Berenger, Count of Provence. The children of Henry were: Edward, who succeeded his father; Edmund, Earl of Lancaster and King of Sicily; Margaret, married to Alexander III., King of Scotland; and Beatrice, married to John I., Duke of Brittany.

Regency of Pembroke—Hubert de Burgh—Peter des Roches.

Henry was only nine years of age when his father died, and although his reign is the longest in British history, except that of George III., it is at the same time one of the most uninteresting. On account of the youth of the King, the Earl of Pembroke was appointed Protector of the kingdom. The contest between the adherents of Louis, the French prince, and those of Henry continued for some months, but at Lincoln the forces of Louis were completely routed by Pembroke, after which he quitted England and returned to France.

The Earl of Pembroke died three years after Henry's accession, and was succeeded in the regency by Hubert de Burgh, who, for eight years, managed the affairs of the nation with much vigour and decision. The King, however, quarrelled with this able and faithful counsellor, and Peter des Roches, a native of Poitou, and Bishop of Winchester, became the favourite and chief adviser of Henry. But his term of office was brief. Having invited over great numbers of his conntrymen, and conferred upon them every position of rank and emolument, he excited the disgust of the native barons, who compelled the King to dismiss him and all the other foreigners from

office. But the remonstrances of the barons were in a short time disregarded, and Henry's marriage with Eleanor of Provence led to a large influx of her countrymen, who, like the friends of des Roches, had riches and honours conferred upon them.

Simon de Montfort-Provisions of Oxford.

The foreign favourites acquired such an influence over the King, that the barons resolved to unite together to correct the abuses of the nation. They chose for their leader Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester, who, although a foreigner, and brother-in-law of the King, had gained the affection and confidence of the nobles and people. This confederacy became so formidable that Henry was compelled to hold a council at Oxford to inquire into the causes of those grievances which troubled the nation. This assembly, styled by the Royalists the "Mad Parliament," adopted the following measures, called the Provisions of Oxford:—1. That twenty-four barons should be appointed, twelve chosen by the King, and twelve by the nobles, to reform the state; 2. That the sheriffs of counties should be annually chosen by the freeholders; 3. That three Parliaments should be held every year; 4. That four knights should be chosen in each county to attend the meetings of Parliament, and point out matters requiring reform; and 5. That all offices of the state and all governorships of fortified places should be held by Englishmen.

Battle of Lewes-Origin of Parliament.

Though the King had solemnly sworn to observe and maintain the Provisions of Oxford, he soon found a pretext for violating the sacred promise he had made. As a matter of course, fresh quarrels arose between Henry and his barons, and it soon became apparent that nothing could effect a reconciliation between the contending parties, so that both sides prepared for war. At Lewes, a.D. 1264. in Sussex, a decisive battle was fought, in which the royal forces were defeated, and the King and his brother Richard taken prisoners.

De Montfort now "in all but name a King," spent his Christmas in regal state, in the castle of Kenilworth. On the 20th January in the following year, Leicester, in the King's name, summoned a Parliament to meet at London, and this assembly will ever be memorable in the history of our constitution. He ordered the return of more than one hundred of the inferior dignified clergy, two knights from each county, and two representatives from every city and borough. These delegates sat together, not as at present in a separate house, but in the same apartment with the hereditary nobility. Thus "was the foundation laid of the greatest assembly of freemen legislating for their nation that the world has beheld."

Battle of Evesham-Death of Leicester-Death of the King.

It was not long before Prince Edward who had for some time been in the power of de Montfort, contrived to effect his escape, and, having joined the Earl 4th Aug. of Gloucester, defeated the barons at Evesham in Worcestershire. Leicester and his eldest son were slain, and thus the rebellion was brought to an end. Henry's authority being now re-established, Edward proceeded to Palestine to join Louis IX. in the eighth Crusade.

A.D. 1272. During the absence of Edward, the King took ill at Bury St. Edmunds, and was removed to Westminster, where he died, in the fifty-seventh year of his reign.

Henry, during his long reign, failed to perform one single act of sufficient importance to be recorded. "Without activity or vigour, he was unfit to direct in war; without distrust or suspicion, he was imposed upon in times of peace."

GENERAL FACTS.

During this reign great improvements were made in domestic life. Coal was discovered at Newcastle—the inhabitants having obtained a charter to dig for this valuable mineral; candles were used instead of wooden splinters; linen shirts were substituted for woollen ones; tiles and slates covered the roofs of houses instead of thatch; and leaden water-pipes came into general use. Many useful discoveries, such as magnifying glasses, the air-pump, magic lanterns, and gunpowder, were made by Roger Bacon, an English monk. Gold coin was for the first time introduced; the method of distilling was learned from the Moors; and trial by ordeal was abolished by an order in council.



FRIAR BACON'S STUDY.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF HENRY III. (Winchester). A.D. 1216.—A.D. 1272.

Henry III., eldest son of King John. Born at Winchester, A.D. 1207. Married Eleanor, daughter of Berenger, Count of Provence. Died at Westminster, A.D. 1272. Reigned 56 years.

Henry III. reigned longer than any other King of England with the exception of George III.

The King being only nine years of age, the Earl of Pembroke was appointed Regent. He continued in office three years when he was succeeded by Hubert de Burgh, and Peter des Roches. The King gave offence to his barons by his partiality for foreigners.

On account of his misgovernment, the nobility, headed by simon de Montfort, resolved to correct the abuses of the nation. At a council held at Oxford, A.D. 1258, styled by the Royalists the Mad Parliament, the barons drew up a number of ordinances for the reform of the state, called the Provisions of Oxford. These provisions were disregarded by the King although he had solemnly promised to maintain them. A war between Henry and his barons now commenced, A.D. 1264. The latter led by Simon de Montfort defeated the King at Lewes. In the following year Montfort laid the foundation of the House of Commons by summoning to Parliament representatives from cities and boroughs. Prince Edward, who had escaped from his keepers, defeated the barons at Evesham, A.D. 1265, in which engagement Simon de Montfort was killed.

In this reign Roger Bacon made several important scientific discoveries.

QUESTIONS.

Henry's Personal History—Regency of Pembroke—Hubert de Burgh—Peter des Roches—Simon de Montfort—Provisions of Oxford.

- 1. Relate the personal history of Henry III.
 - 2. Who acted successively as regents?
 3. Where were the forces of Louis
- completely routed? Give the date,
 4. What caused much discontent
 among the English barons?
- 5. What was the King compelled to
- 6. What led the remonstrances of the barons to be afterwards disregarded?
- 7. Who became the leader of the discontented barons?
 8. Where, and for what purpose, was Henry compelled to hold a council? Give the date.
- What measures were adopted by this assembly?
 - 10, What were they called?

Battle of Lewes-Origin of Parliament-Battle of Evesham-Death of Leicester-Death of the King.

- 1. What promise had the king made to his barons?
- 2. How were matters now to be decided?
 - 3. Where was the first battle fought?
- 4. State the result and date.
 5. What was the next important proceeding of Leicester?
 - 6. How was this accomplished?
 7. What great branch of the govern-
- ment took its origin from this circumstance?
- 8. At what battle was Montfort killed? Give the date.
- 9. Whose authority was now re-established?
 10. In what expedition did Prince
- Edward embark?

 11. What event happened during his
- absence?
 12. Where and when did the King
- die?
- 13. What discoveries were made during this reign?

CHAPTER V.

EDWARD I. (LONGSHANKS).-1272-1307.

Edward's Personal History—Conquest of Wales—State of Scotland—Death of the King—General Facts.

Edward's Personal History-Conquest of Wales.

EDWARD I., surnamed Longshanks, from the remarkable length of his legs, was born at Winchester in 1239. His first wife was Eleanor, daughter of Frederick III. of Castile; at her death he took for his second wife Margaret, daughter of Philip III. of France. His children by Eleanor were: John, who died young, and Edward, who became King; he had likewise several daughters. By Margaret he had Thomas, Earl of Norfolk, and Edmund, Earl of Kent, whose daughter Joan married Edward, the Black Prince.

Shortly after his accession, Edward directed his attention to the subjugation of Wales. That country, up to this period, had been governed by native princes, and the one who now ruled was Llewellyn, whom Edward summoned to London, to do homage as one of the vassals of the crown of England. This, however, he refused to do, and Edward at once entered Wales, and shut up the prince among the mountain fastnesses of Snowdon. Llewellyn surrendered, and agreed to become the vassal of the English King. But the Welsh could not endure the oppressions of the English, and it was not long before they again took up arms. They advanced to give battle to the forces of Edward, at Llandweyr, in Caermarthenshire; but before their prince had time to prepare himself for the encounter, the English fell upon him on the banks of the Wye, near Builth, where he was slain. The Welsh still continued to fight for their independence, but were at last compelled to submit to Edward. He endeavoured to conciliate his new subjects by creating his infant son, who A.D. 1284. was born at Caernarvon, Prince of Wales, a title which has ever since distinguished the eldest sons

of the English sovereigns.

State of Scotland-Death of the King.

Having conquered Wales, Edward next turned his attention to Scotland. The throne of that country having become vacant, in consequence of the death of Margaret, the Maiden of Norway, thirteen competitors claimed the crown; but on inquiry it was found that the pretensions of John Baliol and Robert Bruce were superior to those of their rivals. As the Estates of Scotland were unable to decide between the two, they agreed to refer the matter to Edward, who, after some deliberation, awarded the crown to John Baliol as his vassal. The new King and his barons, disliking their position as vassals, allied themselves with France and went to war with England. They were repulsed at A.D. 1296.

Carlisle, driven northwards, and in a few months Baliol was compelled to resign his crown.

Wallace and Bruce then successively appeared as the champions of Scotland's independence, and when Edward was informed that the latter had been crowned King of the Scots at Scone, he resolved to lead such an army into Scotland as, he imagined, would at once crush both the Scots and their King. With difficulty, however, he reached the village of Burgh-on-Sands, near Carlisle, and there died, "in sight of that country which he had devoted to destruction."

GENERAL FACTS.

During this reign windmills, spectacles, and lookingglasses, were introduced, and paper was brought from the East by the Crusaders. It is to Richard Wallingford, an English abbot, we are indebted for the first rude construction of striking clocks. There were only two such timepieces in England during this reign, the one at Westminster and the other at Canterbury. A number of Italian merchants, called Lombards, whose chief business was money-lending, came over and settled in that part of London which has since been called Lombard Street.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF EDWARD I. (Longshanks).

A.D. 1272.-A.D. 1307

Edward I., eldest son of Henry III. Born at Westminster, A.D. 1239. Married, first, Eleanor of Castile; second, Margaret of France. Died at Burgh-on-Sands, near Carliale, A.D. 1307. Reigned 35 years.

Edward invaded Wales and compelled Liewellyn, the Welsh prince, to surrender. An insurrection followed in which Llewellyn was slain. The Conquest of Wales was now complete, and the Principality formally annexed to England, A.D. 1284.

Edward next turned his attention to Scotland, the throne of which was vacant by the death of the Maid of Norway. Several competitors appeared for the crown, and Edward, who acted as arbiter, decided in favour of John Ballol, and compelled him to do homage. Baliol afterwards revolted and was deposed. Sir William Wallace and Robert Bruce then successively appeared in Scotland; the latter was crowned King at Scone, A.D. 1306, and gained a number of successes over the English. Edward marched towards Scotland to subdue it, but his strength failing, he could proceed no further than Burgh-on-Sands, where he died, A.D. 1307.

QUESTIONS.

Edward's Personal History - Conquest of Wales - State of Scotland—Death of the King.

- 1. Relate the personal history of Edward I.
- 2. What led Edward to make war on
- 3. How had Wales been governed up to this time?
 - 4. Who was now its native prince?
 - 5. What was his fate?
- 6. How did Edward endeavour to conciliate his new subjects? 7. By what title has the eldest son of
- the English sovereign been distinguished since the time of Edward I.?
- 8. What was now the situation of Scotland?
- 9. What event left the Scottish throne vacant?

- 10. How many competitors claimed the crown?
 - 11. Which one obtained it?
 - 12. In what relation did the new
- King stand to Edward I.?

 13. How did he and his barons show their dislike to this?
- 14. State what followed.

 15. Who successively appeared as the champions of Scotland's independence?
- 16. Which of them was crowned King of the Scots?
 - 17. On what did Edward now resolve?
- 18. How was his design frustrated?
- 19. When and where did he die? 20. What general facts are recorded
- in this reign?

CHAPTER VI.

EDWARD II. (CAERNARVON).—1307-1327.

Elward's Personal History—His Attachment to Favourites—The Barons Revolt
—War with Scotland—The Spensers—Conduct of Isabella—Edward
Imprisoned—His Murder at Berkeley Castle—General Facts.

Edward's Personal History—His Attachment to Favourites
—The Barons Revolt.

EDWARD II., surnamed Caernarvon from the place of his birth, was the first Prince of Wales, and eldest son of Edward I. He married at Boulogne, Isabella, daughter of Philip IV. of France, a union which proved an unhappy one. The Queen was charged with crimes of a very aggravated kind; she was likewise possessed of a violent and rapacious temper, which procured for her the title of the "She-wolf of France." The children of Edward were: Edward, who succeeded to the crown; John, Earl of Cornwall, who died young; Joanna, who married David II. of Scotland; and Eleanor, who married Reynald II., Count of Gueldres.

Edward had not long occupied the throne when he gave evidence of his weakness and inability to govern. indulged in pleasure, and gathered around him a number of favourites and flatterers; the chief of whom was Piers de Gaveston, a native of Gascony, whose father had served under the late King. This young Frenchman was created Earl of Cornwall, and married Margaret, niece of Edward. The insolence and haughtiness of Gaveston were more than the turbulent barons would tolerate; they demanded his banishment, and he was accordingly driven into exile. He went first to Ireland, and afterwards to Flanders, but in a short time Edward invited him to return. The barons now took up arms, headed by Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, and having besieged the castle of Scarborough, in which Gaveston had taken refuge, A.D. 1312. they compelled him to surrender. removed to Blacklow Hill near Warwick, and there beheaded.

War with Scotland.

The strong castles of Roxburgh and Edinburgh had already been captured by the Scots under Bruce, and Stirling was almost the only fortress which now remained in possession of the English. Edward accordingly resolved to make one desperate effort to subdue Scotland. He advanced at the head of 100,000 men, to the A.D. 1314. relief of Stirling which was held in close siege by the Scots, but was signally defeated at Bannockburn by Bruce, whose forces did not exceed 30,000. Robert Bruce and his brother Edward, Earl of Carrick, having crossed over to Ireland, the latter was crowned King of that country at Carrickfergus, but the enterprise was abandoned on the defeat and death of Edward Bruce near Dundalk.



STIRLING CASTLE.

The Spensers—Conduct of Isabella—Edward Imprisoned— His Murder at Berkeley Castle.

Edward, unwarned by the fate of Gaveston, chose a new favourite in the person of Hugh le Despenser or Spenser, a young nobleman of ancient family. Like his predecessor,

he had become equally odious to the barons, who compelled the King to banish him; but in less than three months Edward took up arms and recalled him. Roger Mortimer, one of the confederate barons, having escaped from the Tower, crossed over to France, and gained the confidence of the Queen, who was at present residing at the court of her brother, Charles IV. Having been prevailed upon by the discontented English, she raised an army and landed in England, where she was speedily joined by a number of the nobles, who were ready to assist her in her efforts to set the King and the country free from the domination of royal but insolent favourites. The miserable King, finding himself deserted on every side, fled to Bristol in company with Spenser, whose father had the command of the garrison in that city. Isabella ordered the governor to be delivered up, and the venerable old man, now more than ninety years of age, was hanged before the castle. The young Spenser ere long suffered the same unhappy fate as his father. Shortly after his execution, a Parliament, summoned by the Queen to meet at Westminster, decreed that the King should be deposed, as being quite unfit to govern, and the unfortunate monarch was compelled to sign his own deposition. The dethroned King was now led from place to place, till at length he was taken to Berkeley Castle, A.D. 1327. where he was barbarously murdered by order of Roger Mortimer.

GENERAL FACTS.

It was in this reign that the great military order of Knights Templars was suppressed, after it had existed for nearly two hundred years. A sect of religious reformers, called Lollards, now began to make their appearance. They rejected the Roman Catholic doctrines of high mass, extreme unction, and penance. The University of Dublin was founded in the early part of Edward's reign. Earthenware was introduced, and our common vegetables, carrots and cabbages, began to be used at table.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF EDWARD II. (Caernaryon).

A.D. 1307.-A.D. 1327.

Edward II., son of Edward I. Born at Caernarvon, A.D. 1284. Married Isabella, daughter of Philip IV. of France. Deposed A.D. 1827, and in the same year murdered in Berkeley Castle. Reigned 20 years.

Edward II. was destitute of kingly qualities. He attached himself to favourites and flatterers, the chief of whom were Piers de Gaveston and Hugh le Despenser. They were both executed. Edward invaded Scotland, but was signally defeated by King Robert Bruce at Bannockburn near Stirling, A.D. 1314. invasion of Ireland by Bruce and his brother Edward followed, but the latter was killed near Dundalk, A.D. 1318. Influenced by the Queen, a Parliament was summoned which deposed Edward. He was imprisoned in Berkeley Castle, where he was murdered, A.D. 1327.

QUESTIONS.

Edward's Personal History-His Favourites-The Barons Revolt.

- 1. Relate the personal history of Edward II.
 - 2. Describe the character of his queen.
- 8. Who were his chief favourites?
 4. What dignity was conferred upon one of them?
- 5. What demand did the barons make upon the king?
- 6. How did he act towards his favourite? 7. What was the fate of Gaveston?

War with Scotland-The Spensers-Conduct of Isabella-Deposition and Death of the King.

- 1. What was the only fortress in Scotland which now remained in possession of the English? 2. What attempt did Edward make
- to subdue Scotland? 3. State the result, and give the date
- of the battle. 4. Who after this was crowned King
- of Ireland? 5. Why was the enterprise abandoned? 6. What was the name of Edward's
- new favourite? 7. How did the barons show their in this reign. dislike to him?

- 8. Which of the barons escaped from the Tower?
- 9. Where did he go? Who was residing there at that time?
 10. What was she prevailed upon
- to do? 11. What was the fate of the Spensers?
- 12. By whom was Edward deposed?
 13. Where was he imprisoned and murdered? Give the date.
- 14. State the general facts recorded

CHAPTER VII.

EDWARD III. (WINDSOR).—1327-1377.

Edward's Personal History—His Minority—Roger Mortimer—Wars in Scotland
—Edward Claims the Throne of France—The War in France—Battle of
Cressy—Battle of Neville's Cross—Siege of Calais—Battle of Poictiers—
Death of the Black Prince—Edward's Death—Genéral Facts,

Edward's Personal History.

EDWARD III. was the eldest son of Edward II. and Isabella of France. He was born at Windsor in 1312. and succeeded to the throne on the deposition of his He married Philippa, daughter of William, father. Count of Holland and Hainault. The children of Edward were:—1. Edward, the Black Prince, so called from the colour of his armour. He died before his father, leaving behind him a son, afterwards Richard II. William of Hatfield, who died young. 3. Lionel, Duke of Clarence, born at Antwerp. 4. John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, born at Ghent-hence his name. 5. Edmund, 6. Thomas. Duke of Gloucester. Duke of York. had also five daughters.

Edward's Minority-Roger Mortimer-Wars in Scotland.

Edward was in his fifteenth year when he ascended the throne, and the Parliament, on account of his youth, appointed a council of regency to govern the state. The Queen Dowager and Mortimer, however, really ruled the nation. Mortimer had already been created Earl of March, but his arrogance and folly rendered him more unpopular than ever. When Edward had reached his eighteenth year, he resolved to take the government into his own hands. Isabella and Mortimer were seized at Nottingham; the latter was carried captive to London, where he was accused by the peers of having usurped the A.D. 1330. the royal authority, found guilty, and executed at Tyburn. The Queen Dowager was confined during the rest of her life in her castle at Risings in Norfolk, where she was visited once a year by Edward.

Shortly after Edward had ascended the throne, Robert Bruce, the Scottish King, entered England, and laid

waste several of the northern counties, and compelled the English monarch, in terms of the treaty of Northampton, to acknowledge the independence of Scotland. On the death of Bruce, David II., his son and heir, ascended the throne; but Edward supported the claims of John Baliol's son, who obtained the crown on the defeat of the Scots at the battle of Halidon Hill, near Berwick. David now fled to France; but his subjects in Scotland having a great dislike to English rule, renewed hostilities, drove Baliol from the throne, and recalled the exiled monarch.

Edward Claims the Throne of France—The War in France
—Battle of Cressy.

On the death of Charles IV. of France, the crown of that country was claimed by Edward, in right of his mother, Isabella, daughter of Philip IV., and sister of the deceased monarch. According to a law of France, called the Salic law, females were excluded from the throne, and Philip of Valois, the nearest heir by the male line, ascended the throne, under the title of Philip VI. Edward in the meantime submitted, but was afterwards induced to renew his claim, and the young A.D. 1339. ambitious monarch, desirous of conquest and military fame, declared war against Philip.

Edward commenced hostilities on the side of Flanders, but the expedition met with little success. In the following year he crossed the frontier, and laid waste the country. To oppose his landing, Philip collected a large fleet in the harbour of Sluys, where a naval engagement A.D. 1340. took place, which ended in the triumph of the English, with the loss of 4000 men, while the loss on the French side amounted to 200 ships and 30,000 men. After this victory, Edward commenced another campaign on land, but the enterprise was entirely ineffective; and being obliged to retreat, he concluded a truce with France, and returned to England.

He again embarked with a splendid army of thirty thousand men, and landed in Normandy at Cape la Hogue. Meeting with no opposition, he advanced into

the interior, took several towns, and ravaged the whole country to the very gates of Paris. He then proceeded towards the Somme, crossed that river a little above Abbeville, in face of a strong body of French cavalry, and took up his position near the village of Cressy. Philip at length arrived with an army of one hundred and twenty thousand men, but the rising of the tide prevented him from crossing, so that he was obliged to go round by the bridge of Abbeville, which was about twelve miles distant. When he came up, his troops were so much fatigued by their long march that several of his officers advised him to halt, and rest for the night. agreed to do so; but as the soldiers in the rear continued to press forward, he ordered the Genoese archers to commence the battle. At three o'clock in the afternoon the French began the attack, but they soon fell into confusion. The English archers stood firm, and shot their arrows with such rapidity that it seemed as if it snowed. one time the young Prince of Wales was so hard pressed that a messenger rode up to Edward, who was viewing the battle from a neighbouring hill, and asked for assist-"Not so," said the King, "let the boy win his ance.



spurs, for all the honour of the day shall be his." These words inspired the English with fresh courage. The attack was re-

newed, and by night-A.D. 1348. fall the brilliant victory of Cressy was

gained. King Edward then hastened to embrace his son, and exclaimed, "Brave son, persevere in your career. You are my son, for most nobly

CORONET OF THE PRINCE OF WALES. have you acquitted yourself this day. You are worthy to be a sovereign."

Among those who fell on the French side were the Kings of Bohemia and Majorca. The former, although blind through age, insisted on being led to battle, and

caused the reins of his bridle to be tied to the horses of two of his knights. The crest of the fallen monarch, which consisted of three ostrich feathers, with its motto, *Ich Dien* (I serve), was assumed by the Prince of Wales, and has ever since been worn by his successors as a memorial of this great victory.

Battle of Neville's Cross—Siege of Calais—Battle of Poictiers.

In less than a week after the battle of Cressy, Edward laid siege to Calais. But in the meantime David Bruce, the Scottish King, was tempted by the absence of Edward to invade England. He was met by Philippa, the Queen, at Neville's Cross, near Durham, 17th Oct., where his army was completely routed, and he himself taken prisoner, and carried captive to London.

Philippa after this victory joined her husband at Calais. The governor of the town, John de Vienne, bravely defended the place for eleven months, when he was obliged to surrender. The inhabitants had been reduced to the very last extremity from want of provisions; "they had eaten not only all their horses, but also their dogs, and even the vermin of their cellars." Edward now expelled all the native population, and filled the town with a colony of his own subjects. It became a place of considerable trade for the sale of Flemish and English goods, and for upwards of two centuries remained in possession of the English.

Philip VI. of France was now dead, and his son John had become his successor. At the instigation of Charles, King of Navarre, Edward renewed the war with France. He invaded it from the north, while his son, the Black Prince, laid waste that portion of the south which was not in possession of the English. As he was returning to Guienne, he was overtaken by King John in the neighbourhood of Poictiers. Although greatly inferior in numbers, the hero of Cressy, with consummate prudence and steady valour, gained one of 19th Sept., the most memorable and decisive victories on record. King John was captured and taken to London,

where he was honourably entertained, and received for a residence the palace of Savoy in the Strand. A peace A.D. 1360. was made at Bretigny between Edward III. and the French, by which the English monarch was to give up his claim to the throne of France but was to keep his possessions in Aquitaine, besides Calais and some other small districts.

Death of the Black Prince and of the King.

The Black Prince, after engaging in a war in Spain on behalf of Don Pedro, or Peter the Cruel, the dethroned King of Castile, returned to England when his health rapidly gave way. He died in the forty-fifth year of his age, and was buried in the cathedral at Canterbury. His early death was universally regretted, as his many virtues had endeared him to the whole nation. Edward did not long survive the death of his son; he died the following year at Shene, now Richmond, after a reign of fifty years.

GENERAL FACTS.

The art of weaving cloth was introduced by a number of Flemish artisans who settled at Worstead in Norfolk, and one Thomas Blanket of Bristol established the manufacture of those woollen stuffs which still bear his name. Windsor Castle was rebuilt by Edward III., the architect being William of Wykeham, the founder of Winchester College. Chaucer, "the father of English poetry," flourished at this time, and John Wycliffe had already begun to expose the doctrines of the Church of Rome. The celebrated Order of the Garter was instituted in this reign. Cannon were first used at the battle of Cressy.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF EDWARD III. (Windsor)

Edward III., eldest son of Edward II. Born at Windsor, A.D. 1812. Married Philippa of Hainault. Died at Shene (Richmond), A.D. 1877. Reigned 50 years.

During the King's minority the Queen Dowager and Mortimer exercised the chief power in the state. Edward gained an

important victory over the Scots at Halidon Hill, A.D. 1333, but his reign is chiefly distinguished for foreign conquests. In 1337 he laid claim to the throne of France by right of his mother, Isabella, and in 1340 he defeated the French in a naval engagement at Sluys, the mouth of the Scheldt. The brilliant victory of Cressy was gained by Edward's son, the Black Prince, A.D. 1346, and in the same year was fought the battle of Neville's Cross, in which David II. of Scotland was defeated and taken prisoner by Queen Philippa. The surrender of Calais followed. In 1356, Edward gained another great victory over the French at Poictiers, in which engagement King John of France was captured and sent to London. The treaty of Bretigny in 1360, terminated the war for a time. The Black Prince having entered Spain and won the battle of Navarretta, A.D. 1367, by which Peter the Cruel was restored to his throne, the hero of Cressy and Poictiers shortly afterwards returned to England, when his health rapidly gave way. He died in 1376, aged 45 years. Edward III. died the following year at Shene, and was buried at Westminster.

QUESTIONS.

Edward's Personal History-His Minority-Wars in Scotland.

- 1. Relate the personal history of Edward III.
- 2. Who ruled the nation during his minority?
- 8. What was the fate of Mortimer?
- 4. How was the queen treated?
 5. What led to the battle of Halidon Hill? Date.

Edward Claims the Throne of France-War in France-Battle of Cressy.

- 1. On what ground did Edward III.
 - 2. What was the Salic law?
- 3. What engagement took place in the year 1840?
- 4. Give an account of the battle of Prince of Wales consist? Cressy? Date.
- 5. What is the meaning of "Win his spurs?"
- 6. What distinguished persons fell on the French side?
- 7. Of what does the coronet of the Prince of Wales consist?

Battle of Neville's Cross—Siege of Calais—Battle of Poictiers— Death of the Black Prince and of the King—General Facts.

- 1. Who invaded England during the absence of Edward?
- 2. State what followed. Date and result of the battle.
- 3. Relate the circumstances connected with the siege of Calais.
- 4. Who succeeded Philip IV. of France?
- 5. What battle was fought in 1356? State the result.
- 6. What treaty brought the war to a close for a time?
- 7. On whose behalf did the Black Prince engage in a war in Spain? 8. Give the date of his death.
- 9. What general facts are recorded in the reign of Edward III.?

CHAPTER VIII.

RICHARD II. (BORDEAUX).-1377-1399.

Richard's Personal History—His Minority—Wat Tyler's Insurrection—Richard's Misgovernment—His Deposition—General Facts.

Richard's Personal History—His Minority

RICHARD II. was the only son of Edward the Black Prince and Joan of Kent. He was surnamed Bordeaux from the place of his birth. His first wife was Anne of Bohemia, eldest daughter of Charles IV., Emperor of Germany. He afterwards married Isabella, daughter of Charles VI. Richard left no children, and thus the direct of France. line of the Plantagenets became extinct.

When Richard ascended the throne he was only eleven years of age. During his minority the affairs of the nation were under the guidance of the young King's three uncles: John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster; Edmund, Earl of Cambridge, afterwards Duke of York; and Thomas, Duke The accession of Richard was welcomed of Gloucester. by the people, and his coronation in Westminster Abbey was conducted with more than usual magnificence. But the favourable impression which had been formed of the youthful monarch was of short duration. As he grew up, his faults and follies produced in the minds of all classes a general feeling of discontent.

Wat Tyler's Insurrection.

The condition of the masses of the people was still one of degradation. The imposition of a capitation tax of one shilling on every male or female above fifteen years of age, was the immediate cause of an insurrection, which first commenced among the peasantry of some of the eastern counties. A person named Walter, a tiler, or, as he is commonly called, Wat Tyler, being enraged at an insult offered to his daughter by one of the tax-collectors. struck the offender with his hammer, and killed him on the spot. His courage was greatly applauded by his neighbours, who rallied round him, and declared they

would protect him from punishment. The men of Kent and Essex immediately took up arms. Tyler and Jack Straw became the leaders of the insurgents, who proceeded towards London, and assembled on Blackheath to the number of one hundred thousand. Here they were addressed by a worthless priest named John Ball, after which the rebels set out for the metropolis, where they pillaged the houses of the rich, broke open the prisons, setting the inmates at liberty, and put to death the Archbishop of Canterbury and many other persons of high rank. At last the King came to confer with this formidable array of rioters. He wished to know their demands, when Wat Tyler, their champion and principal leader, replied that they desired the abolition of servitude or villenage, a fixed rent on land instead of compulsory service, freedom of trade at fairs and markets, and a general pardon to all. The King promised to comply with their demands; but at another interview, Walworth, the Mayor of London, stabbed Tyler, who was instantly despatched by one of Richard's attendants. The death of their leader was about to be avenged, when the young King galloped forward and exclaimed, "What! my liege men, will you kill your King? You have lost your captain, follow me, and I will be your leader." They followed him into the fields at Islington, where he renewed his former promises, and the insurgents dispersed without any further mischief. In less than three weeks, however, Richard recalled all the charters of freedom, and disregarded the promises he had made, and more than 1500 of the rebels were condemned and executed as traitors.

Richard's Misgovernment—His Deposition.

The decision and firmness which Richard displayed in quelling the sedition of Wat Tyler, had raised expectations in the minds of many that his future reign would be prosperous. But their hopes were never realised. As he advanced to manhood, he displayed an utter want of ability to govern, indulged in mean and vicious pursuits, and surrendered himself to the guidance of favourites.

In these circumstances, Parliament appointed a council of regency, and deprived the King of all authority. At the head of this council was Richard's uncle, the Duke of Gloucester, who induced the Parliament to impeach the favourites of the King. In the following year Richard declared himself of age, and took the government into his own hands. He deposed the chief dignitaries of the church, and removed from the council the most obnoxious of its members, and filled their places with men of his own choice. Gloucester himself was afterwards arrested on a charge of treason, and sent over to Calais, where, it is believed, he was murdered by the express orders of the King.

Richard now ruled with a rod of iron. No one would venture to utter a word against any of his acts, nor had any one the courage to express openly his own feelings, but murmuring was heard on all sides against the Parliament and the Court. Richard left the country to quell a rebellion in Ireland, and during his absence his cousin Henry Bolingbroke, Duke of Lancaster, whom he had banished from England, returned and landed at Ravenspur in Yorkshire, where he was immediately joined by the Earls of Northumberland and Westmoreland, and a large body of followers. marched southward, the Duke of York, regent of the kingdom, joined his standard. The disaffection became general, and Henry's forces now numbered sixty thousand. Richard in the meantime was ignorant of what was passing in England; and when told of the state of matters he was panic struck. Hastening from Ireland, he landed at Milford Haven with twenty thousand men, and shortly afterwards retired to Conway Castle, where he was induced to surrender himself to the Earl of Northumberland. He was then taken to London, and a Parliament having been summoned, the unfortunate monarch was

been summoned, the unfortunate monarch was solemnly deposed. The vacant throne was given to Henry, Duke of Lancaster, who, though not the nearest heir, was proclaimed King under the title of Henry IV.

Richard was conveyed to Pontefract Castle in Yorkshire, but his fate is not known with absolute certainty. Some say he was murdered, and others that he was starved to death by order of Henry, while several documents recently found seem to indicate that he escaped to Scotland, where he lived in obscurity for many years.



CONWAY CASTLE.

GENERAL FACTS.

John Wycliffe, "the morning star of the Reformation," was the first to translate the Bible into English. Westminster Hall was rebuilt by Richard. The office of Lord High Admiral was established for the purpose of regulating all matters connected with the Royal Navy. During this reign the Fishmongers' Company in London was founded, also the Leathersellers' and the Mercers'. Among the geographical discoveries may be mentioned the Island of Madeira, the Canary Islands, and the Coast of Guinea.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF RICHARD II. (Bordeaux).

A. D. 1377-A. D. 1399.

Richard II., son of Edward the Black Prince. Born at Bordeaux, A.D. 1366.
Married, first, Anne of Bohemia; second, Isabella of France. Deposed,
A.D. 1399. Reigned 22 years.

In 1381, an insurrection, caused by the imposition of a polltax, broke out in Kent under Wat Tyler, and in Essex under Jack Straw. The insurgents marched to London where they committed many atrocities. The King came to confer with them, and promised to comply with their demands. Tyler was killed by the Lord Mayor, and the rebellion came to an end.

Richard as he grew up allowed himself to be guided by During his absence in Ireland, Bolingbroke, now favourites. Duke of Lancaster, whom Richard had banished, landed at Ravenspur, in Yorkshire, and seized the crown, A.D. 1399. The King was deposed, and is thought by some to have been murdered in Pontefract Castle, A.D. 1400. Richard had no family, so that the direct line of the Plantagenets became extinct, and the crown passed to the House of Lancaster.

QUESTIONS.

Richard's Personal History-Wat Tyler's Insurrection.

- 1. Relate the personal history of Richard II. 2. How old was he when he ascended
- the throne?
- 3. By whom were the affairs of the nation managed?
- 4. What was the result of the imposition of a capitation tax?
- 5. Who were the leaders of the insurgents?
 6. What excesses did the rebels com-
- mit in London?
- 7. Who came to confer with them? 8. What demands did they make?
- 9. How was the rebellion brought to an end?

Richard's Misgovernment—His Deposition.

- 1. What led Richard's subjects to believe that his future reign would be prosperous?
- 2. How were they disappointed in the expectations they had formed?
- 3. What steps did Parliament adopt in such circumstances?
- 4. How did Richard act when he regained his authority?
- 5. For what purpose did he go to Ireland?
- 6. What took place during his absence? 7. Where and when was Richard deposed?
- 8. To whom was the throne given? 9. Under what title was he pro-
- claimed? 10. What is supposed to have been
- the fate of Richard? 11. What general facts are recorded in this reign?

GENEALOGY OF THE PLANTAGENET KINGS, FROM HENRY II. TO RICHARD IL.

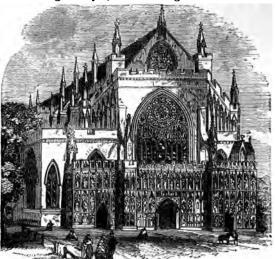
Geoffrey Plantagenet. Earl of Anjou. m. Matilda, daughter of Henry I. (1) Henry II. m. Eleanor, divorced wife of Louis VII. Henry, (2) Richard I., Geoffrey. m. Margaret, m. Berengaria daughter of of Navarre. Arthur. William. (3) John, Three m. 1 Hawisa, daughters. daughter of Louis VIL 2 Isabella. (4) Henry III., Richard, Three daughters. m. Eleanor Duke of of Provence. Cornwall. (5) Edward I., m. 1. Eleanor of Castile. Edmund, Two daughters. Earl of 2. Margaret of France. Lancaster. 1 Wife. 2 Wife. (6) Edward II., Thomas, John. Edmund. m. Isabella Earl of Earl of of France. Norfolk. Kent. Joan. (7) Edward III., John. m. Philippa Earl of m. Edward, the Joanna, Eleanor. m. Philippa Earl of of Hainault. Cornwall. Black Prince. Edward William Lionel, John of Gaunt, Edmund, Thomas, Five the Black of Duke of Duke of Duke of Duke of dauch-Prince.) Hatfield. Clarence. Lancaster. York. Gloucester. ters. (the Black (8) Richard II., m. 1. Anne of Bohemia 2. Isabella of France,

CHAPTER IX.

SOCIAL LIFE IN THE TIME OF THE PLANTAGENETS.

Buildings-Food-Dress-Amusements-National Industry.

Buildings.—Gothic architecture, which was employed in the building of ecclesiastical edifices, reached its perfection in the middle ages. A great many of our finest cathedral churches date from this period. The early English, called the Lancet style, from the lancet-shape of its arched doorways and windows, prevailed in the 13th century; and its finest examples are the cathedrals of Salisbury, York, and Westminster, as well as of Glasgow and Aberdeen, and the ruined abbeys of Elgin and Holyrood. Of the decorated English style, which belongs to the 14th century,



EXETER CATHEDRAL.

the best specimens are Exeter Cathedral and Melrose Abbey. Such buildings were now adorned with painted glass and handsome spires. Henry II. checked the passion for building fortified castles, which had arisen in the reign of Stephen, during the excesses of the civil wars; and no one was permitted to fortify his residence without a license from the King. The splendid feudal piles of Alnwick, Warwick, and Kenilworth, were founded in this age, and Windsor Castle rebuilt and enlarged by Edward III. Domestic convenience, however, did not keep pace with increased extent, the furniture was poor and scanty, the beds few in number, and the bedrooms small, dark, and ill-shaped. Chimneys and glass windows were now introduced into the houses of the great. Few of the houses of the common people were of stone, timber being still the chief material.

Food.—The humbler classes had still to be content with the frugal fare of their forefathers—quantity, not quality, being the main requisite. But with the nobility a sumptuous and extravagant style of living had been introduced, which laws and royal ordinances in vain attempted to check. In addition to the two regular meals of the Norman period, luncheon and supper of cakes and wine were now introduced. A splendid style of hospitality, almost surpassing belief, was indulged in by the higher nobility; at the marriage banquet of an Earl of Cornwall, 30,000 dishes, we are told, were served up, while Richard II. is said to have entertained 10,000 guests or retainers daily.

Dress.—In the middle ages the fashions were as changeable as in the present day. The general habit of noblemen was a close-fitting garment reaching to the middle of the thigh, buttoned down the front, and fastened round the the body with a rich girdle. The material was of the finest stuff, richly embroidered, and sometimes of several colours. An inner close-fitting sleeve, ornamented with buttons, reached to the wrist, but the outer sleeve terminated above the elbow, and from its extremity hung long pendants or streamers of white cloth, called tippets. The head-dress consisted of a cowl or hood of silk, having a long tail behind, and connected with a cape, which was buttoned round the neck; while long hose, of one or more

colours, and shoes of cloth of gold, richly embroidered, and tapering to a point, completed the costume. The ladies at the same date, an old writer says, outstripped "the men in all manner of arraies and curious clothing." At tournaments they rode in party-coloured tunics and short hoods, whose long tails were wrapped round their heads; they wore girdles ornamented with gold and silver, in which, like the beaux of the other sex, they stuck a short sword or dagger. Mourning habits were now for the first time worn, either alone or over the ordinary

garb, the colours being black and brown.

Amusements. — The tournament still maintained its pre-eminence among out-door amusements. Closely associated with it was the ordeal combat or duel, which seems to have taken the place of the ordeals of the Saxon times. In cases in which a charge could not be readily proved, an appeal was made to the trial by combat. Accuser and accused met each other in the lists in deadly strife—the knight on horseback, clad in complete armour, the yeoman on foot, with his club and target. God himself was supposed to be present as the judge; and the victor was declared innocent, and his cause good, as being under the special favour and protection of heaven. To this absurd practice we may trace the origin of duelling, which has become extinct in this country only within the memory of the present generation. In the intervals of war, hunting and hawking were the ruling passions of the nobility and gentry, but the great popular sport and exercise of this period was archery. The Plantagenet sovereigns, knowing well how often the tide of battle had been turned by the sure shafts of their sturdy bowmen, spared no pains to encourage its practice. Every yeoman who had one hundred pence per annum was obliged to furnish himself with serviceable bows and arrows; and even the young were provided with bows suitable to their size and strength.

National Industry.—Edward III. has been justly styled the father of English commerce. Wool had hitherto been the chief export, and fine cloths the chief import of the

country. But Edward invited over from Flanders artizans skilled in the woollen manufacture; and by the countenance and encouragement he accorded them, laid the foundation of our fine woollen manufactures—a benefit to his country far more important and enduring than his dazzling victories of Cressy and Poictiers. A large portion of the trade of the country was transacted at fairs and markets: and the traders of London had shops like sheds, or mere stalls in the street. A grocer was then called a pepperer, and dealt in spices and drugs, pepper being then one of the most costly spices, and a few pounds of it reckoned a princely present; drapers were originally makers of cloth; tailors made women's garments; and dealers in articles of dress from Milan were called milliners. The whole population of England was not much more than 2,000,000, and there were only nine towns in all England with more than 3000 inhabitants.

THE LEARNING OF THE PLANTAGENET PERIOD.

General Ignorance of the Age.—It was not till long after the middle ages in England, as well as Europe in general, that learning and knowledge ceased to be regarded as the exclusive province of the church. The clergy prided themselves upon their superior knowledge, and laughed at laymen who did not know one end of a book from the other; and the laity, with few exceptions, had no ambition to intrude into what they considered sacred ground. Among laymen, even of the highest rank, ability to read was rare, ability to write still more so. Many nobles of great talent and high office were unable even to write their own name; and, just as in the case of the lowest and most ignorant classes in the present day, instead of subscribing their names, they made a mark or sign of the cross—a practice so common as to originate our words sign and signature.

Scarcity of Books.—The main cause of the prevailing ignorance was the great scarcity, and therefore dearness, of books. Before the invention of printing, all books were manuscripts, the long, slow, laborious product of

the pen; and the writing or transcribing of a single book was often the work of years. The multiplication of books was still further prevented, and their expense increased, by the scarcity of parchment, which at that time was the only available material for writing on. Books were therefore a great many times dearer than at present, and could only be purchased by the wealthy. It was only in the monasteries that libraries were formed. academical library of Oxford consisted of only a few tracts on parchment kept in chests beneath St. Mary's Glastonbury Abbey had a library consisting of 500 vols., which was esteemed the richest collection of the age.

The Scriptorium.—The monks were not merely the readers, they were also the book-makers of the age. every abbey a room, called a scriptorium, or writing-room, was set apart for the copying of books; and estates were often granted for its support. In that room, day after day might monks be seen, with shaven crown and dark flowing skirts, patiently bending over their allotted task -the transcribing of the sacred volume, the missal, or the psalter, charters and chronicles, the ancient classics, and the lives of saints and martyrs.

QUESTIONS.

Buildings.

- 1. When did Gothic architecture reach | its perfection? 2. What buildings date from this
- period?
- 8. What was the early English style of architecture called?
 - 4. How did it get this name? 5. Mention some of its finest examples.
- style?
- 7. Who put a check upon building fortified castles?
- 8. What splendid feudal piles were founded in this age?
- 9. Describe the nature of the furniture, beds, and bedrooms. 10. What were introduced for the
- first time into the houses of the great? 6. Where do we find some of the best specimens of the decorated English in building the houses of the common people?

Food.

- nobility adopt?
- 1. With what kind of diet had the humbler classes still to be content?

 2. What style of living did the hospitality indulged in by the higher nobility.

Dress.

- 1. What is said of the fashions in the middle ages?
- 2. Describe the general dress of noblemen,
- 3. How did the ladies dress?
- 4. What kind of habits were now worn for the first time?
 - 5. What colours were used?

Amusements.

- 1. What was the popular out-door amusement?
- musement:
 2. What one was closely associated ately fond?
 7. What was the great popular sport with it?
- 3. On what occasions was it played?
- 4. Explain the manner in which it was carried out,
- 5. What took its origin from this? Of what were the nobility passion-
- of the period?
 8. Why was it so much practised?

National Industry.

- 1. Who has been styled the father of English commerce?
- 2. What had hitherto formed the chief articles of export and import?
- 3. By what means was much of the trade of the country carried on?
- 4. What was a grocer then called?
- Why?
 5. What was the population of Eng-
- 6. How many towns in England had more than 3000?

The Learning of the Plantagenet Period.

- 1. Who were considered the only persons of learning during this period?
- 2. Why was knowledge chiefly confined to this particular class? 3. Give examples to show that much
- ignorance prevailed. 4. What was the cause of this?
- 5. How were books produced previous to the invention of printing?
- 6. What other circumstance prevented the increase of books?
- 7. Who were the bookmakers of the age?
 - 8. What was the Scriptorium?

CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY

OF THE

PRINCIPAL EVENTS DURING THE PLANTAGENET PERIOD. A.D. 1154 TO A.D. 1399.

Twelfth Century.

- HENRY II. (Plantagenet).—A.D. 1154-1189. A.D.
- 1162. Thomas à Becket appointed Archbishop of Canterbury. He takes the part of the clergy in their claim to be exempted from the jurisdiction of the Civil Courts. This leads to a quarrel between him and the King.
- 1164. The Constitutions of Clarendon passed by a Council held Becket at first gives his at Clarendon in Wiltshire. consent to the Constitutions, but afterwards retracts and escapes to France.

A.D.

1170. Becket returns to England and is murdered by four of the King's knights in Canterbury Cathedral.

1171. Conquest of Ireland.

1189. Death of the King at Chinon in Normandy.

RICHARD I. (Cœur de Lion).-A.D. 1189-1199.

- 1190. Richard joins the Third Crusade. Distinguishes himself at the siege of Acre, and achieves brilliant exploits at Ascalon and Joppa.
- 1192. Richard concludes a peace with Saladin, sails for England, and shipwrecked in the Gulf of Venice. Taken prisoner at Vienna, and confined for fourteen months.

1194. Richard regains his liberty and returns to England.

1194. Richard declares war against Philip of France.

1199. Richard mortally wounded whilst besieging the castle of Chaluz.

Thirteenth Century.

JOHN (Lackland).-A.D, 1199-1216.

- 1203. John captures his nephew Arthur whom he is supposed to have murdered.
- 1205. Stephen Langton appointed Archbishop of Canterbury by the Pope.
- 1208. The Pope lays England under an Interdict, which continues for six years, during which time there is no divine service in the Kingdom.

1209. The Pope excommunicates John. [vassal.

1213. John resigns the kingdom to the Pope and becomes his

1215. The barons compel John to sign Magna Charta at Runny-

1216. The barons offer the crown to Prince Louis of France.

1216. John loses all his treasures and regalia on the shores of the Wash. Seized with fever and dies in the Castle of Newark.

HENRY III. (of Winchester).—A.D. 1216—1272.

1216. The Earl of Pembroke appointed regent.

1219. Pembroke dies, and is succeeded in the regency by Hubert de Burgh and Peter des Roches.

1258. The Mad Parliament meets at Oxford, and passes a series of measures called the Provisions of Oxford.

1265. The First Regular Parliament meets, to which representatives from cities and boroughs are summoned.

1272. Henry III. dies at Westminster.

EDWARD I. (Longshanks).—A.D. 1272—1307.

1282. Insurrection in Wales.

1284. Prince Edward, born at Caernarvon, is the first Prince of Wales in England.

- 1291. Margaret, the Maiden of Norway, dies on her voyage to Scotland. Throne of Scotland becomes vacant. The two chief competitors for the crown are John Baliol and Robert Bruce.
- 1292. Edward awards the crown to John Baliol.
- 1296. Baliol revolts, and dethroned by Edward.

Fourteenth Century.

1307. Edward marches towards Scotland to fight against Bruce, but dies at Burgh-on-Sands.

EDWARD II. (Caernarvon).-A.D. 1307-1327.

- 1308. The nobles compel the King to banish his favourite, Piers Gaveston. He goes to Ireland.
- 1309. Edward recalls his favourite.
- 1312. Gaveston withdraws to Flanders, but soon returns. He surrenders to the barons and is executed on Bracklow Hill, near Warwick.
- 1327. A Parliament meets at Westminster and deposes Edward II. He is supposed to have been murdered in Berkeley Castle.

EDWARD III. (Windsor).—A.D. 1327—1377.

- 1327. Parliament appoints a regency; the real power exercised by Queen Isabella and Mortimer. Edward only 13 years of age.
- 1328. Independence of Scotland confirmed.
- 1330. Mortimer seized, condemned, and executed. Isabella confined in her castle at Risings in Norfolk.
- 1339. Edward claims the throne of France, and declares war against that country.
- 1376. Death of the Black Prince.
- 1377. Death of Edward III.

RICHARD II. (Bordeaux).-A.D. 1377-1399.

- 1377. The government entrusted to a council of regency; real power exercised by Richard's three uncles: John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, Edmund, Earl of Cambridge, and Thomas, Duke of Gloucester. The young King only 11 years of age.
- 1380. A capitation tax of one shilling imposed on every person above 15 years of age.
- 1381. Wat Tyler's insurrection; Tyler struck down by Walworth,
 Lord Mayor of London. Rebellion checked.
- 1384. John Wycliffe dies at Lutterworth.
- 1397. The government entrusted to a council, at the head of which is the Duke of Gloucester, one of the King's uncles.

1397. The Duke of Gloucester arrested, sent to Calais, and there murdered.

1399. Richard crosses to Ireland to quell a rebellion. During his absence, Henry Bolingbroke, now Duke of Lancaster, who had been banished, returns and lands at Raven-Richard deposed, and Bolingbroke proclaimed as Henry IV.

BATTLES AND SIEGES DURING THE PLANTAGENET PERIOD.

B. Battle. N. B. Naval Battle. S. Siege.

- B. Alnwick, 1164. Between the Scots under William the Lion. and the English under Glanville. William defeated and taken prisoner.
- S. Acre, 1191. Taken by the Crusaders under Richard I. S. Chalus, 1199. Besieged by Richard I. who is mortally wounded.
- B. Lincoln, 1217. Prince Louis defeated by the Earl of Pembroke.
- B. Lewes, 1264. The Barons' War. Henry III. defeated and taken prisoner by Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester.
- B. Evesham, 1265. Prince Edward defeats Leicester, who is slain.
- B. Banks of Wye, 1282. Llewellyn surprised and slain.
- B. Bannockburn, 1314. Edward II. defeated by King Robert Bruce.
- B. Dundalk. 1318. Edward Bruce defeated and slain.
- B. Halidon Hill, 1333. Edward III. defeated the Scots.
- N. B. Sluys, 1340. Edward III. defeated Philip VI. of France.
- B. Cressy, 1346. Edward III. defeated the French under Philip VI.
- B. Neville's Cross, 1346. David II. of Scotland defeated and taken prisoner by Queen Philippa.
- 8. Calais. 1346-47. Besieged and taken by the English under Edward III.
- B. Poictiers, 1356. The Black Prince defeated the French and took King John prisoner.

TREATIES.

- 1217. Kingston, Treaty of, between the Earl of Pembroke and Prince Louis.
- 1264. Lewes, Mise of, was concluded by which it was agreed that Prince Edward and his cousin Henry should surrender themselves to Simon de Montfort as hostages for the release of their respective fathers.
- 1328. Northampton, Treaty of, by which the independence of Scotland was acknowledged.
- 1360. Bretigny, Peace of, by which Edward renounced his claim to the throne of France.

AUTHORS.

Roger, a celebrated English philosopher, born near Ilchester, in Somersetshire, A.D. 1214. After staying at Oxford, he went to Paris where he graduated in divinity. His chief work, the Opus Majus, proves his eminence in all the studies of the times. He is supposed to have invented magnifying glasses and gunpowder, and to have anticipated travelling by steam. Died A.D. 1292.

Bruce. His only known work is the poem on the life and exploits of King Robert Bruce. It has been frequently

republished. Died A.D. 1390.

haucer, Geoffrey, styled the "Father of English Poetry," was born in London, A.D. 1328. He was educated at the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge. Chief work, the Canterbury Tales, a series of stories told by a number of pilgrims on their way from Southwark to Canterbury. Died A.D. 1400.

loucester, Robert of, an early English chronicler of the 13th century. He lived in the reign of Henry III. Chief work a Metrical History of England. It is an interesting specimen of the state of the English language at the close of the 13th century. Died A.D. 1285.

ower, John, an English poet of the 14th century, was born in Yorkshire, A.D. 1320. He was contemporary with Chaucer.

Died A.D. 1402,

angelande, Robert, an old English poet, born in Shropshire, A.D. 1342. He is believed to have been the author of the Visions of Piers Plowman, a satirical poem containing severe reflections on the corruptions of the age, and the dissolute lives of the clergy.

ydgate, John, another old English poet, born at Bury St. Edmunds, and educated at Oxford. Chief work, Siege of

Troy. Died A.D. 1460.

Landeville, Sir John de, an English traveller, born at St. Albans, A.D. 1303. Left England in 1327, and for thirty-four years travelled through the countries of the east. In 1356, he wrote a narrative of his travels, first in Latin, then in French,

and finally in English. Died at Liége, A.D. 1372.

Pycliffe, John, the "Morning Star of the Reformation," born probably at Wycliffe, near Richmond, in Yorkshire, about A.D. 1324. He was educated at Oxford, where he translated the Bible into English, a work which occupied nearly fifteen years, and which exercised a powerful influence in furthering the Reformation. He died at Lutterworth, in Leicestershire, A.D. 1384. His doctrines were condemned by the Council of Constance, and his remains were, by order of the Council, exhumed, burnt, and cast into the Swift, a stream running by Lutterworth.

HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

HENRY	IVbegan	to reign	1399,	died	1413.
	V,				1422_
HENRY	VI, ,,	,,	1422,	dethroned	1461_

CHAPTER I.

HENRY IV. (BOLINGBROKE).

Henry's Personal History—His Accession—Insurrection of Owen Glendower— The Percies' Rebellion—The Prince of Wales—Death of the King.

Henry's Personal History—His Accession—Insurrection of Owen Glendower.

Henry IV., son of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, was born at Bolingbroke, in Lincoln, A.D. 1366. He was twice married. His first wife was Mary de Bohun, daughter of the Earl of Hereford; his second, Joanna, daughter of the King of Navarre, and widow of the Duke of Bretagne. His family consisted of four sons and two daughters: Henry, Prince of Wales, who succeeded his father; Thomas, Duke of Clarence; John, Duke of Bedford; Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester; Blanche, who was married to the Duke of Bavaria; and Philippa, who was married to the King of Denmark. He had no children by his second wife.

Henry was thirty-two years of age when he seized the crown. His accession was hailed with delight by the common people, but his title was not recognised by foreign states. The lawful heir to the throne was a young nobleman, named Edmund, Earl of March, the great-grandson of Lionel, Duke of Clarence, third son of Edward III., whereas Henry was the eldest son of John of Gaunt, fourth son of Edward III. This circumstance deserves to be particularly remembered, as it afterwards led to the long civil wars between the houses of York and Lancaster.

Henry had scarcely reigned a year when the Welsh, under Owen Glendower, who traced his descent from Liewellyn, the last of the Welsh princes, rebelled. Henry failed in his efforts to quell the rebellion, and Glendower was acknowledged by most of his countrymen as their ruler.

The Percies' Rebellion.

In the following year, Henry quarrelled with his most powerful friends, the Percies—the Earl of Northumberland, his brother, the Earl of Worcester, and his son, Sir Henry Percy, surnamed Hotspur; these, in conjunction with the Scottish Earl Douglas, joined Glendower in an attempt to gain the crown for the Earl of March, but the confederates were attacked by the King near Shrewsbury, and completely routed. The conflict was fierce and bloody; the gallant Hotspur was slain, and Worcester and Douglas were taken prisoners; the former was beheaded, but the latter was treated with the respect due to his position as a foreign prisoner of distinction.

No sooner had this revolt been quelled, than another was raised by the old Earl of Northumberland. The movement, however, was premature, and Scrope, Archbishop of York, having taken part in it, was executed. The earl escaped into Scotland, but was killed in a third rebellion at Bramham Moor, in Yorkshire. Glendower all this time maintained his independence in Wales. For a number of years he continued the struggle for freedom, and at last died, as is generally supposed, a natural death, in the house of one of his daughters, several years after the accession of Henry V.

The Prince of Wales-Death of the King.

It has been related of young Henry, Prince of Wales, that at times he permitted himself to be led astray by dissolute companions. The following story, of which no mention is made till a century and a half after his death, may be somewhat exaggerated. When one of his servants,

CHAPTER II.

HENRY V. (MONMOUTH).-1413-1422.

Henry's Personal History—His Accession—Persecution of the Lollards—War with France—Battle of Agincourt—Treaty of Troyes—Death of the King.

Henry's Personal History—His Accession—Persecution of the Lollards.

HENRY V., eldest son of the preceding monarch, was born at Monmouth, A.D. 1388. He married Catherine, youngest daughter of Charles VI., King of France. After the death of Henry, Catherine married a Welsh gentleman, named Owen Tudor, by whom she had a son, named Edmund, Duke of Richmond, who married Margaret, daughter of John Beaufort, Duke of Somerset. From this union was born Henry VII. of England, the first of the famous Tudor dynasty. Henry V. left only one child, who afterwards became King, under the title of Henry VI.

Henry, on his accession to the throne, set at liberty Mortimer, Earl of March, and restored the Northumberland family to their estates and honours. The beginning of his reign, however, was disturbed by the Lollards, who continued to exercise considerable influence in the kingdom. Their great leader was Sir John Oldcastle, commonly called Lord Cobham, who had at one time enjoyed the confidence of the King. This nobleman was condemned to the flames in 1414, and sent to the Tower, from which he escaped and fled into Wales. At the end of four years he was captured, and condemned as a traitor and heretic, and shortly afterwards was "burned, or rather roasted" to death, by being suspended in chains over a slow fire in St. Giles's Fields.

War with France-Battle of Agincourt.

Henry thought the present opportunity favourable for reviving the old claim made by Edward III. to the throne of France. The French King, Charles VI., was insane, and the country itself was torn asunder between rival factions. Taking advantage of such misfortunes, Henry assembled his forces at Southampton; but his departure was delayed in consequence of the discovery of a conspiracy to place the Earl of March on the throne. Most of the conspirators were put to death, the chief of whom was Henry's cousin, Richard, Earl of Cambridge, who had married Ann Mortimer, sister of the Earl of March.

After the conspiracy had been suppressed, Henry sailed from Southampton with 30,000 soldiers, and in two days landed near the town of Harfleur, which he besieged for five weeks, after which it surrendered. In addition to those killed during the siege, thousands of the English died of disease, so that Henry's army now numbered little more than 10,000 men. Although greatly reduced in numbers, he nevertheless resolved to march towards Calais. On his way he found the country laid waste, and every precaution taken to intercept his progress. Hastening to the Somme, he discovered that the bridges across the river were broken down; and after several fruitless attempts to effect a passage, he at last discovered a ford, and succeeded in crossing with his whole army. Continuing his march he found himself surrounded by the whole of the French army, numbering 50,000 men, near the village of Agincourt, in Picardy. fought one of the most memorable and decisive battles recorded in history. The English were 25th Oct. A.D. 1415. the first to commence the attack. The French cavalry then advanced, but were met by such a shower of arrows, that they were driven back and thrown into confusion. After three hours' hard fighting, the whole of the French army was dispersed, and Henry saw himself master of the field. The French loss was estimated at 11,000, and that of the English at 1600 men.

Henry now proceeded to Calais, leading along with him many noble captives and immense quantities of booty. On his arrival at Dover the people were so enthusiastic in their demonstrations of welcome, that many of them ran into the sea, and carried him on their shoulders to the shore. The citizens of London received him with great pomp and pageantry, and the Parliament granted him a subsidy for life, and additional sums for the further prosecution of the war.

5

ئځ

1

Ξe

1 ()

(Treaty of Troyes—Death of Henry.

In less than two years Henry again set sail for France. Landing in Normandy with an army of 40,000 men, he took Rouen and several other towns; and after much resistance the whole of that territory became subject to a.D. 1420. England. After some negotiations a treaty was entered into at Troyes, by which it was agreed that Henry should, on his marriage with the Princess Catherine, become Regent of France, and on the death of Charles VI. succeed to the throne of that country.

After his marriage Henry and his youthful Queen took up their residence in Paris, where the treaty of Troyes was ratified by the estates of the kingdom. The King and his French bride then visited England; but in a few months Henry was again obliged to return to France, where he found the Dauphin Charles, and a number of his partisans up in arms against him. Ere long the forces of the English monarch proved to be more than a match for those of young Charles. Everywhere the soldiers of Henry were victorious; but in the midst of his successes he was overtaken by disease, which the skill of his physicians failed to remedy. When informed that his recovery was hopeless, he submitted to his fate with calmness and resignation. On his death-bed he summoned to his presence his brothers, the Dukes of Bedford and Exeter, and commended to their care his infant son. He died at Vincennes, near Paris, but his body was afterwards removed to England, and buried in Westminster Abbey.

GENERAL FACTS.

During this reign the British navy was permanently established. By the order of the King a large vessel,

named the "Great Harry," was built at Bayonne. Guildhall, in which the various corporation courts of the city of London are held, was now completed; and the streets in some parts of the metropolis were for the first time lighted up at night by means of lanterns.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF HENRY V. (Monmouth).

A.D. 1413.-A.D. 1422.

Henry V., son of Henry IV. Born at Monmouth, A.D. 1888. Married Catherine, daughter of Charles VI. of France. Died at Vincennes, near Paris, A.D. 1422. Reigned 9 years.

The power and influence possessed by the Lollards gave alarm to the King and his government. Their leader, Sir John Oldcastle, was put to death as a traitor and heretic, A.D. 1417. Henry claimed the French crown. He invaded France, took the town of Harfleur, and won the famous battle of Agincourt, A.D. 1415. In a second expedition he captured Rouen, after which a treaty was made at Troyes, A.D. 1420, appointing Henry as the successor of Charles VI. This gave offence to the Dauphin, and Henry was once more recalled to France, but died in the midst of additional successes at Vincennes, leaving his infant son to succeed him.

QUESTIONS.

Henry's Personal History—His Accession—The Lollards— War with France-Treaty of Troyes-Death of the King-General Facts.

Henry V.

2. What was the origin of the Tudor

line? 3. By what acts of clemency was

Henry's accession marked?
4. Who disturbed the beginning of his reign?
5. What was the fate of their leader?

6. What led Henry to make war on France?

7. What conspiracy was formed against him?

8. How did it end?

9. Where did Henry land in France? Describe his march to Calais.

11. Where did he find himself sur-

1. Relate the personal history of rounded by the whole of the French army?

12. Give an account of the great battle which followed. Date.

13. How was Henry received on his return to England?

14. When did the next invasion of France take place?

15. State the result of this invasion.

16. Give the date of the treaty of Troyes.
17. What did it provide?

obliged Henry

18. What obliged Henry again 40 return to France?

19. State what followed.

20. What general facts are recorded !

CHAPTER III.

HENRY VI. (WINDSOR).-1422, DEPOSED 1461.

Henry's Personal History—The English in France—Joan of Arc—Loss of French
Territory—Fall of Gloucester and Suffolk—Jack Cade's Insurrection—
Richard, Duke of York—Wars of the Roses,

Henry's Personal History—The English in France—Joan of Arc—Loss of French Territory.

HENRY VI., the only son of Henry V., was born at Windsor in 1421. He married Margaret, daughter of René, Duke of Anjou. From his marriage was born one son, named Edward, who was murdered after the battle of Tewkesbury.

Henry VI. was not quite nine months old when he became King of England, and, by the death of Charles VI. a few weeks after, was also acknowledged King of France, in terms of the recent treaty of Troyes. The management of affairs was entrusted to the young King's uncles, the Dukes of Bedford and Gloucester; the former was appointed Regent of France, and the latter Governor of England, under the title of Protector.

For a number of years the English power in France was successfully maintained by the Duke of Bedford and the Earl of Salisbury, who gained several victories over the adherents of Charles VII., the late Dauphin. Crevant, in 1423, and at Verneuil, in 1424, successes were obtained as brilliant as those achieved at Cressy, Poictiers, and Agincourt. In 1428, the English laid siege to Orleans, and when Charles had given up all for lost, and was about to leave his country and seek an asylum either in Scotland or Spain, a remarkable personage appeared, who completely checked the tide of English aggression. This was Joan of Arc, a poor peasant girl, who said she had received a commission from heaven to deliver her country from the invaders, and to conduct Charles to Rheims to be crowned. She eagerly desired an interview with the King, which, after some hesitation, was granted. When ushered into his presence, she had no difficulty in at once recognising him

among his courtiers, although she had never seen him before. Charles heard her statement, and gave her liberty to proceed on her mission. Dressed as a commanding officer, and mounted on a charger, she proceeded at the head of a body of troops to Orleans. She passed the lines of the besiegers, and entered the town with a timely supply of provisions. This achievement greatly encouraged the French, but spread terror and confusion among the English. In a short time the assailants fled, the siege was abandoned, and Orleans was saved.

This exploit obtained for the heroic girl the title of the "Maid of Orleans."

Two months after, she witnessed the coronation of Charles in the ancient church of Rheims. Joan now considered her mission accomplished, and begged of the King to be allowed to return home. Unfortunately for her, Charles felt unwilling to dispense with her services; and in the following year, while attempting to raise the siege of Compiègne, she was made prisoner by the Burgundians, and tried on a charge of heresy and witchcraft. She was found guilty and sentenced to be burned in the market-place of Rouen. The English power in France continued rapidly to decline, and in the course of a few years, Calais was all that remained of the conquests achieved in France.

Fall of Gloucester and Suffolk—Jack Cade's Insurrection.

As already mentioned, the Duke of Gloucester had been appointed Protector of the Kingdom; but between him and Cardinal Beaufort quarrels had arisen which proved hurtful to the interests of the King. As Henry grew up he gave evidence of extreme weakness of mind, and after his marriage with Margaret of Anjou, that lady in a short time gained complete control over her feeble husband. Gloucester, who had opposed the match, incurred her displeasure, and, two years after the marriage, was accused of treason and cast into prison, where he was found dead in his bed two days afterwards. Beaufort survived his nephew Gloucester only a few weeks. The

Duke of Suffolk, who had negotiated the marriage, was greatly disliked by the people, and all the more so as the death of Gloucester was generally ascribed to him. He was impeached, but in order to save his life the King ordered him to leave the kingdom. He set sail from Ipswich, and whilst proceeding to Calais was captured by a number of sailors, who ordered him to come on board their vessel. The captain received him with the salutation, "Welcome, traitor!" He was then subjected to a mock trial and sentenced to death, after which one of the seamen placed a block on the side of a boat, and struck off his head with a rusty sword.

In consequence of the corrupt character of the government, general discontent prevailed; and not long after the death of Suffolk, an insurrection broke out in Kent, headed by one Jack Cade, an Irishman, who assumed the A.D. 1450. popular name of John Mortimer. He gathered around him a number of followers at Blackheath, and not long after defeated the royal forces at Seven Oaks. Cade now entered London in triumph, and put to death several of the nobility. The insurrection, however, was soon afterwards suppressed, the insurgents dispersed, and their leader, in endeavouring to escape, was killed in a garden in Sussex. His head was struck off and placed on a pinnacle of London Bridge.

Richard, Duke of York-Wars of the Roses.

After the suppression of Cade's insurrection, Edmund, Duke of Somerset, grandson of John of Gaunt, and Henry's nearest heir, was placed at the head of the government; but a number of the friends of Richard, Duke of York, now began openly to maintain that he had a prior claim to the throne, being descended from Lionel, an elder son of Edward III. At this time Richard was Governor of Ireland; but on hearing of Edmund's promotion he returned to England, raised an army, and demanded the dismissal of Somerset from the council. This attempt failed, and York, after a short period of imprisonment, retired to his castle at Wigmore,

on the borders of Wales. Next year Prince Edward was born. Not long after this event the King a.D. 1453. became insane, and the Duke of York was appointed Protector of the Kingdom by the authority of Parliament. On the recovery of the King, however, in the following year, the Duke was dismissed, and Somerset restored to office. York now resolved to assert his claim to the throne by force of arms; and thus commenced the Wars of the Roses, so called from the emblematic device of the House of York being a white, and that of the House of Lancaster, a red rose.

The first battle in these devastating wars was fought at St. Albans, which ended in the defeat A.D. 1455. of the royal forces; Somerset was killed and the King taken prisoner. The Duke of York was reappointed Protector of the kingdom; but in three months he was again dismissed. The discovery of a plot, intended to destroy the Earl of Warwick and several of the Yorkist leaders, led them again to take up arms. At Bloreheath in Staffordshire, another battle was A.D. 1459. fought, in which the Lancastrians were once more defeated, with the loss of their commander, Lord Audley. In the same year, the Yorkists assembled at Ludlow, but numbers of them having deserted, the Lancastrians gained an easy victory; the Duke of York escaped into Ireland, and Warwick returned to Calais.

The next engagement took place at Northampton, and ended in favour of the Yorkists, A.D. 1460. under the command of the Earl of Warwick.

The King was again made prisoner, whilst his Queen and the young prince fled to Scotland. In the meantime the Duke of York, by the consent of Parliament, was declared heir to the throne. Margaret, seeing that this would deprive her son of the right of succession, quickly collected an army in Scotland, and, marching southwards, defeated the Yorkists at Wakefield. In this engagement the Duke of York was slain. Maragaret vented her rage upon his lifeless body, and caused his head to be fastened with mock honours.

on the gates of York. His second son, the Duke of Rutland, was cruelly murdered by Lord Clifford.

The cause of the fallen Duke was now taken up by his son Edward, who quickly avenged the death of his father and brother by giving battle to Margaret's forces under Jasper, Earl of Pembroke, at Mortimer's and Feb. Cross in Herefordshire. In this action the adherents of the young Duke of York were Owen Tudor, who had married the widow of victorious. Henry V., was taken prisoner and beheaded. In the same year a second battle was fought at St. Albans, 17th Feb., in which Margaret defeated the Earl of War-A.D. 1461. wick, and recovered the person of the King from the Yorkists. She failed, however, to improve the victory, for having retired northwards, Edward entered London without opposition, and not long after was proclaimed King, under the title of Edward IV. The reign of Henry VI. was now at an end, though he continued to live till 1471, when, it is supposed, he was murdered by order of Edward VI.

GENERAL FACTS.

King's College, Cambridge, and Eton College, were founded by Henry VI.; and in 1451 Glasgow University was established. The first Lord Mayor's Show in London was made in the year 1453. Coffee was imported from Arabia in 1455. Glass was first manufactured in England in 1457. During this reign printing made rapid progress on the continent of Europe under the direction of Faust, Guttenberg, and Schoeffer, the inventors, or early improvers of the art.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF HENRY VI.

A.D. 1422.-A.D. 146L.

Henry VI., son of Henry V. Born at Windsor, A.D. 1421. Married Margaret of Anjou. Deposed, A.D. 1451. Supposed to have been murdered in the Tower, A.D. 1471. Reigned 39 years.

The war in France was carried on successfully by the Duke of Bedford and the Earl of Salisbury, who gained brilliant successes at Crevant in 1423, and at Verneuil in 1424. But the French, led by Joan of Arc, compelled the English to abandon the siege of Orleans, after which Charles VII. was crowned at Rheims, A.D. 1429. English power in France then declined.

An insurrection headed by Jack Cade broke out in Kent,

A.D. 1450, but was soon suppressed.

The Wars of the Roses commenced in 1455 and lasted till 1485. The point at issue was, whether the descendants of the House of Lancaster or House of York were to wear the crown. The rival factions traced their descent from Edward III. The badge worn by the Lancastrians was a red rose, and that by the Yorkists a white one. The first engagement took place at St. Albans, A.D. 1455, the next at Bloreheath, 1459; then followed the battles of Ludlow, Northampton, and Wakefield. In this last engagement the Duke of York was slain, A.D. 1460. His cause was taken up by his son Edward, afterwards Edward IV. He gained the battle of Mortimer's Cross, A.D. 1461. The Earl of Warwick, called the king-maker, was defeated in a second battle at St. Albans, but Edward, having united his forces with those of Warwick, marched into London where he was proclaimed king.

QUESTIONS.

Henry's Personal History—The English in France—Joan of Arc—Loss of French Territory.

1. Relate the personal history of Henry VI.
2. How old was he when he began to

reign? S. To whom was the management of the date.

affairs entrusted?

4. What victories were gained by the English in France? Give the dates.

ites.

5. Who conducted the French war?

6. What town was besieged by the English?

7. By whom was it relieved?
S. Relate the particulars and give

9. Where was Charles crowned?

10. What was the fate of the Maid of Orleans?
11. What was all that now remained of the English conquests in France?

Fall of Gloucester and Suffolk—Cade's Insurrection—Wars of the Roses.

1. Whom did Henry VI. marry?

2. Who opposed the match?

8. What afterwards became of him?
4. What was the fate of the Duke of Somerset?

5. Give an account of Jack Cade's insurrection.
6. Who was now placed at the head

of the government?
7. What was the nature of the Duke

7. What was the nature of the Di of York's claim to the throne?

8. What course of action did he adopt?
9. What change took place in the government after the King became insane?

20. What was done after his recovery?

11. Why were the Wars of the Roses so called?

12. Where was the first battle fought?

13. Give the result and date.
14. What battles followed?

15. Tell the result and date of each.
16. In which was the Duke of York

killed?
17. By whom was his cause taken up?

18. What powerful nobleman joined him?

19. Where was Edward proclaimed King?

20. What general facts are recorded in this reign?

HOUSE OF YORK.

EDWARD	IV.,	began	to reign	1461,	died	1483.
	V.,		,,	1483,	,,,	1483.
RICHARD	III.,		••	1483		1485.

CHAPTER I.

EDWARD IV.—1461-1483.

Edward's Personal History—Wars of the Roses Continued—Edward Dethroned
—Henry Restored—Death of Warwick—Murder of Prince Edward—Duke
of Clarence—Death of the King.

Edward's Personal History—Wars of the Roses Continued.

EDWARD IV., second son of Richard, Duke of York, was born at Rouen, A.D. 1441, when his father was regent in France. He married Elizabeth, daughter of Richard Woodville, and widow of Sir John Grey. The children of Edward were: Edward, who succeeded his father, and Richard, Duke of York. He had also several daughters, the eldest of whom was Elizabeth, afterwards married to Henry VII.

Edward was nineteen years of age when he was proclaimed King. Before he was crowned he was obliged to take the field against the Lancastrians. He advanced northwards, accompanied by Warwick, and met the forces

of Margaret at Towton in Yorkshire, where a 29th Mar, most desperate engagement took place, which ended in the total defeat of the army of the heroic Queen. As no quarter was given, upwards of thirty thousand were left dead on the field. After the battle, Henry and Margaret took refuge in Scotland, while Edward retired to London and was crowned King at Westminster.

There being no prospect of obtaining assistance from Scotland, the restless Queen Margaret sailed for France, and solicited aid from Louis XI. Having obtained a

band of foreign adventurers, she returned and landed in Northumberland; but ere long she again met with defeat, first at Hedgley Moor, and a few 25th April, days later at Hexham. Henry then made his escape, and for more than a year lay concealed in Lancashire and Westmoreland, but was afterwards betrayed into the hands of the Yorkists, and led captive to the Tower. Margaret withdrew to Flanders, and afterwards retired to France, where she found refuge at the court of her father.

Edward Dethroned—Henry Restored.

Edward, in 1464, married Elizabeth Woodville, widow of Sir John Grey, a Lancastrian. The old nobility, and especially the Earl of Warwick, to whom Edward owed much of his success, were highly offended when they saw the relations of the young Queen advanced to honour and wealth, and many of their sons and daughters united to families of the highest rank. The ill-feeling between Edward and Warwick gradually increased, and ended at last in the open rebellion of the Earl.

The King's brother, the Duke of Clarence, who had married the eldest daughter of the Earl of Warwick, joined his father-in-law in his opposition to Edward. A number of insurrections followed, in most of which Warwick and Clarence joined the insurgents, but in 1470 they were obliged to escape into France, where they found refuge at the court of Louis, who effected a reconciliation between Warwick and Margaret of Anjou. The Earl now espoused the cause of the Lancastrians, and having been provided by Louis with a fleet, returned to England, and in eleven days made himself master of the entire kingdom. Edward fled into Flanders, and Henry VI. was taken from the Tower and replaced on the throne.

. Death of Warwick-Murder of Prince Edward.

The restored monarch did not long enjoy his crown. After an absence of little more than six months, Edward returned with a number of foreign A.D. 1471.

of France.

troops, and landed at Ravenspur in Yorkshire. His followers increased, and Clarence, having returned to the side of the King, advanced towards London, which opened its gates to receive him. Again King 14th April, Henry was driven from his throne, and Edward hastened to meet the Earl of Warwick at Barnet. Here a decisive battle was fought, in which the "King-maker," with many of his nobles, was left dead on the field, and Henry was once more sent back to the Tower.

On the same day Margaret and her son landed in England. The courageous Queen was deeply affected on receiving intelligence of the defeat and death of Warwick, but quickly gathering a number of adherents, she set out to try to effect a junction with the Earl of Pembroke. who had collected a large force on her behalf in 4th May. Wales. She was overtaken, however, by Edward A.D. 1471. at Tewkesbury, where the Lancastrians were again signally defeated. Margaret and her son were taken prisoners, and placed in the King's tent. The young prince, on being asked by Edward what had brought him to England, replied, "My father's crown, and mine own inheritance." The enraged monarch struck the brave youth on the face with his gauntlet, when the King's brothers, Clarence and Gloucester, despatched him with their swords. Edward returned in triumph to London, and next morning Henry was found dead in the Tower. He is supposed to have been murdered by order of Edward or one of his brothers. Queen Margaret,

Duke of Clarence-Death of the King.

after a captivity of four years, was ransomed by the King

Edward, who had never been able to forget the treachery of his brother, the Duke of Clarence, sought an opportunity to destroy him. Having been accused of treason, the duke was sent to the Tower, where he was secretly put to death. According to a popular report at the time, he was drowned in a butt of Malmsey, his favourite wing.

The King, while preparing to invade France, took suddenly ill, and died at Westminster, in the forty-second year of his age, and was buried at Windsor.

GENERAL FACTS.

Printing was introduced into England in 1476, by William Caxton, a London merchant, who had gone to the Netherlands, where he became acquainted with the art, and on his return erected his first printing-press at Westminster. This most important and valuable discovery was introduced into Scotland in 1508, and into Ireland in 1551. The first book printed in England was The Game and Playe of the Chesse, in 1476. In this reign posts were for the first time established; letters were conveyed between London and Edinburgh one hundred miles a-day by means of horsemen, who were stationed twenty miles apart. A dreadful pestilence visited England in 1479; it began in September and continued its ravages till November.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF EDWARD IV.

A.D. 1461-A.D. 1483.

Edward IV., second son of Richard, Duke of York. Born at Rouen, A.D. 1441.

Married Elizabeth Woodville. Died at Westminster, A.D. 1488. Reigned 22 years.

Edward defeated the Lancastrians at Towton, A.D. 1461. Henry and Margaret, with their infant son, escaped into Scotland. At Hedgley Moor, A.D. 1464, and shortly after at Hexham, the Lancastrians were again defeated. Edward having quarrelled with the Earl of Warwick, the latter espoused the cause of the Lancastrians, and in this he was joined by the Duke of Clarence, brother of the King. After a series of insurrections they were obliged to escape to the Continent. Having met Margaret at the French court they formed an alliance with her, and in a short time Warwick and Clarence returned to England and proclaimed Henry king. Edward then fled to Flanders, A.D. 1470. In the following year he came back, and Clarence having returned to his side, the Lancastrians were defeated at Barnet, A.D. 1471. In this engagement Warwick, the "king maker,"

was slain. Margaret arrived the same day from the Continent. and sustained a signal defeat at Tewkesbury. Edward then entered London, and the following day King Henry was found dead in the Tower.

The Duke of Clarence, having been accused of treason, was sent to the Tower and secretly put to death. Printing was introduced into England during this reign by Caxton, A.D. 1476.

QUESTIONS.

Edward's Personal History—Wars of the Roses Continued.

- 1. Relate the personal history of l Edward IV.
- 2. What battle did he fight previous to his coronation?
- 3. Give the date and result.
- 4. From whom did Margaret obtain assistance?
- 5. What engagements followed? Date and result.

Edward Dethroned-Henry Restored-Death of Warwick-Murder of Prince Edward.

- Whom did Edward marry? 2. What gave offence to the Earl of Warwick?
 - 3. How did the matter end?
- 4. Who joined Warwick in his rebellion? 5. What followed? Between whom
- was a reconciliation effected? 6. Whose cause did Warwick now
- take up?
 - 7. What became of Edward?
- 8. Who was replaced on the throne? 9. How long was Edward absent from England?
- 10. Where did he land on his return?
 11. What battle was afterwards fought?
- 12. Who landed in England on the same day?
- 13. Relate what followed.
- 14. Give the date and result of the battle.
- 15. Relate the interview which took place betwixt the King and Prince Edward.
- 16. What is supposed to have been the fate of King Henry?

Duke of Clarence-Death of the King-General Facts.

- accused?
- 2. Where was he sent?
- 3. How is he said to have been put to death?
- 4. Where and when did the King die?
 - 5. What important invention was on in this reign?
- 1. Of what was the Duke of Clarence | introduced into England during this reign?
 - 6. By whom? Give the date.
 - 7. What was the name of the first book printed in England?
 - 8. How was postal communication between London and Edin burgh carried

CHAPTER II.

edward v.—April, 1483-june, 1483.

State of Parties—Richard, Duke of Gloucester—Earl Rivers—Lord Hastings—Richard proclaimed King.

EDWARD V. was only twelve years of age at the time of his father's death, and was living at Ludlow Castle with his maternal uncle, Earl Rivers. The Earl set out for London, taking under his protection the person of young Edward. On their way they were met at Stony Stratford by Richard, Duke of Gloucester, the King's paternal uncle, who immediately seized Rivers and his friends, and sent them prisoners to Pontefract Castle. When the news of this event reached the ears of the Queenmother, she took refuge in the Sanctuary at Westminster, along with her daughters and her younger son, Richard, Duke of York. In the meantime, Gloucester conducted the young King to London, and placed him in the Tower, where he was shortly afterwards joined by his brother.



PONTEFRACT CASTLE.

It now became apparent that Gloucester's design was to seize the crown, and for this end he resolved to get rid of those who might oppose his elevation. The first to suffer was Lord Hastings, who was accused by Richard of treason, and beheaded in the Tower. On the same day Earl Rivers and his companions shared a similar fate at Pontefract.

Richard next began to call in question the legitimacy of Edward's children, and directed Dr. Shaw, a popular preacher, to deliver a discourse, in which he was to declare that the late King was the husband of another lady at the time of his marriage with Elizabeth Woodville, and that therefore the two princes were illegitimate. Two days afterwards, the Duke of Buckingham addressed the citizens of London at Guildhall on the same subject: and after every effort had been made to raise a shout in favour of Richard, only a few individuals, hired for the purpose, uttered a feeble cry of "Long live King Richard." This, however, satisfied Buckingham, who now solicited Richard's acceptance of the crown. After acting a very hypocritical part, Richard consented to be King, in obedience, he said, to the will of the people! He was shortly afterwards proclaimed, under the title of Richard III., and thus ended Edward's brief reign of eleven weeks.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF EDWARD V.

APRIL 1483-JUNE 1463.

Edward V., son of Edward IV. Born at Westminster, A.D. 1470. Said to have been murdered in the Tower. Reigned 11 weeks.

Richard, Duke of Gloucester, seized the young King at Stony Stratford and conveyed him to the Tower. Having put to death Hastings and Rivers, two friends of Edward, Gloucester, with the aid of Buckingham, contrived to get himself proclaimed King.

QUESTIONS.

Richard, Duke of Gloucester—Earl Rivers—Lord Hastings— Richard proclaimed King.

- 1. Where was Edward living at the time of his father's death? With whom?
 2. By whom were they met on their way to London?
- 5. What design had Gloucester in 6. Who aided him in his efforts to
- seize the crown? State what then took place.
 What became of the Queen-mother?
 T. Relate what passed between Richard and the Duke of Buckingham.

CHAPTER III.

RICHARD III. (CROOKBACK).—1483-1485.

Richard's Personal History—Murder of the Young Princes—Conspiracy to Dethrone Richard—Battle of Bosworth—Death of the King.

Richard's Personal History—Murder of the Young Princes. RICHARD III., son of Richard, Duke of York, and brother of Edward IV., was born at Fotheringay Castle in Northamptonshire, A.D. 1452. He married Anne, second daughter of Warwick, the king-maker, and widow of Edward, son of Henry VI. From this union was born one son, Edward, who died when twelve years of age.

Richard was crowned, with his consort Anne, at Westminster, and immediately after the ceremony set out on a royal tour through the country. He visited several towns, and was re-crowned at York. While on his journey northward, Richard is said to have ordered Sir Robert Brackenbury, governor of the Tower, to put the two captive princes to death. Brackenbury, however, declined. The King then sent Sir James Tyrrell, his master of the horse, with a commission to receive the keys of the fortress for one night. This was accordingly done, and Tyrrell, along with two hired assassins, named Dighton and Forest, went during the night to the apartment where the princes were sleeping. The ruffians entered the room, and smothered the innocent boys among the bed-clothes. Tyrrell then ordered the murderers to bury them at the foot of the staircase. bones were afterwards discovered by some workmen in the reign of Charles II., and by his orders were decently interred in Westminster Abbey.

Conspiracy to Dethrone Richard—Battle of Bosworth—Death of the King.

While Richard was engaged in rewarding the agents employed in this fearful tragedy, a conspiracy was formed to deprive him of the crown. At the head of this plot was the Duke of Buckingham, who had been mainly instrumental in placing him on the throne, but who had taken offence at the reward offered for his treasonable

The design of the conspirators was to place on the throne Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, a descendant of John of Gaunt, and only surviving representative of the House of Lancaster. His title was defective, but to obviate this difficulty, Morton, Bishop of Ely, proposed that Henry should marry Elizabeth of York, eldest daughter of Edward IV., and so unite the claims of the rival houses of Lancaster and York. The young Earl. who was living in exile at the court of the Duke of Brittany, speedily collected a fleet and an army, and set sail for England. When about to land he was overtaken by a storm, and driven back. In the meantime, the Duke of Buckingham had raised the standard of rebellion in Wales, but his progress was interrupted by a terrible flooding of the Severn, which carried away the bridges, and rendered the fords impassable. His followers also deserted him, and he himself, wandering in disguise, took refuge in the house of a former servant, who betrayed him. was taken to Richard at Salisbury, and there beheaded.

The rebellion was now at an end; but Henry of Richmond resolved to make another effort to invade England. Having raised a few thousand men, he sailed from the mouth of the Seine, and landed at Milford-haven. As he advanced eastward, numerous adherents flocked to his standard, and on his arrival at Market-Bosworth in Leicestershire, his forces numbered six thousand, while those of Richard amounted to twice as many.

22nd Aug. A battle ensued. The action had scarcely begun.

22nd Aug., A battle ensued. The action had scarcely begun, when Lord Stanley deserted Richard, and joined Richmond with seven thousand men. This decided the contest; nevertheless, Richard fought desperately, and having obtained a sight of Henry, he rushed forward to slay him, but was thrown from his horse and instantly despatched. His blood-stained crown was placed by Stanley on the head of the victor, amid the shouts of the soldiers, who saluted him as King Henry VII.

With the battle of Bosworth the long and bloody struggle between the rival Roses was terminated, and at the same time the dark and guilty career of Richard, the last of the Plantagenet Kings, was closed.

GENERAL FACTS.

There were fourteen Plantagenet Kings who successively ruled in England. The first was Henry II., the last Richard III. Five were feeble and worthless monarchs, viz., John, Henry III., Edward II., Richard II., and Henry VI. The Wars of the Roses lasted thirty years, and one hundred thousand Englishmen are said to have fallen in the deadly conflict. During the reign of Richard III., consuls to foreign countries were appointed for the protection of British merchants.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF RICHARD III. (Crookback). A.D. 1483-A.D. 1485.

Richard III., brother of Edward IV. Born at Fotheringay Castle, A.D. 1452.

Married Anne, daughter of the "King-maker." Killed at Bosworth, A.D. 1485. Reigned 2 years.

Edward V. and his brother Richard, Duke of York, were murdered in the Tower by order of the King. The Duke of Buckingham entered into a conspiracy to dethrone Richard and place Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, on the throne. The plot was discovered, and Buckingham having been betrayed by an old servant, was taken to the King at Salisbury and immediately executed, A.D. 1483. The Earl of Richmond landed at Milfordhaven, and met Richard at Market-Bosworth, where the usurper was defeated and slain, A.D. 1485. With his death the Wars of the Roses ended.

QUESTIONS.

Richard's Personal History-Murder of the young Princes-Conspiracy to dethrone Richard-Battle of Bosworth-Death of the King.

- 1. Relate the personal history of Richard III.
- 2. What order is Richard said to have riven on his setting out for a journey in the north?
- 8. Describe the manner in which it was executed.
- 4. Where were the bodies of the young princes afterwards discovered?
- 5. Where were they interred?
 6. Who formed a conspiracy against
- Richard? 7. What was the design of the con-
- spirators? 8. What proposal was made to obviate the difficulty of Richmond's defective title?

- 9. What was the fate of Buckingham? 10. Where did Henry of Richmond land?
- 11. What battle was afterwards fought?
- 12. Give the result and date.13. Under what title was Henry proclaimed?
- 14. What wars were now ended? 15. How long had they lasted?
- 16. How many Plantagenet Kings ruled in England? 17. Who was the first of these? The
- last? 18. How many were feeble and worth-less monarchs? Tell their names.

CHAPTER IV.

SOCIAL LIFE IN THE LANCASTER AND YORK PERIOD.

Effects of the Civil War—Houses—Food—Dress—Amusements—National Industry—Literature,

Effects of the Civil War.—The thirty years' struggle ended on the field of Bosworth, in the triumph of the kingly power over that of the aristocracy. More than threescore barons and one hundred and thirty-three knights had perished in battle; nearly one-fifth of the whole land of the kingdom had fallen by confiscation to the King; and one-half of the families of distinction in England had been reduced by proscription or banishment. The feudal system had now received its death-blow, and on the ruins of the aristocracy we mark the rise of the commons, or trading classes of the towns, who, after a century and a half, were destined in their turn to overthrow the grasping power of monarchy in the royal House of Stuart. The villeins, or bondsmen, were also passing rapidly into the ranks of free labourers; and the formidable insurrections of Wat Tyler and Jack Cade, although only rude protests against their servitude, and vague assertions of their native rights, taught the nobles the expediency of ameliorating their condition; so that, without a single enactment directed against it, villenage, or slavery, the greatest curse of society, slowly but gradually disappeared from British soil.

Houses.—The houses of the nobility built in the 15th century are termed manor-houses. The larger structures resembled fortified castles from their strong gateways, entrance towers, and battlements. The ordinary buildings were still generally of wood, but some were partially of stone; and bricks, which had been introduced from Flanders, now began to be much employed for building purposes. The gentry of that age had neither much accommodation nor convenience in their habitations, compared with the requirements of the present day. The furniture was also poor and scanty. Few houses had more than two beds, and the walls were destitute

of wood lining or plaster; but in the houses of the great, the tapestry which covered the walls served not only the purposes of decoration, like our papering and painting, but also helped to ward off draughts from chinks and illclosed doors and windows.

Food.—During this period, the nobility had four regular meals a day: breakfast at seven o'clock, dinner at ten. supper at four, and "liveries" taken in bed between eight and nine in the evening. The labouring classes breakfasted at eight, dined at noon, and supped at six. At the castle, or manor-house, dinner was the most important meal, and generally lasted about three hours. The master of the household took his place on the dais, or raised part of the floor at the head of the table, while his guests and retainers were arranged according to rank above or below the salt-cellar. The food was still conveyed to the mouth by the fingers, and numerous attendants handed round wine, beer, and ale, in vessels of wood, pewter, or horn. In the intervals of the feast, the company were amused with the jokes of the jester, the tricks of jugglers, and the odd pranks of buffoons; or, perhaps, some minstrel tuned his harp and sung a lay of love and chivalry, or of Warwick, "the King-maker," the wars in Palestine. maintained 30,000 men daily at his various castles and manor-houses; and at his London residence—which, like the town residences of the nobility of the time, was called an inn-six oxen were consumed every morning at breakfast by his retainers.

Dress.—The general costume of the fifteenth century seems to have been compounded of all the fashions of the fourteenth, with additions to their absurdity. We have hoods with long "liripipes," or tippets, reaching to the ground, and high caps with single feathers behind; high padded shoulders to jackets and gowns, with rolling furs, collars, and sleeves—the sleeves sometimes slashed, to show the rich lining, or slit at the elbows, to show the fine Holland shirt beneath, and sometimes "shaped like a bagpipe," as described by an old monkish writer. The hair, which was at first cut short, was latterly suffered

to grow in heavy masses down to the collar, and over the forehead, even into the eyes. The long-toed shoes suddenly became so broad that a law was passed limiting the breadth at the toe to six inches. But they speedily recovered their longitude, and maintained their ground in spite of "cursing by the clergy." Even councils and synods of the Church had vehemently condemned the long toe as a profane and wicked device, to bring into contempt that passage of Scripture which says that no man can add a cubit to his stature! The ladies were rich gowns, embroidered and trimmed with rich furs or velvet, with short waists and long trains. The horned and heart-shaped head-dresses were succeeded by steepleshaped ones, which consisted of a roll of linen covered with fine lawn hanging down to the ground, or tucked under the arm from behind. This, like the long-toed shoes, was preached against, written against, and caricatured, but equally in vain.

Amusements.—There was little change upon the sports and pastimes of the people during this period. ments, however, began to give place to the stern realities of the battle-field. Court-mummings, or masquerades, formed the frequent amusement of the Court, and royal pageants of great magnificence gratified the populace of London. Hunting and falconry were the favourite sports of the nobility and wealthy commoners. The clergy likewise considered that indulgence in such amusements was not inconsistent with the discharge of their ecclesiastical duties. A bishop of Norwich on one occasion bequeathed to the King his favourite pack of hounds, and an archdeacon of Richmond, while on visitation, arrived at the priory of Bridlington with ninety-seven horses, twentyone dogs, and three hawks. Running, wrestling, and bowling, were the favourite amusements of the common people; the two latter being the recognised national games of the period. In Scotland, the game of golf was already high in popular favour, and in England at the present day the same excellent and healthful exercise is largely taken advantage of by all classes of the community.

National Industry.—During this period gardening fell into much disuse, and husbandry was greatly harassed and interfered with by the spoliations, confiscations, and general insecurity of the times. The gradual emancipation of the serfs, who betook themselves to trades and manufactures, created a scarcity of field labourers, and from this cause arable lands were largely converted into pasture. Wool, "the chief and principal commodity of the realm," as it is termed in the old statutes, was still the chief export, being held in high estimation in most of the continental countries, and yielded the King, from the custom duties upon it, a large portion of his revenue. Our chief purchases were made in the markets of Flanders; but silks, velvets, and cloth of gold, were imported from Italy. Commerce in this age was carried on not only by the regular merchants, but even by kings, nobles, and dignitaries of the church, who were among the most active traders, and at one time the Cistercian* monks were the greatest wool merchants in the kingdom.

QUESTIONS.

- 1. How did the thirty years' struggle end?
 - 2. State some of its effects. 8. What class of society now began to
- exercise greater power in the country? 4. What change was marked in the
- condition of the villeins or bondsmen? 5. What are termed manor-houses?
- Of what were the ordinary houses generally built?
 - 7. Describe the furniture.
- 8. What purposes did the tapestry on the walls serve?
- 9. How many meals a day had the nobility during this period?
- State what these were. 11. At what hours did the labouring
- classes take their meals? 12. How long did dinner at the
- manor-house usually last? 13. How was the company amused in
- the intervals of the feast? 14. Give an instance of the splendid
- style of hospitality which prevailed.

 15. Describe the dress of the 15th
- century.

- 16. How was the hair worn?
 17. Who condemned the use of longtoed shoes?
- 18. What reason was assigned for this?
- Describe the dress worn by ladies. 20. Account for the decline of the tournament during this period.
 21. What formed the amusement of
- the court? 22. What were favourite sports of
- the nobility? 23. Give instances of the clergy having
- engaged in these sports.
 24. What were favourite amusements of the common people?
- 25. What caused gardening and hus-
- bandry to decline?

 26. How do you account for the scarcity of field labourers?
- 27. What formed the chief export?
 28. What articles were imported from Italy?
- 29. Who, besides the regular merchants, carried on trade?
- *A religious order which takes its name from the parent monastery of Citeaux (Cistercium), near Dijon in France.

CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY

OF THE

PRINCIPAL EVENTS DURING THE LANCASTER AND YORK PERIOD.—A.D. 1399 to A.D. 1485.

Fourteenth Century.

- A.D. HENRY IV. (Bolingbroke), A.D. 1899-1413.
- 1399. Knights of the Bath first instituted.

Fifteenth Century.

- 1401. Statute for burning heretics passed. William Sautré the first English martyr.
- 1413. Henry IV. dies at Westminster.

HENRY V. (Monmouth), A.D. 1413-1422.

- 1414. Lord Cobham condemned as a heretic, and imprisoned in the Tower. He escapes into Wales, but is afterwards captured and burned in 1417.
- 1414. Henry renews the claim of Edward III, to the throne of France.
- 1415. War with France.
- 1422. Henry V. dies at Vincennes, near Paris.

HENRY VI. (Windsor), A.D. 1422-1461.

- 1422. Council of regency appointed, with the Duke of Gloucester as Protector. The Duke of Bedford is made Regent of France. Gloucester and Bedford were the King's uncles.
- 1429. Charles VII. crowned King of France at Rheims.
- 1431. Joan of Arc burned as a witch at Rouen.
- 1445. Henry marries Margaret of Anjou.
- 1450. The Duke of Suffolk, the King's chief minister, beheaded at sea. Jack Cade's Insurrection.
- at sea. Jack Gade's Insurrection 1451. Glasgow University established.
- 1453. Edward, Prince of Wales, born.
- 1455. Commencement of the Wars of the Roses.
- 1461. Edward, Earl of March, acknowledged King. Henry VL supposed to have been murdered in the Tower, 1471.

EDWARD IV., A.D. 1461-1483.

- 1464. Edward marries Elizabeth Woodville.
- 1470. Henry VI. taken from the Tower and proclaimed King. Edward flees into Flanders.
- 1471. Margaret's son, Prince Edward, is assassinated.
- 1476. Printing introduced into England by William Caxton. Is introduced into Scotland, 1508, and into Ireland, 1551.
- 1483. Edward dies at Westminster.

EDWARD V.-April 1483-June 1483.

1483. Richard, Duke of Gloucester, the King's uncle, made Protector. Is afterwards offered the crown which he accepts.

RICHARD III. (Crookback).-A.D. 1483-1485.

- 1483. Edward V. and his brother Richard, Duke of York, murdered in the Tower.
- 1483. The Duke of Buckingham forms a plot to place Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, on the throne. Henry Tudor's mother was great-grand-daughter of John of Gaunt.

1485. Richmond lands at Milford-haven. In the battle of Bosworth Richard is defeated and slain.

BATTLES AND SIEGES DURING THE LANCASTER AND YORK PERIOD.

B. Battle. S. Siege.

- B. Homildon Hill, 1402. Between the English under Percy, and the Scots under Douglas. The Scots defeated.
- B. Shrewsbury, 1403. The combined forces of the Percies and Douglas are defeated by Henry IV. Hotspur is slain.
- B. Bramham-Moor, 1408. The Earl of Northumberland defeated and slain.
- S. Harfleur, 1415. Captured by Henry V. after a siege of five weeks.
- B. Agincourt, 1415. The French are defeated by Henry V. In this memorable engagement the French lost 11,000 men, and the English only 1600.
- B. Crevant, 1423. The French defeated by the Earl of Salisbury.
- B. Verneuil, 1424. The French and their Scottish allies signally defeated by the Duke of Bedford.
- S. Orleans, 1429. Besieged by the English under the Earl of Salisbury. Siege raised by Joan of Arc.
 S. Complegne, 1430. Besieged by the Burgundians. Joan of
- Arc captured and burnt the next year at Rouen.
- B. St. Albans. First battle in the Wars of the Roses. trians defeated, and Henry VI. taken prisoner.
- B. Bloreheath, 1459. Lancastrians defeated, and their leader. Lord Audley, slain.
- B. Northampton, 1460. Lancastrians defeated, and the King again made prisoner.
- B. Wakefield, 1460. Yorkists defeated, and Richard, Duke of York, slain.
- B. Mortimer's Cross, 1461. Lancastrians defeated by Edward, Earl of March, now Duke of York.
- 2nd B. of St. Albans, 1461. Yorkists under the Earl of Warwick defeated by Margaret.

B. Towton, 1461. Lancastrians defeated by Edward, Duke of York. Henry and Margaret escape to Scotland.

B. Hedgley Moor, 1464. Lancastrians defeated,

B. Hexham, 1464. Lancastrians defeated.

B. Barnet, 1471. Lancastrians defeated, and Warwick, the "last of the Barons," slain.

B. Tewkesbury, 1471. Lancastrians again defeated.

B. Bosworth, 1485. Between Richard III. and Henry, Earl of Richmond. Richard defeated and slain. This was the last battle in the Wars of the Roses.

TREATY.

1420. Troyes, Treaty of, by which it was agreed that Henry V. should marry Catherine, daughter of Charles, King of France; be regent during the life of the French King, and, on his death, succeed to the throne.

AUTHORS.

Caxton, William, born in Kent, A.D. 1410. Having served his time as a mercer in London, he went abroad in 1441. While residing in Flanders, he acquired a knowledge of the art of printing, and on his return to England in 1476, set up a press at Westminster, whence he issued the first book printed in this country, styled, The Game and Playe of the Chesse. Caxton wrote and printed in his advanced age more than sixty works, original or translated. Died A.D. 1491.

Collingbourn, Sir William, was executed for writing the following

couplet :-

"The Rat, the Cat, and Lovel our dog, Rule all England under a Hog."

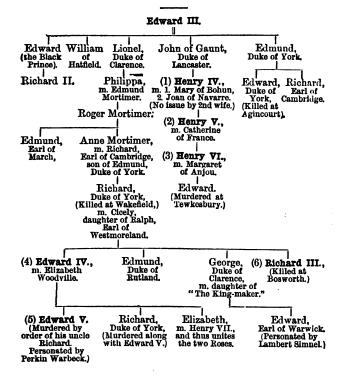
The above refers to Richard III. and his favourite ministers, Sir Richard Ratoliffe, Sir William Catesby, and Viscount Lovel, the arms of the latter being a dog, and those of King Richard a wild boar.

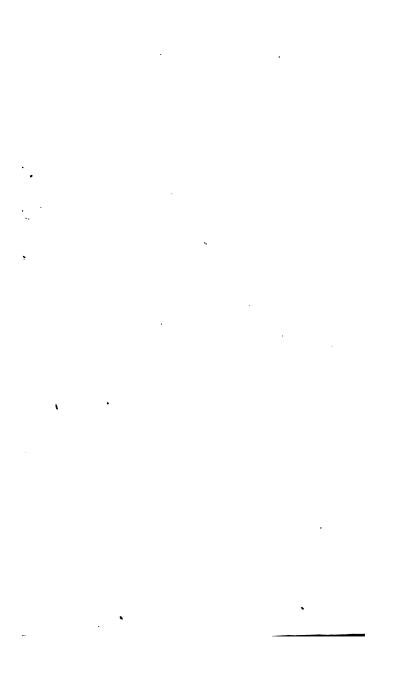
Fortescue, Sir John, an eminent judge and writer on law. Besides several works in Latin, he wrote in English a treatise on The difference between a Limited and Absolute Monarchy, in which he compares the French and English constitutions, greatly to the advantage of the latter.

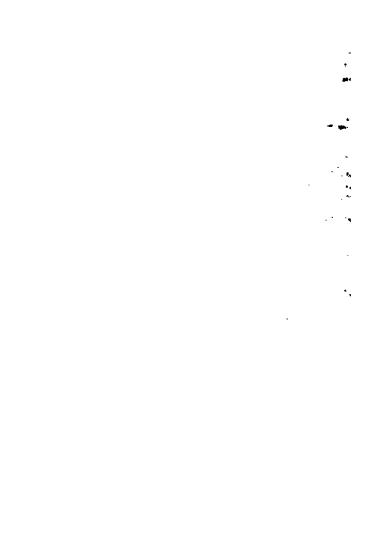
Littleton, Edward, a celebrated English judge and writer on the law. His chief work is his celebrated treatise on *Tenures*, which is regarded as the principal authority for the law of

real property in England.

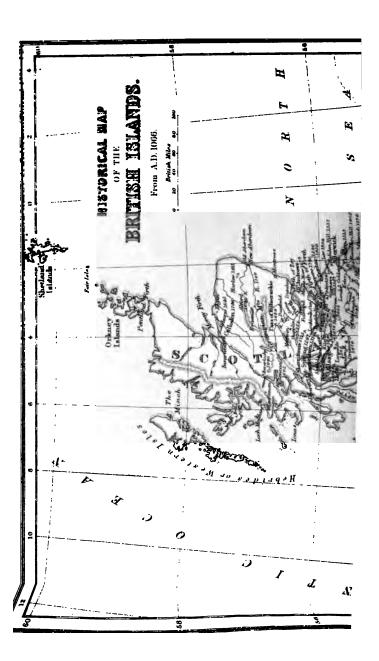
GENEALOGY OF THE HOUSES OF YORK AND LANCASTER.

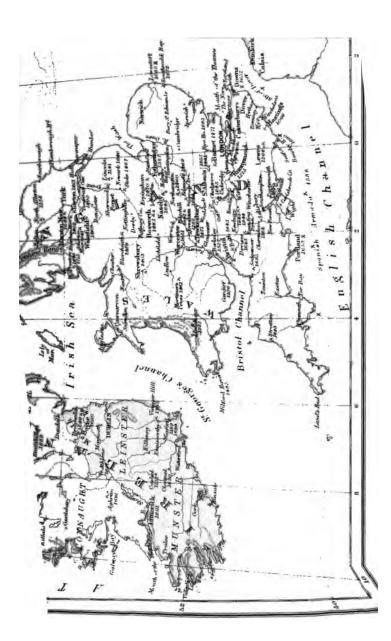


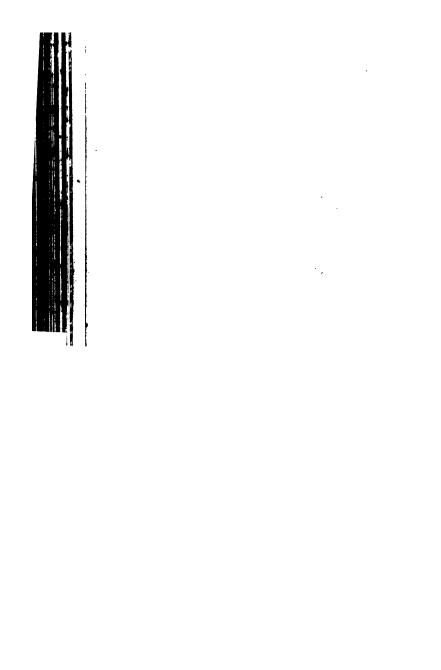




,







PART THIRD.

HOUSE OF TUDOR.

HENRY VIIb			1485,	died	1509.
HENRY VIII	,,	,,	1509,		
EDWARD VI	,,	,,	1547,		
MARY		,,	1553,		1558.
ELIZABETH	,,	,,	TODB,	"	1603.

CHAPTER L

HENRY VII.

Henry's Personal History—His Accession—Title to the Crown—Simnel's Insurrection—Perkin Warbeck—Two Royal Marriages—Henry's Avarioe and Death—General Facts.

Henry's Personal History.

HENRY VII., son of Edmund Tudor, Earl of Richmond, and Margaret, daughter of John, Duke of Somerset, was born at Pembroke, A.D. 1456. He married A.D. 1486. Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV. The sons of Henry were: Arthur, who died shortly after his marriage with the Princess Catherine of Spain, and Henry, who succeeded his father as Henry VIII. His daughters were Margaret, who married James IV. of Scotland, and Mary, who married Louis XII. of France, and after his death, Charles of Brandon, Duke of Suffolk.

Henry's Accession-Title to the Crown.

With the accession of Henry VII. to the throne of England, modern history may be said to commence. Several important changes which proved highly beneficial to the nation now began to take place. The destructive

wars of the Plantagenets were ended, and a more peaceful era opened, which continued, with little interruption, for a century and a half.

Henry's title to the throne was considered imperfect, in consequence of his descent from an excluded and illegitimate branch of the House of Lancaster. He therefore felt inclined to assert the right of conquest, but afterwards resolved to rest his claims on three grounds—right of descent, marriage, and conquest. It was chiefly, however, in consideration of the second of these, that Parliament agreed to confirm his claim.

Lambert Simnel.

After his marriage, Henry continued to exhibit great dislike to the friends of the House of York, and even to his own Queen he showed much coldness and indifference. Such conduct rendered his government unpopular, and led to a series of plots and insurrections which troubled him during a great part of his reign.

A formidable attempt against the government of Henry was made by an Oxford youth, named Lambert Simnel, who pretended to be the Earl of Warwick, son of the late Duke of Clarence. The youthful pretender went to Ireland, where all classes were strongly attached to the House of York, and, landing in Dublin. was introduced to the Irish as the Earl of Warwick, who had just escaped from the Tower. His story was readily believed, and his cause so warmly espoused by the Earl of Kildare and many of the nobility, that he was publicly proclaimed as Edward VI. The young impostor, not long after, collected an army, and, having been joined by Lord Lovell and others of the discontented party, set out for England, and landed in Lancashire. He advanced as far as Stoke, in Nottingham, where he was met by the King's forces, and after an obstinate engage-16th June, ment the rebels were totally defeated, and most of the leaders slain. Simnel was taken prisoner, and made a scullion in the royal kitchen, but was afterwards advanced to the office of falconer.

Henry learned from this insurrection not to wound the feelings of those who on principle were Yorkists; and to terminate the discontent caused by his coldness to his Yorkist Queen, he caused her, after she had been married about two years, to be crowned with great magnificence—from this period she was prominently brought forward on all occasions of ceremony.

Henry's Method of Raising Money—Perkin Warbeck's Insurrection.

Henry greatly offended his subjects by allowing Charles VIII. to lead an army into Brittany, for the purpose of uniting it to the French crown. Parliament repeatedly voted him supplies to carry on a war; but instead of fighting, he enriched his own treasury with the funds placed at his disposal. Compelled, at last, by public opinion, he crossed over to France, and made a pretence of besieging Boulogne; but the French king, knowing how eager he was to obtain money, concluded a treaty of peace at Estaples, by which it was agreed that Henry should receive £149,000, on condition of his withdrawing his forces. Henry returned, as Bacon remarks, "making profit upon his subjects for the war, and upon his enemies for the peace."

Henry's government was again disturbed by another pretender, who appeared in the person of a youth named Perkin Warbeck, son of a merchant of Tournay. He landed at Cork, and declared himself to be A.D. 1492. Richard, Duke of York. The people of Cork having taken up the cause of the young adventurer, he proceeded to France, and thence to Flanders, where he was received by Margaret, Duchess of Burgundy, who acknowledged him as her nephew, and called him the true "White Rose of England." For nearly three years he carried on a correspondence with the leaders of the discontented party in England; but his designs were discovered, and several of the English nobility, who supported him, were executed. Warbeck, having collected a number of foreign troops, set out for England, and en-

deavoured to effect a landing on the coast of Kent, but was repulsed with great loss; many of his followers were made prisoners, and afterwards executed by order of Henry. He next set sail for the south of Ireland, but finding the Irish unwilling to enlist in his service, he resolved to proceed to Scotland. James IV., the Scottish monarch, received him with marked respect, and as a proof of his sincerity gave him in marriage the lady Catherine Gordon, who was closely related to the royal family. James also assembled a numerous army on his behalf, crossed the border, and ravaged the northern counties, but could find no one willing to rally round his standard.

Another invasion of the Scots followed, but a treaty of A.D. 1502. peace having been concluded between the two countries, James retired from the contest and left Warbeck to his own resources. The pretender now retired to Ireland, and thence sailed to Cornwall, where three thousand of the discontented inhabitants flocked to his standard and proclaimed him as King Richard IV. He afterwards laid siege to Exeter, 1497, but on the approach of the royal troops his courage failed him: he deserted his followers and fled for refuge to the sanctuary at Beaulieu in Hampshire; on receiving a promise of pardon, he surrendered and was conveyed to London, where he lived in honourable captivity. Growing weary of restraint, he contrived to escape, but was captured and sentenced to be put in the stocks, first at Westminster, and afterwards in Cheapside. Having, at each place, made public confession of his imposture, he was committed to the Tower, where he became acquainted with the unfortunate Edward, Earl of Warwick, with whom he formed a plan of escape. The plot was discovered: A.D. 1499. Warbeck was hanged at Tyburn; and Warwick, the last male heir of the House of Plantagenet, was beheaded on Tower-hill.

Two Royal Marriages.

The insurrections were now over; but two other events, which afterwards led to important results, are here worthy

of notice. The one was the marriage of Arthur, the King's eldest son, a boy of fifteen, to Catherine, daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain. The union, however, was of short duration; in less than six months the young prince died; but Henry being unwilling to forfeit Catherine's marriage portion, agreed to marry the young widow to his second son, Henry, now heir-apparent to the throne. A dispensation from the Pope was obtained, and the parties were contracted to each other. The other event was the marriage of Henry's daughter, Margaret, A.D. 1502. to James IV., king of Scotland. This alliance established peace between the two countries, and ultimately led to the union of the two crowns. In the same year, Elizabeth, Henry's Queen, died. She was greatly esteemed by the nation, and her death was deeply regretted.

Henry's Avarice and Death.

Henry's ruling passion was love of money. His avarice was unbounded. He employed two lawyers, named Empson and Dudley, to extort money from his subjects. They kept spies and informants in every part of the country to "hunt up their victims." People were cast into prison on the most trivial charges, and in most cases they only regained their liberty by the payment of heavy fines. In this way the King contrived to amass a vast amount of treasure, and his unprincipled agents took care to reserve for themselves a considerable portion of the money which they extorted from their victims. On one occasion the King had been hospitably entertained by the Earl of Oxford. When taking his departure from the castle, he observed a large number of retainers wearing the livery of Oxford. The Earl informed him that they were there to do honour to his majesty. Henry reminded his host of a law which had recently been passed against keeping retainers, and the miserly King fined the generous Earl £10,000. Henry died at Richmond, and was A.D. 1509. afterwards buried in a splendid chapel he had built at Westminster Abbey. He left behind him £1,800,000, a sum nearly equal to sixteen millions of our money.

GENERAL FACTS.

In this reign commercial enterprise was greatly extended by the discovery of America by Christopher Columbus in 1492. In 1497, Sebastian Cabot, a Venetian, discovered Newfoundland, and afterwards a considerable portion of the American continent. In the same year, a Portuguese, named Vasco de Gama, doubled the Cape of Good Hope, and thus opened up a new passage to the East Indies. Maps and charts were, for the first time, brought to England by the brother of Columbus. The first war-ship, called the Great Harry, of a thousand tons burden, was built by Henry at a cost of fourteen thousand pounds. The old court of the King's Concilium Ordinarium, henceforth known as that of the Star Chamber, was remodelled by Act of Parliament, and became the ready instrument of arbitrary power in some of the subsequent reigns.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF HENRY VII.

A. D. 1485-A. D. 1509.

Henry VII., son of Edmund Tudor, Earl of Richmond, and Margaret, daughter of John, Duke of Somerset. Rorn at Pembroke, A.D. 1456. Married Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV. Died at Richmond, A.D. 1509. Reigned 24 years,

The Tudor Sovereigns took their name from Owen Tudor, a Welsh gentleman, who married Catherine, widow of Henry V. Henry VII. was descended from John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, but on his marriage with Elizabeth of York, the claims of the rival houses were united. His reign was troubled with a series of plots and insurrections. The first of these was formed by Lambert Simnel, who pretended to be Edward, Earl of Warwick, son of the Duke of Clarence. He first appeared in Ireland, and, having afterwards landed in England with an army, was defeated at Stoke, in Nottingham, A.D. 1487. The next was formed, A.D. 1492, by Perkin Warbeck, who claimed to be Richard, Duke of York, said to have been murdered in the Tower along with his brother, Edward V. James IV. of Scotland supported Warbeck, and invaded England on his behalt. The pretender

afterwards landed in Cornwall and laid siege to Exeter, but on the approach of the royal troops he surrendered, and was com-

mitted to the Tower. He was executed A.D. 1499.

The King's daughter, Margaret, was married to James IV. of Scotland, A.D. 1503. This alliance ultimately led to the union of England and Scotland. Henry died at his palace of Richmond, A.D. 1509. An important discovery, that of America, was made during this reign by Columbus, A.D. 1492.

QUESTIONS.

Henry's Personal History—His Accession—Title to the Crown-Simnel's Insurrection.

- Henry VII.
- 2. Why was Henry's title considered imperfect?
- 3. On what ground did Parliament confirm his title?
- 4. How were the houses of Lancaster and York united?
 - 5. Who was the first to attempt
- 1. Relate the personal history of the overthrow of Henry's government?
 - 6. Whom did he pretend to be?7. By whom was his cause espoused?
 - 8. Where did he encounter the royal
 - forces? 9. Give the date and result of the battle.
 - 10. What latterly became of Simnel?

Perkin Warbeck's Insurrection.

- 1. Who was the chief impostor in
- Henry's reign?

 2. What title did he assume?

 8. Who supported his claim?

 4. Where did he afterwards go?
- 5. By whom was he warmly received
- on the continent? 6. With whom did he carry on a scret correspondence?
- 7. Where did Warbeck attempt to land in England?
- 8. Who at this time was King of Scotland?
- 9. How did this monarch aid the pretender?
- 10. What was the result of his efforts?
 11. What took place in Cornwall?
 12. Relate what happened at Exc-
- 13. How was Warbeck afterwards treated?
 - 14. What was ultimately his fate?

Two Royal Marriages—Henry's Avarice and Death— General Facts.

- 1. Whom did Arthur, the king's eldest son, marry?
 2. How long did this union last?
- 3. To whom was Catherine afterwards espoused?
- 4. What marriage took place in 1502?
- 5. To what important result did it afterwards lead?

وياريو والمنافر والمنافرون المتحال والمتحال والم

- 6. What was Henry's greatest fault? 7. What means did he employ to raise money?
 - 8. Where and when did he die? 9. What important discoveries were
- made during this reign? 10. By whom? Give the dates.

CHAPTER IL

HENRY VIII.-1509-1547.

Henry's Personal History—His Accession—War in France and Scotland—Cardinal Wolsey—Charles V. and Francis I.—Field of the Cloth of Gold—The Reformation—Catherine Divorced—Wolsey's Fall and Death—Execution of Fisher and More—Suppression of Monasteries—Anne Boleyn Beheaded—Jane Seymore—Translation of the Bible—The Bloody Statute—Anne of Cleves—Catherine Howard—Catherine Parr—War with Scotland and France—Death of the King—General Facts.

Henry's Personal History.

Henry, second son of Henry VII., was born at Greenwich, A.D. 1491. He had six wives:—1, Catherine of Arragon, who was divorced; 2, Anne Boleyn, who was beheaded; 3, Jane Seymour, who died after giving birth to Edward; 4, Anne of Cleves, who was divorced; 5, Catherine Howard, who was beheaded; 6, Catherine Parr, who survived the King. Henry's children were:—Mary, by Catherine of Arragon; Elizabeth, by Anne Boleyn; and Edward, by Jane Seymour.

Henry's Accession—War in France and Scotland.

Henry came to the throne at the age of eighteen, and his accession was gladly welcomed by the whole nation. He was handsome in person, agreeable in manners, and cheerful in disposition. The first two years of his reign were spent in festivity and pleasure, so that the riches of his father were more quickly squandered than they had been accumulated. With the view of increasing his popularity, he yielded to the clamour of the people, by giving orders for the apprehension of Empson and Dudley, the two agents of his father's rapacity. They were accordingly arrested, committed to the Tower, and very soon after executed.

Henry had not been long seated on the throne when he became inflamed with a desire for military glory. He A.D. 1512. joined his father-in-law, Ferdinand of Spain, in a war against Louis XII. of France, but the enterprise proved a failure, and the army returned home greatly reduced by disease. In the following year he

again embarked for France at the head of 28,000 soldiers. He landed at Calais, and proceeded to Terouenne in Picardy, where he was joined by the Emperor Maximilian of Germany. They laid siege to the town, and Louis, advancing to its relief with a large body of cavalry, was met by a small number of English horse, and completely routed. This encounter was named the "Battle of Spurs," as the French retreated at full gallop, making more use of their spurs than their spears. Terouenne and Tournay both surrendered, after which Henry returned to England.

While these events were taking place on the continent, James IV. of Scotland led an army into England. He was met by the Earl of Surrey at Flodden field, where a battle was fought in which the Scots were signally defeated, with the loss of their King and the flower of their nobility. In the following year a peace was concluded with France. Louis married Mary, the sister of Henry, but the French King lived only three months after his marriage, and was succeeded by Francis I. Mary then married the Duke of Suffolk, her former lover.

Cardinal Wolsey.

Next to Henry, Cardinal Wolsey became the greatest man in the kingdom. He was born at Ipswich, and, as some say, was the son of a butcher or grazier; but though of humble origin, his talents were of so high an order that they did not fail to attract the notice of Henry VII. At the commencement of the present reign, Wolsey rapidly gained the favour of the young King. He complied with all his requests, shared in his pleasures, flattered his weakness, and in a short time became his special favourite. His promotion was rapid; Henry made him Archbishop of York, and Chancellor of the kingdom. Leo X. raised him to the dignity of a Cardinal, and afterwards appointed him to the high and important office of Papal Legate in England. For a number of years the affairs of the kingdom were left almost entirely in the hands of Wolsey. Henry was too fond of pleasure to devote much of his time to the interests of the country, and this feeling on the part of the King served to gratify the ambition of the Cardinal. He was fond of display, and his manner of life was princely. His train consisted of eight hundred persons, many of whom were gentlemen of rank and distinction. His furniture was of the most costly description; and not only his dress, but even the saddles and trappings of his horses were ornamented with gold and silver. All this pleased the vanity of the King, and for a time at least gratified the people.

Charles V. and Francis I.—Field of the Cloth of Gold.

On the death of Maximilian, Emperor of Germany, in 1519, Charles V. of Spain, and Francis I. of France, became competitors for the imperial crown. The former succeeded in obtaining possession of the throne, and a feeling of jealously immediately broke out between the two rivals. To provide against impending hostilities, both parties solicited the friendship of Henry and of his powerful minister, Wolsey. Francis invited the English King to a friendly meeting in the neighbourhood of Guisnes, a small town not far from Calais, but just as he was about to take his departure, Charles landed in England, and A.D. 1520. spent a few days with the King at Canterbury, after which Henry passed over to Calais. Vast sums of money were spent in tournaments, balls, banquets,



HENRY'S TENT.

and an almost endless variety of amusements. So great was the splendour, and so costly were the entertainments at this royal gathering, that the place of meeting was

called the "Field of the Cloth of Gold." At the end of fourteen days the two sovereigns separated without accomplishing any important object. After taking leave of Francis, Henry visited Charles at Calais, and then returned home. It was not long before hostilities broke out between the two rival monarchs, and Henry having failed to effect a reconciliation, embraced the A.D. 1522. cause of the Emperor, and declared war against Francis.

The Reformation.

The most memorable event in the reign of Henry VIII. was the Reformation, by which is meant the great religious change of the 16th century, which ended in the separation of Germany and other parts of Europe from the Church of Rome. The writings of Wycliffe, two centuries before, were directed to this end, and although they accomplished much, the times were by no means favourable to the rapid diffusion of knowledge. About the close of the previous century, the revival of learning had commenced. art of printing had been introduced, and gradually the means of information became greatly extended, so that everything seemed to point in the direction of a great religious change which was soon to take place. At this important crisis, Martin Luther, professor of philosophy in the University of Wittemberg, began the Reformation in Germany.

The part taken by the King in the movement was more political than religious, and the same may be said of the majority of the people, who did not disagree so much with the doctrines taught by the Church of Rome, as with the power which it exercised. The preaching of Luther, however, caused the reformed doctrines to spread rapidly throughout Germany; but in England, Henry at first endeavoured to check their progress, and even wrote a book in defence of the Catholic religion. He dedicated the book to Pope Leo X., who rewarded the royal author with the title of "Defender of the Faith." The A.D. 1521. Reformers did not adopt a uniform system of teaching, but it differed from that of Rome on the nature

and number of the sacraments, and on the obligations and duties of the clergy. Having entered their *protest* against a decree of Charles V. and the Diet of Spires, the reformers took the name of Protestants (a.D. 1529), whilst those who adhered to the Pope called themselves Catholics.

Queen Catherine Divorced—Wolsey's Fall and Death.

Henry had been married to Catherine eighteen years, and out of a numerous family only one child, the Princess Mary, now survived. The King professed to regard this calamity as a judgment sent upon him for having married his brother's widow, and he now became anxious to have the union dissolved, in order, as some suppose, that he might marry Anne Boleyn, one of Catherine's maids of honour. He applied to Pope Clement VII. for a divorce; but his Holiness was well aware if he vielded to Henry's request, he would give offence to the Emperor Charles V., who was Catherine's nephew, and a firm supporter of the Catholic faith. In these circumstances, and after much hesitation and delay, the King was advised by Thomas Cranmer to have the matter submitted to the universities of Europe. The result of this appeal was favourable to the cause of Henry, and Cranmer, with whom the idea originated, soon became Archbishop of Canterbury. Meanwhile, Henry had been secretly married to Anne Boleyn, and the newly anpointed primate, having declared his marriage with Catherine unlawful, confirmed the union which had already been formed between him and Anne. divorced Queen died three years afterwards at Kimbolton, and was buried in Peterborough Abbey.

In the affair of the divorce, Wolsey tried to play a double game. At first he favoured Henry, afterwards he sided with the Pope. In acting thus he brought upon himself his own ruin. The chancellorship was taken from him, and given to Sir Thomas More; he was dismissed from court, deprived of all his valuable property, and compelled to leave his palace at York Place, now known as Whitehall. He was afterwards permitted to retain

the see of York, but in a few months he was arrested on a charge of treason, and on his journey to London for trial, he took suddenly ill, and with difficulty reached Leicester, where he died. Shortly A.D. 1530. before his death, he gave utterance to these memorable words:—"If I had served my God as diligently as I have served my King, he would not have given me over in my grey hairs."

Henry, acting on the advice of Thomas Cromwell, had already renounced allegiance to the Papal see, and an Act was passed, called the "Act of Supremacy," which confirmed Henry's title as supreme head of the Church of England in all temporal matters, and entirely abolished the authority of the Pope in this

country.

Execution of Fisher and More—Suppression of Monasteries.

Henry's new title of Head of the Church rendered him independent of Pope and prelate; and all who denied his supremacy were held guilty of high treason. Among others who refused to admit this claim were Fisher, the venerable Bishop of Rochester, and Sir Thomas More, the late Chancellor, both of whom were condemned and executed.

Henry, with the consent of Parliament, next adopted measures for the suppression of all the monasteries and religious houses in England. A commission was appointed, at the head of which was Thomas Cromwell, Earl of Essex, to inquire into the state of these establishments; and in the course of visitation it was found that many of them were the scenes of vice, ignorance, and superstition. The result was, that nearly four hundred of the smaller ones were suppressed, and their entire revenues forfeited to the crown. Three years later, the larger ones, amounting to upwards of one thousand, shared a similar fate.

Anne Boleyn Beheaded—Jane Seymour—Translation of the Bible—The Bloody Statute.

Henry had only been married to Anne Boleyn about three years when he desired to get quit of her. She was

convicted, on very imperfect evidence, of being unfaithful to the King, and after a short imprisonment the unfortunate Queen died on the scaffold, leaving behind her one daughter, Elizabeth, born A.D. 1533. The day after her death, Henry married Jane Seymour, one of the maids of honour, but she died the following year, shortly after the birth of her son Edward.



DIBLE CHAINED AT THE PORCH OF A CHURCH.

The first authorised English version of the Bible, published by Myles Coverdale, was by A.D. 1538. order the King. the chained to reading desk of every parish church throughout kingdom, so that all had the opportunity of becoming acquainted the sacred volume. Although the abolition of the monasteries, and the privilege of reading the scripturesprepared the way for the

final triumph of the doctrines of the Reformation, the King still continued a believer in the Roman faith. caused his Parliament to pass an Act, called the "Six Articles," which affirmed the doctrine of transubstantiation, and other cardinal points of the Catholic creed. Those who disbelieved the "Articles" were either beheaded or committed to the flames, and from the numbers who thus suffered, the enactment was named the Bloody Statute,

Anne of Cleves—Catherine Howard—Catherine Parr— Death of Henry.

The King was persuaded by Thomas Cromwell, his chief minister, to take for his fourth wife Anne, daughter of the Duke of Cleves. Henry, who had never seen this lady, was so much displeased with her person and manners when she arrived in England, that he could scarcely be persuaded to consent to the union, but ultimately the nuptial knot was tied. In a few months a separation took place, on the ground that he had married against his will, and Cromwell, who had recommended the marriage, lost the King's favour, and was beheaded. Anne received a pension of three thousand pounds a year, and retired to Richmond Palace, where she resided till her death.

On the same day that Cromwell was beheaded, Henry married his fifth wife, Catherine Howard, niece of the Duke of Norfolk. This alliance pleased the Catholics, but in a short time it was discovered that Catherine had led an irregular life previous to marriage. She was brought to trial, and at last suffered the same unhappy fate as Anne Boleyn.

Henry's sixth and last wife was Catherine Parr, widow of Lord Latimer. This lady was virtuous and discreet, and was fortunate enough to survive the King. Being warmly attached to the Protestant cause, she took care to educate Prince Edward and his sister Elizabeth in the

doctrines of the reformed religion.

War with Scotland and France.

Towards the close of his reign, Henry engaged in a war with Scotland, which so affected the Scottish monarch, James V., that he died of a broken heart, leaving behind him an infant daughter, afterwards known as Mary, Queen of Scots. The war was continued by Henry in order to compel the Scots to marry their infant princess to his son Edward. The French aided the Scots in their opposition to Henry, who, in revenge, made war on France, and took Boulogne, The war

was brought to a close by a treaty of peace entered into a.D. 1550. between England and France, by which Boulogne was given back to the French monarch for 400,000 crowns.

The last who fell a victim to Henry's tyranny was the Earl of Surrey; his father, the Duke of Norfolk, only escaped a similar fate by the death of the King the night

preceding the day fixed for the execution.

In his later years Henry laboured under a complication of disorders, and his temper, which was naturally irritable, now became quite ferocious. He was a terror to all around him, and for a time no one had courage to inform him that his end was fast approaching. His last A.D. 1547. words were, "All is lost." He died at Westminster, and was buried in the royal vault at Windsor.

GENERAL FACTS.

In this reign, Wales was incorporated with England, and sent representatives to Parliament. The pound was first called a sovereign. Our common vegetables—cabbages, carrots, turnips, celery, lettuces—were brought from Holland and Flanders. Pins were introduced from France by Catherine Howard. Parish registers of births, deaths, and marriages, were established. Henry was the first to assume the title of *King* of Ireland, former sovereigns having been styled *Lord* of Ireland.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF HENRY VIII.

A.D. 1509.-A.D. 1547.

Henry VIII., second son of Henry VII. Born at Greenwich, A.D. 1491.
Married, 1. Catherine of Arragon, whom he divorced; 2. Anne Boleyn,
who was beheaded; 3. Jane Seymour, who died, A.D. 1537; 4. Anne of
Cleves, who was divorced; 5. Catherine Howard, who was beheaded.
Catherine Parr, who survived him. Died at Westminster, A.D. 1547.
Reigned 38 years.

Henry at once joined his father-in-law Ferdinand of Spain in a war against France. The English won the battle of Spurs, A.D. 1513, and in the same year, James IV. of Scotland was defeated and slain at Flodden.

For several years Henry's prime minister was Thomas Wolsey. who, in 1514, became Archbishop of York, and afterwards Chancellor of the kingdom. He was raised by Leo. X. to the dignity of a cardinal, and in 1518 was appointed Papal Legate in England.

Henry at first sided with the Pope, and wrote a book against the Reformation, for which he received the title of Defender Henry sought to be divorced from of the Faith, A.D. 1520. Catherine, but the Pope and Wolsey resisted. The King and the Pope were now no longer friends; Wolsey was deprived of the Great Seal, and in 1530 was arrested at York on a charge of high treason. He died at Leicester Abbey.

After the fall of Wolsey, Thomas Cranmer and Thomas Cromwell became the chief advisers of the King. The Act of Supremacy confirmed Henry's title as Head of the Church of England, and abolished the authority of the Pope in this country, A.D. 1534. Other events of importance during this reign were the suppression of the monasteries and the enactment of the

Bloody Statute or the Six Articles, A.D. 1539.

Henry met Francis I. of France, the rival of Charles V. of Spain for the imperial crown of Germany, at the "Field of the Cloth of Gold," A.D. 1520. Having failed to effect a reconciliation between the two competitors, the English monarch embraced the cause of Charles and declared war against Francis, A.D. 1522. Henry died at Whitehall, and was buried at Windsor, A.D. 1547.

QUESTIONS.

Henry's Personal History-His Accession-War in France and Scotland.

1. Relate the personal history of Henry VIII. 2. How old was he when he ascended

the throne? 3. How did he spend the first two

years of his reign? 4. Who were Empson and Dudley?

What was their fate?

5. Whom did Henry join in a war against France?

6. What was the result of the enterprise?

7. When did he again embark for France?

8. Relate the events which followed.

Cardinal Wolsey-Charles V. and Francis I.-Field of the Cloth of Gold.

- 1. Where was Wolsey born? Date.
- 2. How did he gain the favour of the solicit? King?
 3. What honours were conferred upon
- 4. Describe the manner of his life.
- 5. Who became competitors for the imperial crown of Germany?
- Whose friendship did both parties
- 7. Where did Francis invite the English King to meet him?
- 8. What name was afterwards given to the place of meeting? Why?
- 9. State the result of the interview between Henry and the two rivals.

The Reformation - Queen Catherine Divorced - Wolsey's Fall and Death.

- 1. What is meant by the Reformatwn:
- 2 Whose writings tended to accomgalanh thise?
- 3. What more recent events hastened it on !
- 4. Who began the Reformation in Germany? Inte.
- 5. What part did Henry at first take in the movement?
- 6. What title was in consequence conferred upon him? By whom?
- 7. How did the teaching of the Reformers differ from that of Home? 8. Explain the origin of the name Protestante.

- 9. What reason is satigned for Henry Wishing to divorce Catherine?
- 10. Whom did he wish to marry? 11. Why did the Pope not comply
- with the request of the King?
 12. What advice did Cranmer give to
- Henry? 13. State the result.
- 14. What became of Queen Catherine? 15. How did Wolsey act in regard to the divorce?
- 16. To what consequences did this lead?
- 17. Where and when did Wolsey die? 13. What was the Act of Supremacy? Date.

Execution of Fisher and More-Suppression of Monasteries -Anne Boleyn Beheaded-Jane Seymour-Translation of the Bible-The Bloody Statute.

- of Bishop Fisher and Sir Thomas More. with regard to the Bible?
- for the suppremion of monasteries?
- Of Jane Seymout?
- 1. State the reason for the execution: 5. What order was given by the King
- 2. What measures did Henry employ
 of the suppression of monasteries?
 3. What was the result of the inquiry?
 4. What was the fate of Anne Boleyn?
 wards get? Why?

Anne of Cleves-Catherine Howard-Catherine Parr-Death of Henry-General Pacts.

- 1. Who was Henry's fourth wife? 2. Why were they afterwards seps- Prince Edward and Elizabeth? rated?
 - 3. Whom did the King next marry?
 4. What was her fate?
- 5. When did Henry take for his sixth die?
- and last wife?
 - 6. What was her character?
- 7. How did she show her interest in
- 8, Who was the last of Henry's victims?
- 9. Where and when did the King
- 10. What general facts are recorded in this reign?



CHAPTER III.

EDWARD VI.—1547-1553.

Birth of Edward—The Regency—War with Scotland—Progress of the Reformation in England—Fall of Somerset—Northumberland's Administration—Death of the King—General Facts.

Birth of Edward-The Regency-War with Scotland.

EDWARD, only son of Henry VIII., by Jane Seymour, was born at Hampton Court, A.D. 1537. He was in his tenth year when he ascended the throne. The Earl of Hertford, uncle of the King, was appointed Protector, and according to the will of Henry VIII. was soon after created Duke of Somerset. The late King also directed that a marriage should take place between Edward and Mary, the young Queen of Scots. Somerset now attempted to carry out the project, but the Scottish Parliament would not agree to the match. The Protector then invaded Scotland, and defeated the Scots at Pinkie near Musselburgh, after which the young Queen was sent to France, where she married the Dauphin, afterwards Francis II.

Progress of the Reformation in England.

The short reign of Edward is chiefly interesting on account of the establishment of the Protestant religion in England. The King and the Protector were equally attached to the doctrines of the Reformation, and the other members of the Government were, with a few exceptions, Protestants. When Parliament met, it repealed the "Bloody Statute," and the other penal measures passed in the former reign against the Lollards. The Latin mass was prohibited, and a Liturgy, or Book of Common Prayer, in nearly its present form, was drawn up by a committee A.D. 1549. of bishops and divines, amongst whom were Cranmer and Ridley. These measures met with much opposition from Gardiner, bishop of Winchester, Bonner, bishop of London, and other prelates, all of whom were

deprived of their offices, and committed to custody, but regained their liberty on the death of the King.

Fall of Somerset.

The Protector's younger brother had been raised to the peerage, and appointed High Admiral, under the title of Lord Seymour. He married Catherine Parr, widow of the late King, and that lady dying soon after, he solicited the hand of the Princess Elizabeth. The admiral had long cherished a secret jealousy of his brother's power, which he now endeavoured to overthrow. design became apparent, he was committed to the Tower, and afterwards beheaded. The warrant for his execution was signed by the Protector. Somerset's own fall was not far distant. The execution of his brother excited a general feeling of hatred against him, and his desire to sympathise with the complaints of the people alienated the nobility, who now sought his ruin. His popularity was over. Arrogance and ambition had regulated his He built for himself a splendid palace in conduct. London, and the building which now occupies its site is still known by the name of Somerset House. To obtain suitable space and materials for its erection, he demolished a number of churches and the mansions of several bishops, as well as other religious edifices. His great rival and chief enemy was Dudley, Earl of Warwick, son of the detested agent of Henry VII., who, along with several other members of the Council, procured his confinement in the Tower, on the charge of arbitrary conduct, and violation of the laws. Warwick now became chief of the Government. Soon after, however, Somerset was permitted to resume his seat in the Council, and an apparent reconciliation was effected between him and Warwick, but two years had scarcely passed away when the unfortunate Protector was executed on Tower-hill, on a charge of conspiring against his rival, now Duke of Northumberland, and other members of the Government. Somerset had been long a favourite of the people, and many of those who still

loved him gathered round the scaffold to dip their handkerchiefs in his blood, that they might preserve them in remembrance of one whom they regarded as their friend and benefactor.

Northumberland's Administration—Death of the King.

The Duke of Northumberland ruled the kingdom with absolute authority. In 1553, the King's health began to give way, and it soon became evident that his life would not be long spared. Northumberland took advantage of this to gratify his own ambition. His great aim was to secure the crown for his family, by marrying his son, Lord Guildford Dudley, to Lady Jane Grey, great-grand-daughter of Henry VII. He urged the King to set aside the claims of his sisters, Mary and Elizabeth, and bequeath the crown to Lady Jane. Edward yielded, and a deed was drawn up and signed by the King, settling the succession on Jane. Shortly after, Edward died at Greenwich, at the early age of sixteen. His reign lasted only six years.

GENERAL FACTS.

During this reign Lords Lieutenant of counties were first appointed. Cranmer and other bishops drew up Forty-two Articles of Religion, from which the present Thirty-nine Articles of the Church of England were taken in the reign of Elizabeth. The Book of Psalms was turned into verse. Shortly before his death, Edward founded Christ's Hospital for the education of the poor; also St. Thomas's for the relief of the destitute sick, since the monasteries no longer existed to supply their wants.



SUMMARY OF REIGN OF EDWARD VL

A.D. 1547.—A.D 1553.

Edward VI., son of Henry VIII. and Jane Seymour. Born at Hampton Court, A.D. 1537. Died at Greenwich, A.D. 1553. Reigned 6 years.

Edward being only ten years of age when he ascended the throne, his uncle, the Duke of Somerset, was appointed Protector. The Scots were defeated at Pinkie, A.D. 1547. Parliament repealed the "Bloody Statute," and the Church of England was established on a firmer basis by Somerset, who afterwards, however, became unpopular, and was executed on Tower-hill. A.D. 1552.

Somerset's rival, Dudley, Earl of Warwick, now became Duke of Northumberland. His aim was to persuade the King to exclude Mary and Elizabeth from the succession, and to settle the crown on his cousin Lady Jane Grey. To this Edward consented, and Northumberland, in the hope of securing the crown for his family, gave his fourth son, Lord Guildford Dudley, in marriage to Lady Jane. Edward died shortly after at the age of sixteen.

QUESTIONS.

The Regency-War with Scotland-Progress of the Reformation in England.

- 1. How old was Edward when he ascended the throne?
- Who was appointed Protector?
 Whom did Henry VIII, wish his
- son Edward to marry
 - 4. Who were opposed to this?
- 5. State what followed. 6. For what is Edward's reign chiefly
- interesting? 7. What steps did Parliament take to accomplish this?
 - 8. Who opposed such measures?

Fall of Somerset - Northumberland's Administration -Death of the King-General Facts..

- 1. What appointment was conferred | upon the Protector's younger brother?
- 2. Whom did he marry? 3. What secret design had he long
- cherished? 4. What was his fate? 5. Who signed the warrant for his
- execution? 6. Whose favour did the Protector
- now lose? 7. What building still bears his name?
- 8. Who was his great rival?
- 9. Relate what took place between them.
 10. When and where was Somerset
- 11. What object had Northumberland
- in view?
- 12. What did he do in order to gain this object?
- 13. State the general facts recorded in this reign.

CHAPTER IV.

MARY. - 1553-1558.

Mary's Personal History—Accession and Deposition of Lady Jane Grey— Execution of Northumberland—Catholic Religion Restored—Insurrections—Execution of Lady Jane—The Marian Persecution—Loss of Calais—Death of Mary.

Mary's Personal History.

MARY, eldest daughter of Henry VIII., by Catherine of Arragon, was born at Greenwich, A.D. 1516. She married Philip II. of Spain, son of the Emperor Charles V., but had no family.

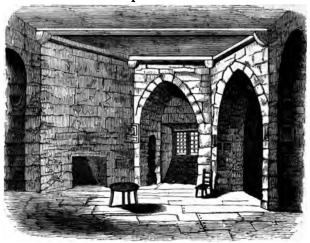
Accession and Deposition of Lady Jane—Execution of Northumberland.

Lady Jane was proclaimed Queen by Northumberland, but her accession met with no hearty response from the people, and in ten days her reign was at an end. Mary's title to the throne was almost universally acknowledged; she entered London in triumph, attended by Elizabeth and Anne of Cleves, and, proceeding to the Tower, she set at liberty Bishop Gardiner, the Duke of Norfolk, and other Catholic leaders. Northumberland was arrested and sent to the Tower, along with Lady Jane, her husband, and father. The Duke was at once brought to the block, along with two of his associates; Suffolk regained his freedom, and although sentence of death was passed on Jane and Guildford Dudley, it was nearly six months before it was carried into execution.

Catholic Religion Restored—Insurrections—Execution of Lady Jane Grey.

Mary, being sincerely attached to the Church of Rome, was zealous in her efforts to re-establish the Catholic religion in England. Much discontent prevailed in the country in consequence of the extreme policy adopted by the reforming statesmen of the previous reign, so much so that it was obvious the nation was not thoroughly Protestant at heart. Cranmer, Latimer, Hooper, Ridley, and many others, who had embraced the reformed doctrines, were committed to the Tower.

The religious statutes passed in the preceding reign were repealed, and all matters relating to the religion of the country were placed in the same position in which they stood at the close of the reign of Henry VIII. Divine worship was conducted according to the forms prescribed by the Catholic Church. The mass was restored; the Latin litany was read in churches; the crucifix was re placed; the confessional and all the other parts of Roman ritual were revived. Persecution now threatened the Protestants, many of whom fled to the Continent, and several bishops who refused to conform to the Catholic faith were thrown into prison.



STATE PRISON IN THE TOWER OF LONDON.

It was the wish of the people that Mary should marry some English nobleman, but when it became known that she was to take for her husband, Philip of Spain, every one disapproved of the match, for fear lest England should ultimately become a province of Spain. Insurrections immediately followed. The most formidable was that headed by Sir Thomas Wyatt, who advanced to London,

but on reaching the city many of his followers deserted him, and he was seized and sent to the Tower. After this rebellion had been suppressed, Mary became alarmed, and signed the warrant for the execution of Lady Jane Grey and her husband. Both suffered the same day; Dudley first, and the beautiful and innocent Jane almost immediately after. Her father, the Duke of Suffolk, Wyatt, and many others, also perished on the scaffold.

Persecution of the Protestants—Loss of Calais— Death of Mary.

Cardinal Pole, one of the Queen's relatives, was appointed the Pope's Legate. He arrived in England not long after Mary's marriage with Philip, and urged both Houses of Parliament to embrace the Catholic faith. They complied with his exhortation, and the kingdom, having received absolution, was solemnly restored to the communion of the Church of Rome. Toleration in matters of religion was at this time seldom practised by any party, and the Catholics, acting on this principle, re-enacted the old laws against heretics, and that terrible system of persecution commenced, which continued with little interruption till the death of Mary. The first to suffer was Rogers, a canon of St. Paul's, who was burnt at Smithfield. Hooper met a similar fate in sight of his own cathedral at Gloucester. Of those who suffered martyrdom in this reign for their religious opinions the most distinguished were Ridley, Latimer, and Cranmer. The first two perished together in the flames at Oxford. When the executioners were engaged in setting fire to the materials which were to consume the victims. Latimer addressed his fellow-sufferer in these memorable words:--"Be of good cheer, Master Ridley, we shall this day light such a candle, by God's grace, in England, as I trust, shall never be put out." Latimer's sufferings were soon over, but the torture which Ridley endured was dreadful and long-continued. Cranmer, who had been kept for a long time in confine-

ment, was at length brought to the stake. When in A.D. 1556. prison his courage failed him. Induced by a promise of pardon, he signed a recantation of his religious principles; but this unguarded act was amply at oned for at the stake. With deep contrition he repented of the error which human frailty had led him to commit. He declared that the hand which had signed the paper, should be first consumed, and as the flames arose he held out his right hand, exclaiming, "This hand hath offended:" "this unworthy hand." He seemed insensible to pain, and the expression of his countenance was tranquil to the last. These cruelties were perpetrated at the instance of Gardiner and Bonner, but the Queen, in having sanctioned such violent measures, must also be regarded as a sharer in their guilt. During the four years that the persecution lasted, there is abundant evidence to show that at Mary's death the country was more thoroughly Protestant than it was when she ascended the throne.

Philip never felt at home in England. He disliked the country, and the conduct of his Queen rendered him still more uncomfortable. In less than a year he took his departure, and shortly after, by the resignation of his father, became King of Spain, under the title of Philip II. About two years afterwards he made a short visit to London to urge Mary to declare war against France. Anxious to gratify her husband, she induced the Government to comply with his request, and an army of ten thousand was sent to join the Spaniards. allies gained the battle of St. Quentin, but this victory was dearly purchased when compared with the loss which the English afterwards sustained. Duke of Guise laid siege to Calais, and in eight days this important place passed from the hands of the English, after it had been in their possession for 211 years. Mary was on her deathbed when the news of this disaster reached her; she was much affected, and declared that at her death the word "Calais" would be found engraven upon her heart. She died soon afterwards, and was buried in Westminster Abbey.

In those days many Protestants and Catholics suffered on account of their religious opinions, and the memory of such men as laid down their lives for what they considered to be the cause of truth, is worthy of being held in grateful remembrance, no matter to what religion they belonged, whether Catholic or Protestant.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF MARY.

A.D. 1553,-A.D. 1558.

Mary, daughter of Henry VIII. and Catherine of Arragon. Born at Greenwich, A.D. 1516. Married Philip, afterwards Philip II. of Spain, son of the Emperor Charles V. of Germany. Died at St. James's, Westminster, A.D. 1558. Reigned 5 years.

Lady Jane Grey was proclaimed Queen, but her reign lasted only ten days. She was imprisoned along with her husband, Lord Guildford Dudley, and afterwards executed. The leaders of the reformed doctrines were committed to the Tower. Catholic religion was re-established, and the country restored to the communion of the Church of Rome, A.D. 1553.

A terrible persecution of the Protestants, which lasted four years, began A.D. 1555. Of those who suffered, the most distinguished were Ridley, Latimer, and Cranmer. Philip involved England in a war with France. The French took Calais, A.D. 1558, after having been in possession of the English for 211 years. In the same year Mary died at the age of forty-two.

QUESTIONS.

Mary's Personal History-Accession and Deposition of Lady Jane Grey-Catholic Religion Restored-Insurrections-Persecution of the Protestants-Loss of Calais-Death

1. Relate the personal history of;

Mary. 2. By whom was Lady Jane proclaimed Queen?

8. How long did her reign last? 4. What were the first acts of Mary

on her accession? 5. What means were adopted to re-

establish the Catholic religion in

England?
6. Whom did Mary marry?
7. Why was the marriage disapproved of? What followed? 8. Which was the most formidable

insurrection? 9. What executions followed the sup-

pression of this rebellion?

10. Who was appointed the Pope's Legate in England?

11. What did he urge upon both Houses of Parliament? What followed? 12. Give an account of the persecution

of the Protestants during this reign. 13. At whose instance were such

cruelties perpetrated? 14. How long did Philip remain in England?

15. For what purpose did Philip afterwards visit London? What was the result?

16. What loss did the English sustain in the war which followed? Give the date.

17. How was Mary affected when the news of this dissater reached her?

CHAPTER V.

ELIZABETH.—1558-1603.

Elizabeth's Birth and Accession—Protestantism Re-established—Mary Stuart—
Elizabeth Refuses to Marry—The Puritans—The Spanish Armada—War
with Spain—Disturbances in Ireland—Execution of the Earl of Essex—
Death of Elizabeth—General Facts.

Elizabeth's Birth and Accession — Protestantism Reestablished.

MARY was succeeded by her half-sister, Elizabeth, daughter of Henry VIII. by Anne Boleyn. She was born at Greenwich, A.D. 1533. Her accession was hailed with delight by almost all classes of the nation.

Elizabeth retained in office the principal Catholic members of the late Government, as well as others who were known to be favourable to the doctrines of the Reformation. Of all her advisers, there was none in whom she placed greater confidence than Sir William Cecil, afterwards Lord Burleigh, who for forty eventful years ably discharged the duties of first minister of the crown. Much of the success which attended her government is in a great measure to be attributed to the sound judgment of this faithful counsellor. When Parliament met it confirmed Elizabeth's title, and declared her the supreme Governor of the Church. The laws relating to religion were again placed on a Protestant basis; the Mass was abolished; the Book of Common Prayer, with some alterations, was restored, and in a short time England renounced for ever all allegiance to A.D. 1559. Rome, and Protestantism henceforth constituted the religion of the country.

Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots.

This unfortunate Queen, when six years of age, was sent to France, and, in A.D. 1588, was married to the Dauphin, who afterwards became King under the title of Francis II. A few months after her marriage, Elizabeth ascended the throne, but Mary, claiming to be heir to the English crown, assumed the title of Queen of England

and Scotland. From this time she was regarded by Elizabeth as her determined enemy. On the death of Francis, A.D. 1560, Mary returned to Scotland, but, being a zealous Catholic, she did not gain the confidence of her Protestant subjects. They accused her of a number of dreadful crimes, and at length imprisoned her in Lochleven Castle, where she was compelled to resign her crown in favour of her infant son, James VI., whose father, Lord Darnley, had been murdered. petrator of the murder was the Earl of Bothwell: but the Queen herself was suspected of being accessory to the crime. Having escaped from her captivity, Mary fled to England to seek the protection of Elizabeth, who, however, refused to grant her an interview till she had cleared herself of the suspicion of being concerned in the murder of Darnley. Numerous conspiracies now began to be formed to deprive Elizabeth of her crown, and place Mary on the throne of England. The one which ultimately decided Mary's fate was designed by Anthony Babington, and several other young Catholic gentlemen. It was formed in France; but Mary was accused of being a party to the plot, and Elizabeth, after some apparent hesitation, resolved to bring her to trial. She was removed to Fotheringay Castle, where she was tried before thirty-six commissioners on a charge of treason. Having been found guilty, the unfortunate Mary Stuart was condemned and beheaded in the great hall of the castle, Feb. 8, A.D. 1587.

Elizabeth Refuses to Marry—The Puritans.

Philip II. of Spain solicited the hand of Elizabeth in marriage, but his proposal was rejected. Other princes made similar offers, but with no better success. To her favourite, Leicester, she addressed the following words: "I will have here but one mistress, and no master." Elizabeth kept her promise—she lived and died a maiden queen.

During the reign of Mary many Protestants had fled to Switzerland and other parts of the Continent, where

ĕ

they imbibed the religious tenets of Calvin and others of the more rigid reformers. They took the name of Puritans, because they desired a purer and simpler form of worship than that now established in England. They objected to the use of the ring in marriage, the sign of the Cross in baptism, the government of the Church by bishops, and the dresses of the clergy. For a time they were permitted to hold such opinions without molestation. but at length a rigid compliance with the rites and ceremonies of the National Church was enforced, and the clergy who refused to submit were deprived of their livings. The Puritans, or, as they were sometimes called, Nonconformists, were henceforth exposed to harsh and cruel treatment. They were fined, imprisoned, and exiled for being faithful to the dictates of their conscience in matters connected with religion. Such severities, however, only tended to strengthen their religious convictions. Their opinions spread, their numbers increased, and before the reign of Elizabeth was ended, the Nonconformists formed a powerful and influential party in the House of Commons.

The Spanish Armada, A.D. 1588.

Philip II, of Spain had long resolved on an invasion of England. He desired the overthrow of Elizabeth, and the extinction of the Protestant religion. An immense armament was accordingly prepared, consisting of 130 vessels of prodigious size, having on board twenty thousand soldiers, besides several thousands of marines. The Spaniards styled it the "Invincible Armada," and all Europe declared that England's destruction was at hand, The command of the fleet was first entrusted to Santa Cruz, but on his death to the Duke of Medina Sidonia. who had no experience as a seaman. The English vessels were small in comparison, but they were manned by brave and skilful seamen. Lord Howard of Effingham, a Catholic, was appointed commander, and under him served Drake, Hawkins, Frobisher, and Raleigh-the most renowned navigators of that age.

The Spanish squadron sailed from Lisbon, and came in sight of the English fleet off Plymouth. It was drawn up in the form of a half-moon, A.D. 1588. about seven miles in extent, but the immense size of the ships rendered them somewhat unmanageable. The English admiral took advantage of this, and by various dexterous movements caused much damage to the unwieldy hulks of the enemy. With great difficulty the Spaniards arrived off Calais, where they cast anchor. Here they expected to be joined by a number of land forces under the command of the Duke of Parma. This junction, however, was prevented by Howard, who sent a number of fire-ships amongst the enemy's vessels. The Spaniards were panic-struck; they cut their cables, and in great confusion and alarm put out to sea. They were chased by the English; and the Spanish commander, seeing that further resistance was in vain, resolved to abandon the conflict and return home with all possible speed. To add to their dismay a great storm arose which dispersed and shattered many of their ships, and only a few, by sailing round Scotland, found their way back to the country from which they had so lately sailed, in the proud but vain attempt to subjugate England. The navy of Spain now sank into comparative insignificance, and Britannia has ever since continued to rule the waves. When Philip was informed of the destruction of his fleet, he exclaimed, "I sent it to combat the English, not the elements. God be praised the calamity is not greater!" Elizabeth's medal, struck to commemorate the victory, bore the inscription, "Flavit Jehovah, et dissipati sunt,"-"Jehovah blew, and they were scattered."

War with Spain—Disturbances in Ireland—Execution of the Earl of Essex—Death of Elizabeth.

The war was afterwards carried on by Elizabeth, in conjunction with Henry IV. of France, against the Spaniards. Various expeditions were sent to attack the dominions of Philip; but the most celebrated was that

directed against Cadis, under Lord Howard. The young Earl of Essex, a special favourite of the Queen, was appointed to command the troops. After a successful attack had been made on the ships in the bay, Essex A.D. 1596. landed, and advanced against the town, which in a short time surrendered. The expedition then returned to England, after having caused a loss to the Spaniards of nearly four millions of money.

Scarcely had peace been concluded between France and Spain, when an insurrection broke out in Ireland under A.D. 1599. Hugh O'Neil, Earl of Tyrone. Essex, having been appointed Lord-lieutenant of that country, was sent to quell the rebellion; but his subsequent conduct gave great offence to Elizabeth, who deprived him of several of his offices, and ordered him to be committed to the custody of the Lord Chancellor. Having, however, been liberated, he endeavoured to regain the favour of Elizabeth; but failing in this he became discontented, and indulged in rash and imprudent speech towards his royal mistress, and, at the same time, attempted to secure the succession of King James of Scotland. Nor was this He formed a plot to take possession of the Queen's palace, and to compel Elizabeth to dismiss from her presence Sir Robert Cecil and Sir Walter Raleigh, whom he considered his enemies. He relied on the citizens of London for assistance, but they refused to obey his call; and finding further resistance hopeless, he surrendered on promise of a fair trial, which, however ended in his Elizabeth for a while delayed signing the condemnation. warrant for his execution, but at length she yielded, and Essex perished on the scaffold. The rebellion in Ireland was quelled by Lord Mountjoy, who succeeded Essex as viceroy of that country.

Elizabeth's health now rapidly declined. Her mental and bodily powers gradually gave way, and after indicating that she wished James VI. of Scotland to be her successor, she died at Richmond, in the seventieth year of her age, and the forty-fifth of her reign.

GENERAL FACTS.

During this reign tea was imported from China by the Dutch. Pocket watches came from Germany. The manufacture of paper from linen rags was begun at Dartford in Kent. Silk stockings are said to have been first worn by Elizabeth-cloth hose having been used before. Great improvements began to be made in weaving, dyeing, and the dressing of cloth. For these and other useful arts we are indebted to the French and Flemish Protestants. who, driven by persecution from their own countries, found an asylum in England. Birmingham and Sheffield were already famous for hardware, and Manchester, Leeds. and other towns were becoming distinguished for various kinds of manufactures. The first newspaper, called the "English Mercurie," is said to have been published at the time when the whole of England was in a state of alarm at the approach of the Spanish Armada. The first English edition of Euclid was published about this time.

SUMMARY OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH.

A.D. 1158-A.D. 1003.

Elizabeth, daughter of Henry VIII. by Anne Boleyn. Born at Greenwich, A.D. 1633. Died at Richmond, A.D. 1603. Reigned 45 years.

At the commencement of Elizabeth's reign the Church of England was re-established on a Protestant basis, but it afterwards suffered from the secession of a party of extreme Protestants, called Puritans or Nonconformists.

Philip II. of Spain sent a large fleet, which he styled the Invincible Armada, to invade and conquer England. It was successfully attacked and finally defeated off Calais, A.D. 1588.

In A.D. 1596, Cadiz was attacked by Lord Howard and the Earl of Essex; the town was captured and plundered of a vast amount of treasure.

Towards the end of the reign an insurrection broke out in the North of Ireland, headed by Hugh O'Neil, the rebel Earl of Tyrone. The rebellion was finally put down by Lord Mountjoy, A.D. 1602.

Elizabeth died the following year, and the crown then passed to the House of Stuart in the person of James VI. of Scotland.

QUESTIONS.

Elizabeth's Accession - Protestantism Re-established - The Puritans.

- 1. How was Elizabeth's accession ! received by the nation?
 - 2. Whom did she retain in office?
- 3. Who was her wisest minister?
 4. When Parliament met, what measures did it adopt?
- 5. What alterations were made on
- matters relating to religion?

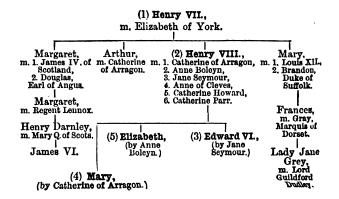
 6. Who wished to marry Elizabeth?
- 7. Who were the Puritans? Why so called?
- 8. To what did they object in the Church of England?
- 9. How were they afterwards treated for holding such religious opinions?
- 10. What was the result of such treatment?

The Spanish Armada - War with Spain - Disturbances in Ireland—Execution of the Earl of Essex—Death of Elisabeth-General Facts.

- 1. To what danger was England exposed in 1588?
- 2. What was the number of the forces of the enemy, and by whom were they commanded?
- 3. Who were the commanders of the English forces?
 - 4. How did the battle proceed?
 - 5. State how it ended.6. What did Philip say when he heard
- of the destruction of his fleet? 7. What revenge was afterwards taken
- on the Spaniards?
 8. Which of all the expeditions was
- the most famous?

- 9. What was its result?
- 10. What insurrection broke out in Ireland?
- 11. Who was sent to quell the rebellion?
- 12. State what followed.13. How did Essex conduct himself after being liberated? What was his fate?
- 14. By whom was the rebellion ulti-mately put down? Date. 15. When and where did Elizabeth
- die? 16. State what general facts are recorded during this reign.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE TUDOR LINE.



CHAPTER VI.

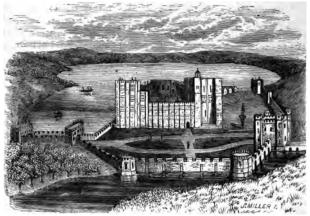
SOCIAL LIFE OF THE TUDOR PERIOD.

Houses—Style of Living—Dress—Amusements—Maritime Enterprise—Population—State of the Country—Learning—Literature.

Houses.—As society advanced, and as law and order became more established, the residences of the nobility and higher classes were planned less for military strength than for convenience, and even ornament. The castle was transformed into the palace or "hall" of the noble, or into the manor-house of the squire. The surrounding wet ditch or moat was superseded by a lawn or shrubbery; the drawbridge and portcullis, by an ordinary gate of entrance; the loopholes had expanded into lofty and broad bay windows filled with glass; gardens were laid out around the mansion with broad terraces and winding walks, while a long avenue of stately trees led up to the In the age of Elizabeth the national style of architecture had been developed into a form which is now known as the Elizabethan. It admitted of great variety and ornament—the roof-line being either horizontal or broken by gables and turrets. The manor-house was generally a plain building, with two projecting wings and a central porch—this form having been suggested, it is said, by the initial letter of Elizabeth's name. Town buildings were still composed of wood, with fronts elaborately carved and ornamented, and the upper storeys projecting. The humbler dwellings had walls of sticks or wattles daubed with clay; but brick or stone began to be used instead. Chimneys were now generally introduced, and increased attention was paid to internal comfort and convenience.

Style of Living.—Great changes took place during this period in the domestic life of England. The wealthy sought repose on beds of down, covered with blankets of woollen, and sheets of fine Holland. The commons lay upon straw pallets or rough mats, with a round log for a pillow; or, if a yeoman or farmer could afford a flock

mattress and a chaff bolster, he thought himself as well lodged as the lord of the manor. Servants slept upon straw, and had seldom a coverlet. Turkey carpets were beginning to supersede the litter of rushes, and table-cloths now covered the naked board. The hours for meals with the upper classes were eight clock for breakfast, twelve for dinner, and six for supper. Except at dinner, which was the principal meal, there was little variety—beef and mutton, roasted or boiled, and bread, being washed down with draughts of nut-brown ale. The hat was generally worn at table, and gracefully doffed when pledging a health or acknowledging a compliment. The poorer classes ate bread, not of wheat, like the rich,



KENILWORTH CASTLE:

but of barley or rye, and in dear years, which were frequent, of beans, pease, or oats. But by the close of the century this coarse diet had improved, and the farmer's wooden spoons and trencher were superseded by pewter ones. A good dinner was thought incomplete without a pipe of tobacco—for smoking was now all but universal. Judges smoked on the bench, and criminals on the scaffold; one bishop smoked himself to death, and ladies owed

Dress. 211

their black teeth to their inordinate love of sugar and tobacco.

Elizabeth made frequent journeys, or progresses, through her dominions, and received entertainment on her way at the houses of her chief nobility; but the honour of a royal visit was often deemed a questionable favour. Twelve times did she visit her favourite statesman, Burleigh, and each visit cost him between two and three thousand pounds. The most famous of her visits was to Kenilworth Castle, the seat of the Earl of Leicester, where she was entertained for seventeen days with extra-

ordinary magnificence.

Dress.—In the sixteenth century, the character of the costume was mainly borrowed from France—a country which has since ruled the fashions for nearly all Europe. Elizabeth's extreme fondness for dress fostered the love of display in her reign, and she is said to have left 3000 different habits in her wardrobe. The ladies of her court wore an immense hooped petticoat, or farthingale, introduced from Spain. Corked shoes or slippers, very broad at the point, made of velvet or leather of various colours, and embroidered with gold, silver, or silk, raised them two or three inches from the ground. Enormous ruffs of plaited linen or cambric were worn by both sexes round the neck and wrist, and the art of starching them was introduced from Flanders, instead of the former clumsy mode of supporting them by means of wooden, metal, or ivory sticks. The ladies also wore wigs of red or light-coloured hair, curled, frizzled, and crisped, and set out into fantastic forms by pins and wires, while strings of pearls hung in loops round their necks. male attire the hose, which had formerly been one vestment from the waist to the feet, was now separated into breeches and stockings. The velvet cloaks of Spanish, French, or Dutch cut, were superbly trimmed, both inside and outside. The bonnets, hats, and caps, were of almost every shape, and ornamented with jewels, feathers, and bands of various colours. The head was closely cropped, and the beard and moustache cultivated. A rapior and dagger by every gentleman's side gave fatal facility for frequent duels and bloodshed. A fashionable lady seldom moved abroad without a small mirror dangling from her belt, to be frequently consulted, that she might rectify any chance disorder of the dress.

Amusements. - Music and dancing, and games of various kinds, were the chief home amusements of the Music was much cultivated—the more common instruments being the cithern, a kind of guitar, the lute, and the virginal, a keyed instrument—in shape not unlike our modern pianoforte—so called in honour of the Virgin Queen. Dancing was a favourite amusement: the courtiers on the rush-strewn, torch-lighted hall, practised their grave measures, and the peasant youths and maidens tripped their rounds on the green sward before the sun went down. Other in-door amusements were chess, cards, dice, and tables-now called backgammon. Out-door games, especially in the country, were numerous -many of them on Sundays after divine service. is the period with which we chiefly associate the name of "Merry England." The numerous festivals and holidays of the Church which survived the Reformation, were seasons of rustic sport and jollity, degenerating sometimes into indecent license. Chief of these were Christmas. with its Yule-log and Boar's-head-landlord, tenant, and domestic, all feasting together in the great hall; May-day, when the village youths danced on the green around the May-pole, wreathed with flowers and ribands; and Midsummer Eve, all alight with bonfires. The Lord of Misrule, a notable personage in every village of the land, headed a gang of mischief-makers with gaudy liveries, scarfs, and ribands, and bells fastened round their legs. Bear-baiting, bull-baiting, and cock-fighting were favourite amusements in town life with even the most refined classes. Although the drama had suddenly attained an extraordinary pitch of improvement, the scenery and other stage appliances were still of the rudest kind. From one to four o'clock—Sunday as well as week-day—a flag fluttered over the theatre—the Blackfrians on the Globe—to announce that the performances were going on. The better sort of spectators sat in two rows on stools on each side of the rush-strewn stage, the gallants smoking and talking at intervals in the affected court-style of the day, called Euphuism. The actors were attired in the ordinary costume, with masks and wigs, and the female characters were played by boys or smooth-cheeked youths in women's dress. Music and dancing, as well as the holiday sports, were loudly denounced by the Puritans of the days of Elizabeth, but the theatre they regarded as

the crowning iniquity.

Maritime Enterprise.—The sixteenth century witnessed the improvement of the Royal Navy and the mercantile marine, a vast extension of our foreign commerce, and the foundation of our colonial empire. The rise of the Royal Navy, properly so called, dates from Henry VIII., who built war-ships—the largest then known—and captured others from the Scots, repaired piers and harbours for their accommodation, and with his own fleet kept the English Channel. In Elizabeth's time the total tonnage of the navy had only reached about 17,000 tons—a figure which it would be easy to exceed in sailing vessels by many single firms of the present day. In the event of war, however, as in the case of the Spanish Armada, many of the ports of the kingdom were bound to provide and equip ships of war, and merchant ships were hired or impressed into the service. England, in common with the most of Europe at this time, was the scene of uncommon maritime enterprise. It is the age of many of our illustrious navigators. Sebastian Cabot of Bristol, in 1497, in search for the famous north-west passage to India, first set foot upon the continent of America at Labrador, more than a year before Columbus had discovered the mainland. Sir John Hawkins, in 1562, commenced the infamous slave trade by kidnapping African negroes on the coast of Guinea, transporting them across the Atlantic, and selling them as slaves at Sir Francis Drake, the first Englishman Hispaniola. who circumnavigated the globe, and the second navigator

who had performed that feat—Magellan, a Portuguese, being the first-returned home laden with much treasure, plundered in the Spanish main from the Spanish ships and possessions in America—a system of piracy, or buccancering, as it was called, too common at the period. Our first attempt at colonization was made by Sir Walter Raleigh in Virginia, which he had discovered and named after the Virgin Queen. The project failed, and the returned colonists first brought tobacco into England. The potato had been introduced from Santa Fé in North America by Drake, who planted it in Lancashire. As a result of this maritime and mercantile activity, on the last day of the year 1600 was established the East India Company, and therefore the foundation of our Indian Empire.

Population.—With the increase of industry came an increase of the population, which, over the whole of England, amounted to not less than 5,000,000. London had increased under the Tudors from about 50,000 to 150,000, being reckoned one of the largest cities in Christendom, and exceeded only by Paris and Lisbon. Next to London, the most important towns were Bristol Whilst there was a decay in many of the and Norwich. old corporate towns there was a rise of new ones, where trade and enterprise were less hampered by the restrictions of municipalities and trade guilds. Birmingham and Manchester now emerge into notice; but Liverpool had still only 150 householders, and its whole trade was conducted by twelve small barks, whose crews numbered 75 men.

State of the Country.—But notwithstanding these signs of prosperity, beggary and robbery were fearfully prevalent, while unceasing vigilance and severe enactments failed to repress the evils. The minstrel, once so highly honoured, was now classed among rogues and vagabonds; but scholars of the universities might be allowed to beg, on producing their credentials. Gibbets stood by the highways and in the market-places, with felons dangling in chains. Henry VIII. in the course of

his reign hanged 72,000 thieves and vagabonds, but the number was reduced to 300 or 400 a year in the reign of Elizabeth. Towards the beginning of this century the gipsies, or Egyptians, as they were then called, first appeared on English soil. The highways were in a wretched condition. Travelling was seldom attempted except on horseback. Queen Elizabeth frequently rode on state occasions on horseback, seated on a pillion behind But in 1564 the modern coach was the Chancellor. introduced. "A coach was a strange monster in those days," says a writer of that period, "and the sight of it put both horse and man into amazement. Some said it was a great crab-shell brought out of China, and some imagined it to be one of the Pagan temples in which the cannibals adored the devil." When acquaintances met in those days, they saluted each other with embraces and kisses. An unpleasing feature was the odious practice of profane swearing-long a national vice-which now reached its height in England. All classes swore—the courtier, the soldier, the citizen, even the clergy and the ladies—and each class seemed to have its own appropriate set of oaths. Queen Elizabeth herself was no mean proficient in the art.

LEARNING AND LITERATURE OF THE TUDOR PERIOD.

Learning.—The taking of Constantinople by the Turks in 1453, had dispersed the learned men of that city all over Europe, and they carried with them to the West much learning and literature, especially the classics. This has been called the Revival of Letters, and was largely instrumental in bringing about the Reformation in Europe. As a consequence, the sixteenth century in England was a learned age, the learning being by no means confined to professed scholars. All the Tudor sovereigns, except the first, were eminent for scholarship. Elizabeth knew well not only Latin, French, Spanish, and Italian, but read more Greek in one day than some churchmen read of Latin in a whole week. It became

fashionable for the maids of honour, as well as gentlemen, to study Greek at court. Indeed, the age was remarkable for the number of learned ladies, of whom Lady Jane Grey is the most familiar example. Along with these ancient and modern languages, ladies of rank were also instructed in music and dancing, needlework, embroidery, and other domestic accomplishments. The queens and daughters of Henry VIII. did not disdain to make a shirt or a coverlet, and a young gentlewoman was accustomed to take a share in the management of household and dairy. This was also an age distinguished for the foundation of seminaries of learning. Sixteen colleges at Oxford and Cambridge, and five great public schools, were founded in England in this century. The Scottish colleges, except Glasgow and St. Salvador's at St. Andrews, and Trinity College, Dublin, all belong to this period. But with all this zeal for learning, much ignorance and superstition Many of the highest rank, even Elizabeth herself, put faith in the delusions of astrology and alchemy; and the belief in witchcraft was universal.

Literature.—In the reign of Elizabeth, English literature burst forth with a splendour and originality that have rendered the Elizabethan age the most illustrious in our literary annals, and indeed one of the greatest eras in the history of the human intellect. The revival of learning in Europe, the invention of printing, the freedom of religious discussion, the dissemination of the Scriptures in the vulgar tongue, as well as the encouragement to literature accorded by Queen Elizabeth herself, had all a favourable influence in rousing into activity the national intellect. Hence, within her reign and the two succeeding ones, we shall find most of all the really great names which this country has ever produced. Our language now passed into the form of Modern English, which it still retains.

QUESTIONS.

hat changes were made during riod in the construction of the ces of the nobility?

what name is the style of cture now known which was I in the reign of Elizabeth? hat are its peculiarities?

scribe the nature of town build-

ste some of the changes which ace during this period in the ic life of England.

what did the wealthy sleep? what hours did the upper classes

eir meals?

nich was the principal meal? late what is said about smoking. hat is stated of visits made by th to several of the nobility? hat country has, since the six-century, ruled the fashions? ow did Elizabeth show her s for dress?

escribe the dress worn by the f her court

ive particulars as to the attire emen. hat were the chief home amuse-

ell the names of the common instruments. elate what is said about danc-

n which day of the week did f the out-door games take place? hat seasons in particular were

to sport and feasting? ell the chief of these. ive particulars regarding theat-

ousements. hat advances were made in ne and mercantile enterprise the sixteenth century?

23. Who were the most illustrious navigators of the period?

24. What important achievements or discoveries did each make?

25. What was now the population of the whole of England? Of London?

26. What were the most important towns next to London?

27. Give an account of the state of

the country in the time of the Tudors. 28. When did the gipsies first appear in England?

29. How was travelling performed? 30. When was the modern coach introduced?

31. Give its description as related by a writer of that period.

32. What is stated regarding the vice of profane swearing?

33. What has been called the "Revival

of Letters?"
34. Which of the Tudor sovereigns were eminent for scholarship? 35. Show how this was so in the case

of Elizabeth. 36. What seminaries of learning were

founded during this period? 37. What has rendered the Eliza-

bethan age the most illustrious in our

betian age the most interiors in our literary annals?

38. Who were the greatest poets in the reign of Elizabeth?

39. What was Spenser's great work?

40. Which is the greatest name in our literature?

41. Of what is he the author? 42. Tell the names of his most admired pieces.

43. Mention the names of some other dramatists.

44. Who were some of the greatest prose writers of the period? 45. Give the names of their principal

CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY

OF THE

CIPAL EVENTS DURING THE TUDOR PERIOD. A.D. 1485-A.D. 1603.

works.

HENRY VII. A.D. 1485-1509.

Henry marries Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV. By this marriage the Houses of York and Lancaster were united. Lambert Simnel represents himself as the Earl of Warwick, and is proclaimed as Edward VI.

1492. Perkin Warbeck appears and represents himself as Richard, Duke of York, second son of Edward IV., supposed to have been murdered in the Tower in 1483.

15

15

15

15

15

15

15

и

lŧ

E

1492. America discovered by Christopher Columbus.

1497. Warbeck lands in Cornwall, but deserts his followers at the siege of Exeter. Newfoundland discovered by Sebastian Cabot.

1499. Warbeck and the Earl of Warwick executed.

1502. Margaret, daughter of Henry VII., marries James IV. of Scotland. From this marriage sprang the Stuart dynasty of England.

1509. Death of Henry.

HENRY VIII., A.D. 1509-1547.

1510. Empson and Dudley executed.1512. Henry joins Ferdinand of Spain in a war against France.

1520. Henry visits Francis I. of France. The place where they met was called the Field of the Cloth of Gold.

1520. Reformation begun in Germany by Martin Luther.

1521. Henry receives the title of Defender of the Faith. 1522. Henry declares war against Francis I. of France.

1527. Henry begins to entertain doubts about the legality of his marriage with Catherine.

1529. The Reformers take the name of Protestants.

1530. Wolsey dies at Leicester Abbey.

1536. Anne Boleyn beheaded.

1538. Cranmer's Bible published.

1542. Catherine Howard beheaded. 1547. Death of the King.

EDWARD VI., A.D. 1547-1553.

1547. The Statute of the Six Articles repealed.

1549. The Liturgy, or Book of Common Prayer, published. 1552. The Duke of Somerset beheaded.

1553. Edward VI. dies at the age of sixteen.

MARY, A.D. 1553-1558.

1553. Lady Jane Grey proclaimed Queen by Northumberland Her reign lasted ten days. Mary's title acknowledged Lady Jane, Dudley, and Duke of Suffolk arrested Northumberland executed.

1553. Cranmer, Latimer, Hooper, and Ridley thrown into the Tower. The Catholic religion re-established.

1554. Dudley, Lady Jane Grey, and Duke of Suffolk, are beheaded.

1555. Commencement of the persecution of the Protestants. Rodgers, Hooper, Ridley, and Latimer burnt for heresy.

1556. Archbishop Cranmer burnt at Oxford.

1558. Death of Mary.

ELIZABETH, A.D. 1558-1603.

1559. The Protestant religion re-established.

1561. Mary Queen of Scots returns from France to Scotland on the death of her husband Francis II., 1560.

1565. Mary of Scotland marries Lord Darnley.

1566. Death of Rizzio.

- 1567. Death of Lord Darnley. Queen Mary of Scotland marries Bothwell.
- 1568. The Queen of Scots flees to England. Is kept a prisoner during the next 18 years.

1587. Execution of Queen Mary of Scotland at Fotheringay Castle.

1601. The Earl of Essex, a favourite of the Queen, executed.

1603. Death of Elizabeth.

BATTLES AND SIEGES DURING TUDOR PERIOD

B. Battle. S. Siege. N.B. Naval Battle.

B. Stoke, 1487. Simnel and his adherents defeated.

- Exeter, 1497. Abandoned by Warbeck, who deserted his followers.
- S. Terouenne, 1513. Taken by the English under Henry VIII. The encounter which followed was named the "Battle of Spurs."
- B. Flodden, 1513. Between the Scots under James IV., and the English under the Earl of Surrey. The Scots defeated with signal loss, and their King, with the flower of his nobility, slain.

8. Boulogne, 1544. Taken by Henry VIII.

- B. Pinkie, 1547. Between the English under the Duke of Somerset, and the Scots under the Earl of Arran. The Scots were defeated.
- B. St. Quentin, 1557. Between the Spaniards and the French.
 The Spaniards aided by the English were victorious.
- S. Calais, 1558. Taken by the Duke of Guise after it had been in possession of the English for 211 years.
- Carberry Hill, 1567. Here the armies of Mary Queen of Scots and her nobles met. No engagement took place. Mary's followers deserted her, after which she surrendered.
- B. Langside, 1568. Between Mary of Scotland and the Regent Murray. Mary was defeated.
- N.B. Spanish Armada, 1588. Between the English under Lord Howard, and the Spaniards under the Duke of Medina Sidonia. The Spanish fleet was completely defeated.
- N.B. Cadiz, 1596. Between the English under the Earl of Essex and Lord Effingham, and the Spaniards under the Duke of Medina Sidonia. The Spaniards defeated,

TREATIES.

1492. Estaples, treaty of, between Henry VII. and Charles VIII. of France, by which the latter agreed to banish Warbeck from his dominions, and pay Henry £149,000.

1502. Between England and Scotland, by which Margaret, eldest daughter of Henry VII., was to marry James IV. of Scotland.

1514. Between France, Spain, and England, by which Louis, the French King, married Mary, sister of Henry VIII.

1550. Peace between England and France. Boulogne given back to the King of France for 400,000 crowns.

STATUTES PASSED.

1486. Court of Star Chamber instituted. It took cognizance of all offences committed against the government. The mode of punishment was by means of heavy fines, imprisonment, and the pillory. The Law of Maintenance, by which the barons were permitted to keep large numbers of retainers, was abolished by the Star Chamber.

1495. Poyning's Law, so called from the Lord Deputy of Ireland, declared, (1) that the holding of any Irish Parliament without the consent of the King was illegal; (2) that no bill could be introduced into the Irish Parliament without his sanction; and (3) that all laws lately passed in England were to be binding in Ireland.

1534. An Act passed which confirmed Henry VIII.'s title as the Supreme Head of the Church.

1536. Parliament passed a measure for the suppression of the lesser monasteries.

1539. The Six Articles, or Bloody Statute, was passed, by which the doctrine of transubstantiation and other cardinal points of the Catholic creed were affirmed.

1549. Act for Uniformity of Service was passed, and carried out by the publication of the Liturgy, or Book of Common Prayer.

1552. Second Act for Uniformity of Service passed.

1553. Statute passed by which the religion of the country, and the Form of Divine Service, were put on the same footing as they were in the last year of Henry VIII.

1559. Act of Supremacy passed, restoring to Queen Elizabeth the title of Supreme Governor of the Church. Act of Uniformity re-enforced, which enjoined that Edward VI.'s second Prayer Book should alone be used. Court of High Commission established. It took cognizance of all ecclesiastical offences.

1563. An Act passed excluding Catholics from the House of Commons. The 39 Articles ratified by Convocation.

AUTHORS.

Beaumont, Francis, a celebrated English dramatic poet, was born in Leicester, A.D. 1586. He was also joint author with John Fletcher of a number of excellent plays. Died A.D. 1615.

Beaumont, Sir John, elder brother of the dramatist, was a poet of real merit, and is said by critics to have much improved our rhyme couplet. He was the author of Bosworth Field.

rhyme couplet. He was the author of Bosworth Field.

Buchanan, George, the celebrated Scottish historian and poet, was born A.D. 1506. He wrote Latin poetry with the purity and elegance of an ancient Roman. His chief works are a Latin Version of the Psalms of David, and a History of Scotland. He acted as tutor to James VI., and had several offices of state conferred on him. Died at Edinburgh, A.D. 1582.

Coverdale, Miles, a reformer and translator of the Bible, was born in Yorkshire, A.D. 1487. He aided Tyndale in his translation of the Bible, and by permission of Henry VIII. published his own translation, A.D. 1535. This was the first

printed English Bible.

Douglas, Gavin, a Scottish poet, and Bishop of Dunkeld, was born at Brechin, A.D. 1474. He wrote The Palace of Honour, and other works, but his chief performance is a translation of Virgil's **Eneid*, being the first translation of a Roman classic into English.

Dunbar, William, an early Scottish poet, born A.D. 1465. He is characterised by Sir Walter Scott as "a poet unrivalled by any that Scotland has ever produced." His principal poem is The Thistic and the Rose, written in commemoration of

the marriage of James IV.

Fletcher, John, an eminent English dramatic poet, was born in London, A.D. 1576. His principal work is a dramatic pastoral entitled The Faithful Shepherdess. He died of the plague at London, A.D. 1625. Edward Phillips, the nephew of Milton, classes Fletcher with Shakespeare and Ben Jonson, as one of the "happy triumvirate" of the age.

Hooker, Richard, an eminent English divine, was born in Devonshire, A.D. 1554. The work in which his fame chiefly rests is The Laws of Ecclesiastical Polity. Died A.D. 1600.

Jonson, Ben, a celebrated dramatist, the contemporary and

Jonson, Ben, a celebrated dramatist, the contemporary and friend of Shakespeare, was born at Westminster, A.D. 1574. In 1598 he produced his comedy of Every Man in his Humour, then followed Eastward Hoe. In 1619 he was appointed poet laureate with a salary of £100, and a butt of Canary wine yearly from the King's cellars. Died A.D. 1637.

Marlowe, Christopher, a famous English dramatist, was born at Canterbury, A.D. 1563. His principal plays are Tamburlaine the Great, Edward the Second, and the Jew of Malta.

Died A.D. 1593.

Massinger, Philip, a distinguished English dramatist, was born at Salisbury, A.D. 1585. Only eighteen of his plays are

extant, among which are The Virgin Martyr, The Duke of Milan, The Maid of Honour, A New Way to pay Old Debts, etc. Died A.D. 1640.

More, Sir Thomas, an illustrious Englishman, was born in London, A.D. 1480. In 1518 he published his *Utopia*, a political romance, and about this time commenced the friendship between him and Erasmus, which continued through life. By the interest of Wolsey he obtained the honour of knighthood. In 1530 he succeeded Wolsey as Lord Chancellor. For having refused to take the Oath of Supremacy, he was committed to the Tower, found guilty of treason, and executed, A.D. 1536.

Raleigh, Sir Walter, a distinguished statesman, scholar, and warrior, was born in Devonshire, A.D. 1552. On the accession of James I. he was committed to the Tower on a charge of being concerned in an attempt to place Arabella Stuart on the throne. During his imprisonment of twelve years he wrote his celebrated History of the World. He obtained his liberty on condition of discovering some gold mines in South America; but the expedition having proved a failure, he was executed on the former charge of treason, A.D. 1618.

Shakespeare, William, born at Stratford-on-Avon, A.D. 1564, is the greatest name in our literature, and stands unrivalled as a dramatist. Besides sonnets and two poetical tales, he is the author of thirty-five plays—tragedies, comedies, and historical dramas His most admired masterpieces are Humlet, King Lear, Othello, Macbeth, and the Merchant of Venice. Died A.D. 1616.

Southwell, Robert, an English Jesuit and poet, was born in Norfolk, A.D. 1560. He was educated on the continent, and entered the Society of Jesuits at Rome. In 1592 he was apprehended by the agents of Queen Elizabeth as to a supposed plot against her government. He was confined in the Tower for three years before he was brought to trial. He then admitted that he came to England for the purpose of making converts to the Catholic religion. Executed A.D. 1575. He was the author of several poems and various prose works.

Spenser, Edmund, an illustrious English poet, was born in London, A.D. 1553. His first poem, entitled The Shepherd's Calendar, was published in 1579, and dedicated to his friend Sir Philip Sydney. Sir Walter Raleigh persuaded him to write the Faerie Queen, which was presented to Queen Elizabeth, who granted the poet a yearly pension of £50. Died at Westminster, A.D. 1599.

Died at Westminster, A.D. 1599.

Sydney, Sir Philip, one of the most accomplished statesmen and writers of the age, was born in Kent, A.D. 1554. He was the author of a Defence of Poesy, Sonnets and Poems, and the celebrated romance of Arcadia. He was killed at the

battle of Zutphen, A.D. 1586,

OUTLINES OF SCOTTISH HISTORY.

FROM THE TIME OF THE SAXONS TO THE UNION OF THE CROWNS, A.D. 1603.

THE country first known by the name of Scotia or Scotland was Ireland, as the Scoti or Scots were originally the chief inhabitants of that island. They were of Celtic origin; and about the beginning of the 6th century a colony of them emigrated from Ireland, and effected a settlement in the district now called Argyle. In a short time they spread themselves along the whole of the western coast from the Firth of Clyde to Ross-shire. The Picts, whom the Roman writers called Caledonians, were divided into two distinct tribes, and occupied that part of the country stretching along the east coast from the Firth of Forth to the north of Caithness. The range of mountains now known as the Grampians formed the boundary line between the two divisions of the Pictish kingdom. The Picts to the north of the Grampians were converted to Christianity by St. Columba; and those to the south, by St. Ninian. After many years of contention, the Pictish and Scottish kingdoms were united by Kenneth MacAlpin, and about the middle of the 10th century the country received the name of Scotland.

For many years after this period, the Scottish Kings were chiefly engaged in repelling the attacks of the Danes, who committed formidable ravages along the eastern shores of Scotland. Constantine II., son of Kenneth, offered them a brave resistance; but he afterwards entered into an alliance with them against the English. During the reign of the first Malcolm, the kingdom of Cumbria, which included the counties of Cumberland and Westmoreland, was given by Edmund, king of England,

to the Scottish monarch. The dominions of Scotland were still further increased in the reign of Kenneth, son of Malcolm, by the addition of the country occupied by the Strathclyde Britons; and in the reign of Malcolm II. the Earl of Northumberland ceded the district of Lothian. which had hitherto formed part of the territory of England. Malcolm was succeeded by his grandson Duncan, who had reigned only six years, when he was basely murdered by Macbeth, Thane of Cawdor, who seized the Scottish crown. Malcolm Canmore, the son and heir of Duncan, having solicited Edward the Confessor to assist A.D. 1056. him in dethroning the usurper, Siward, earl of Northumberland, was sent with an army into Scotland, and at Dunsinnan in Perthshire, Macbeth was defeated and slain, and in the following year Malcolm was crowned king. Upon these incidents the greatest of English dramatists has founded his masterly tragedy of "Macbeth."

KINGS OF SCOTLAND.-FROM A.D. 1093 TO A.D. 1153.

MALCOLM III., or					
CANMORE,	.began	to reign	1057,	died	1093.
DONALD BANE	. ,,	,,	1093,	dethroned	1094.
DUNCAN	. ,,	,,	1094,	died	1095.
DONALD BANE rega					1097.
EDGAR					1107.
ALEXANDER I	. ,,	,,	1107,	,,	1124.
DAVID I	. ,,	,,	1124,	,,	1153.

Donald Bane Usurps the Throne—Dethroned by Duncan—Donald again Succeeds—His Final Overthrow—Edgar—Alexander I.—Monasteries—David I.—Progress of Civilization—Death of King David.

When Malcolm Canmore died, the throne of Scotland was usurped by his brother Donald, surnamed Bane, or the Fair. Having established his authority, he expelled all the Saxons who had taken refuge in Scotland during the previous reign. In a short time he was dethroned by Duncan, an illegitimate son of Malcolm, but in less than eighteen months the young monarch was defeated and

DAVID I. 225

slain, and Donald Bane again seized the crown. Two years afterwards, Edgar Atheling, uncle of the rightful heir, obtained the assistance of an English army, and succeeded in placing Edgar upon the throne. This prince was of a mild and peaceful disposition, and after reigning about nine years, died at Edinburgh, greatly beloved by the whole of his subjects.

Edgar was succeeded by his brother, Alexander I., surnamed the Fierce, on account of the stern and energetic measures which he employed to put down the various insurrections that took place during his reign. The most formidable of these was one raised in the district of Moray, and headed by Angus, who claimed the throne in virtue of his descent from Macbeth. Alexander displayed equal determination in resisting the pretensions of the Archbishops of Canterbury and York to the right of jurisdiction over the Scottish clergy. The controversy lasted for many years, but ultimately the English prelates were compelled to yield. The king, in other respects, gave ample evidence of the interest he took in the cause of religion in Scotland. The see of St. Andrews, and other ecclesiastical institutions, participated largely in his liberality. In A.D. 1123 he founded a church on the island of Inchcolm, in the Firth of Forth, and died at Stirling the following year.

David I., youngest son of Malcolm Canmore, now ascended the throne. His early days were passed in England, at the court of his sister Matilda, who married Henry I. Shortly after his accession to the throne of Scotland, he promised to support the claims of his niece, Matilda, to the English crown. When her father, Henry I., died, the throne of England was usurped by Stephen, and David immediately took up arms on behalf of Matilda. This led to the battle of the Standard, which, as has been already stated, ended in the defeat of the Scottish monarch. After peace had been established between the two kingdoms, David sedulously employed himself in those pursuits which tended to advance the civilization of his country, and promote the happiness of his subjects.

established towns, erected castles and other public buildings, encouraged and promoted trade, agriculture, and manufactures. He founded many monasteries, including those of Melrose, Kelso, Holyrood, and Jedburgh; and his munificence in the endowment of such religious institutions was so lavish, that it served in no small degree to impoverish his successors, and James I. of England is said to have remarked that he was a "sore saint to the crown." This good king, after a reign of thirty years, died at Carlisle, leaving behind him a rare example of piety and virtue, combined with active benevolence, and a sincere regard for the welfare of his people.

QUESTIONS.

- 1. What country was first known by the name of Scotland?
 - 2. Account for the origin of the name. 3. Of what origin were the inhabi-
- tants? 4. When did they emigrate from Ire-
- land? 5. On what part of Scotland did they
- first settle? 6. Where afterwards did they spread
- themselves? 7. What part of the country did the
- Picts occupy? 8. By whom were the Picts converted
- to Christianity? 9. Who united the Pictish and Scot-
- tish kingdoms? 10. When did the country get the
- name of Scotland? 11. Give an account of the efforts made by the Scottish kings to repel the
- 12. By whom and at what times were the dominions of Scotland increased?
- 13. What was the fate of Duncan, grandson of Malcolm?
 - 14. How was his death avenged?

- 15. Give the date of the battle of Dunsinnan.
 - 16. What tragedy has been founded
- upon these incidents?

 17. Mention in order the kings of Scotland from Malcolm III. to David I., and give the dates of the accession and death of each.
- 18. Relate what is recorded of Donald
- Bane, Duncan, and Edgar.

 19. What insurrections took place in
- the reign of Alexander I.?
 20. What evidence is given of the interest he took in religion?
- 21. By whom was he succeeded? 22. Where did David pass his early
- days? 23. Whose claims to the English
- crown did he promise to support? State what followed. 24. How did the king employ him-
- self after peace had been established? 25. What monasteries were founded
- by David I.? 26. What was this monarch afterwards called by James I.?

KINGS OF SCOTLAND. - From A.D. 1153 to A.D. 1371.

MALCOLM IV	began	to reign	1153,	died	1165.
WILLIAM I		,,	1165,	,,	1214.
ALEXANDER II			1214,		1249.
ALEXANDER III			1249,		1286.
MARGARET			1286,		1290.
INTERREGNUM					1292.
JOHN BALIOL					
INTERREGNUM				to	1306.
ROBERT I. (BRUCE)	began	to reign	1306,	died	1329.
DAVID II	"	,,	1329,	,,	1371.

Malcolm IV.—William the Lion—Becomes the Vassal of Henry II.—Scottish Independence Restored—Alexander II.—State of the Country—Alexander III.—Invasion of Scotland by Haco—His Defeat—Cession of the Hebrides Margaret, the Maiden of Norway—Her Death—Disputed Succession—John Baliol becomes King—Sir William Wallace—Battle of Stirling Bridge—Battle of Falkirk—Death of Wallace.

MALCOLM IV., surnamed the Maiden, was only twelve years of age when he ascended the throne of Scotland, on the death of his grandfather, David I. Shortly after his accession he surrendered to Henry II. the territories he held in the North of England, and in return received the Earldom of Huntingdon. After reigning twelve years, during which the country had been greatly disturbed by numerous insurrections, Malcolm died at Jedburgh at the early age of twenty-four.

He was succeeded by his brother, William I., who was

surnamed the Lion, as he was the first of the Kings of Scotland to have the figure of the lion rampant engraved upon his shield. In A.D. 1174 he invaded England, and laid waste Northumberland, but was defeated and taken prisoner at Alnwick by the forces of Henry II. He afterwards regained his liberty, on condition

of holding his country as a fief of the LION RAMPANT. crown of England, and allowing the castles of Edinburgh, Stirling, Roxburgh, and several others, to be garrisoned by English soldiers; but when Richard I. became King of England, he surrendered his claim to the vassalage of

William for the sum of 10,000 marks, so that Scotland again became independent. William died at Stirling, after a reign of forty-nine years.

Alexander II., son of William, next ascended the throne. His first act was to unite with the English barons who had taken up arms against King John, but on the accession of Henry III. peace was established between the two The Scottish monarch now diligently applied countries. himself to improve the condition of his subjects, by infusing among them a love of order, and a due respect for the laws. The measures he employed to accomplish these ends were strict and severe, but not more so than the disordered state of the country required. occasion the people of Caithness, being greatly displeased with their bishop for enforcing the payment of tithes, made an attack on his palace, and having found the object of their hatred, dragged him to the kitchen, and there burned him alive. The king, on hearing of such barbarous cruelty, proceeded with a number of soldiers into Caithness, and inflicted vengeance on all who had taken any part in the murder of the bishop. Such stern administration of justice caused him to be dreaded and obeyed by even the most turbulent of his subjects, while, at the same time, his wisdom and impartial administration of justice gained for him the general esteem and respect of both English and He died of fever in the island of Kerrera, on the north-west coast of Argyleshire, in the fifty-first year of his age, and thirty-fifth of his reign.

The successor of Alexander II. was his son, Alexander III., a boy only eight years old, who was crowned at Scone by the Bishop of St. Andrews. Two years later, he married at York, Margaret, eldest daughter of Henry III., King of England. This union, as well as Alexander's minority, afforded Henry an opportunity of endeavouring to establish his supremacy over the kingdom of Scotland; but as the young king advanced to manhood, his eminent talents gave every promise that when he took the government into his own hands, he would maintain his rights, and the independence of his native country. Shortly

after coming of age, his energies were called forth to repel an invasion by Haco, King of Norway, A.D. 1263. who sought to recover the sovereignty of the Western Isles. The invaders attempted to land at Largs. on the coast of Ayrshire, but were overtaken by a storm, which destroyed many of their ships. The Scots, taking advantage of this disaster, rushed with great fury upon their enemies, and totally defeated them; Haco with difficulty escaped, and died of grief a few months afterwards at Orkney. In the following year his successor, Magnus, yielded to the Scottish monarch the Hebrides and the Isle of Man. Peace having thus been established between the two countries, Alexander's only daughter, Margaret, was married in 1282 to Eric the young king of Norway. She died the following year, however, leaving behind her a daughter of the same name, commonly known in history as the Maiden of Norway. During the latter years of his reign, Alexander had the satisfaction of seeing his country rapidly advancing in civilization and influence, and enjoying a peace and prosperity which, unfortunately, it soon lost, and did not again regain for many years after his death. As he was riding along the coast, on a dark night, between Kinghorn and Burntisland, he was thrown from his horse over a precipice, and killed on the spot, A.D. 1286.

On the death of Alexander, his only heir was his grand daughter Margaret. Edward I., the English monarch, wishing to unite the two kingdoms, proposed a marriage between the young princess and his only son, afterwards Edward II. To this proposal the Scottish nobles consented, but the scheme was frustrated by the death of Margaret on her voyage from Norway to Scotland,

A.D. 1290.

Disputed Succession.

The country now became involved in all the evils of a disputed succession. Thirteen competitors appeared for the crown, but their number was reduced to three, John Baliol, Robert Bruce, and John Hastings, all of whom

claimed descent from David, earl of Huntingdon, brother of William the Lion. The dispute ultimately lay between John Baliol and Robert Bruce, but as the Scottish Parliament could not decide between the two, the matter was referred to Edward's decision. Judgment was at length given in favour of Baliol, who, having sworn fealty to the A.D. 1292. King of England as his superior lord, was put in possession of the castles and kingdom of Scotland. The new king, however, was not destined to enjoy his honour long; he was treated by Edward with great indignity, and rather than submit to the dictates of so insolent a master. Baliol determined to throw off the English yoke. Edward hastened to punish his refractory vassal; he marched against Scotland with a numerous army, took the town of Berwick by storm, and shortly A.D. 1296. afterwards gained a great victory over the Scots at Dunbar. In a few months the English monarch made himself master of the entire kingdom, and at Montrose, Baliol resigned his crown into the hands of the conqueror, was carried captive to London, and imprisoned in the Tower, but was afterwards permitted to retire to France, where he died, A.D. 1314.



REGALIA OF SCOTLAND.

CORONATION CHAIR.

Having appointed John de Warenne, Earl of Surry governor, and Hugh Cressingham, treasurer of Scotlar Edward returned to England, carrying with him to Scottish Regalia, along with the ancient stone on which the Kings of Scotland had from time immemorial be

crowned at Scone. This stone is still preserved in Westminster Abbey, where it forms the support of the chair of Edward the Confessor, in which the sovereigns of England are still crowned.

Sir William Wallace—Battle of Stirling Bridge.

The tyrannical measures of those to whom Edward had entrusted the government of Scotland excited a feeling of bitter hatred in the minds of the Scots, who now resolved to deliver their country from the oppression of the English. Foremost in the list of these patriotic Scotchmen stands Sir William Wallace, of Ellerslie, in Renfrewshire. Possessed of prodigious strength, indomitable courage, and a heart filled with deadly hatred against the English, he performed several feats of valour which excited the astonishment and called forth the admiration of his countrymen. Having gathered around him a noble band of patriotic followers, he placed himself at their head, and made several successful attacks upon small detachments of the English; his fame spread, and men of all ranks came forward, eager to serve under the banner of Scottish independence, which Wallace had so gallantly unfurled.

The number of his adherents having largely increased, he now resolved to carry on operations on a more exten-Having attacked and reduced the other sive scale. English garrisons in the east of Scotland, he laid siege to Dundee. While here he was informed that an English army of 40,000 men, commanded by Warenne and Cressingham, was approaching Stirling. Wallace immediately set out to meet them, and took up his position on the north side of the river Forth, which was then crossed by a narrow wooden bridge. He permitted about five thousand of the English soldiers to cross the bridge, and then rushed down upon them with A.D. 1297. ail his forces, and routed them with immense slaughter. Cressingham, the treasurer, was among the slain. Warenne, the governor, retreated across the border, followed by Wallace, who laid waste the northern counties

ŧ

of England, and inflicted terrible revenge for the cruelties which the Scots had already endured.

On his return from England, Wallace was appointed Guardian of the kingdom, and commander-in-chief of the forces in Scotland; but his elevation gave offence to the high-born nobles, who thought more of their own personal dignity than the freedom and independence of their country: Meanwhile, Edward, who had been abroad, hurried home, and marched into Scotland at the head of an army of 80,000 men. He met the Scottish forces, under the command of their brave and patriotic leader, in the neighbourhood of Falkirk. The battle which followed was long and bloody, and ended in signal disaster to the Scots, many thousands of whom were left dead on the field.

Death of Wallace.

After this defeat Wallace resigned the Guardianship, and retired with a few faithful followers to his former lonely retreats, where he mourned over the misfortunes of his country, and waited patiently for the hour when the tide of prosperity should again return, and Scotland be set free from her oppressors. But Edward had determined that no effort should be wanting on his part to rid himself of so dangerous an enemy; and at last Scotland's noble and disinterested patriot was basely betrayed by his countryman, Sir John Menteith, into the hands of the King of England. Wallace, loaded with chains, was A.D. 1305. sent to London, arraigned as a traitor at Westminster, found guilty, and condemned to death. His head was placed on a prominent part of London Bridge, and his limbs exposed to public gaze at Newcastle, Berwick, Perth, and Aberdeen.

ROBERT BRUCE.—A.D. 1306—A.D. 1329.

John, the Red Comyn—Bruce crowned at Scone—Battle of Methven—Battle of Loudon Hill—Battle of Bannockburn—Peace established between England and Scotland—Death of Bruce,

John, the Red Comyn.

EDWARD now considered Scotland as his own: but a worthy successor to Wallace appeared in the person of Robert Bruce, the young Earl of Carrick, and grandson of that Bruce who had been competitor with Baliol. When Baliol, A.D. 1296, resigned his kingdom, John, called the Red Comyn, son of Baliol's sister Marjory, was by many regarded as next heir to the crown; whilst young Bruce, in right of his grandfather, never lost sight of his own pretensions to the same high dignity. The two rivals having entered into arrangements with each other respecting the crown, it was agreed that Comyn should support Bruce's title, but no sooner had this been done than Comyn betrayed the whole of Bruce's designs to the English monarch. When Bruce was made aware of the treachery of Comyn, he came upon him suddenly in a convent at Dumfries, and there stabbed him with a dagger beside the high altar. This deed of blood cut off all hopes of Bruce's reconciliation with Edward, so that the only alternative left him was to make a desperate effort to free his country, or perish in the attempt.

Bruce Crowned at Scone—Battle of Methven.

Having collected all his friends and adherents, Bruce set out for Scone and was there crowned King of the Scots. But not long after his coronation A.D. 1306. his forces were completely defeated by the English Governor, the Earl of Pembroke, in the wood of Methven, near Perth. With difficulty Bruce and a small party of his friends escaped to the West Highlands; and at last he found it necessary to retire to Rathlin, a half desolate island on the coast of Ireland, where he passed the winter of 1306. In the following spring, in company with his brother Edward, Sir James Douglas and a few

followers, Bruce returned to Scotland, and landed on the coast of Ayrshire. Having gained a number of successes, his adherents increased; but the king was so often hotly pursued that he was frequently compelled to disperse his followers, appointing them to meet him in a different part of the country. In these solitary wanderings he made many narrow escapes, and on one occasion slew five of his pursuers with his own hands

Battle of Loudon Hill-Battle of Bannockburn.

Bruce again collecting his men, defeated the Englishia several encounters. His little army was reinforced by fresh accessions, and he soon found himself sufficiently strong to give his foes battle on a larger scale. He met his old enemy, the Earl of Pembroke, at Loudon Hill, in Ayrshire, when he completely routed the English, and thus avenged his own defeat at Methven. This success so enraged Edward I. that he resolved to place himself at the head of his forces, and advance into Scotland, determined to execute vengeance on his enemy; but his strength failing, he could proceed no further than Burgh-on-Sands, where he died, A.D. 1307.

Bruce maintained his ground against every attempt made by the feeble and irresolute Edward II. to complete the conquest of Scotland. In a few years he expelled the English invaders from the country, regained all the castles, with the exception of that of Stirling, the only place of strength that still remained in the hands of the English. The English monarch, however, determined to make one grand effort to regain the territory he had lost. Having summoned to his assistance the combined military force of England, he marched into Scotland at the head of an army amounting to one hundred thousand men, while Bruce's did not exceed one-third of that number.

Bruce took up his position at Bannockburn, about two miles from Stirling, where he gained a great and decisive victory over the English, thirty thousand of whom were left dead on the field. Edward escaped to Dunbar, and from thence passed by sea to Berwick. This victory established the independence of Scotland, humbled the English monarchy, and completely annihilated all hopes on the part of that power of ever making a conquest of the sister country.

Peace established between England and Scotland—Death of Bruce.

Having established the independence of Scotland, Bruce passed over to Ireland to obtain the throne of that country for his brother Edward, who, after gaining a A.D. 1318. number of successes, was defeated and slain near It was not till about twelve years after the battle of Bannockburn that hostilities between the English and the Scots ceased. This was accomplished by a treaty of peace which was concluded by the English Parliament at Northampton, the principal articles of which were that England should renounce at once and for ever all claim to the sovereignty of Scotland, that Bruce's title to the crown should be fully recognised, and that David, his son and heir, should marry Joanna, sister of Edward III. Bruce did not long survive this treaty. He died the following year at Cardross, and was buried in the Abbey Church of Dunfermline. On his death-bed he desired Lord James Douglas to carry his heart to Jerusalem, and bury it in the Holy Sepulchre. good hero accordingly set out for Palestine to fulfil the last request of his beloved sovereign, but on reaching Spain he was there slain in battle with the Moors. heart of Bruce was brought back to Scotland and interred in Melrose Abbey.

DAVID II.-A.D. 1329-A.D. 1371.

Edward Baliol—Battle of Dupplin—Battle of Halidon Hill—Battle of Neville's Cross—David made Prisoner—Ransomed by his Subjects—Death of the King.

DAVID II., infant son of Robert I., was crowned at Scone; but the cause of the young prince soon lost its best support by the death of the brave and A.D. 1331.

experienced Regent Randolph. This patriot died at Musselburgh when leading the Scottish army northward to oppose Edward Baliol, son of John Baliol, who was advancing to claim his father's throne. After defeating the Earl of Fife, Baliol encamped with three thousand men at Forteviot, on the river Earn. At Dupplin, on the opposite side of the river, lay the Earl of Mar, the successor of Randolph, with an army of thirty thousand; but he allowed himself to be surprised during night by A.D. 1332. Baliol, who dispersed or cut to pieces the whole of the Scottish army. Edward Baliol was now crowned by his adherents at Scone, and for two months reigned as King of the Scots.

Douglas, brother of the famous Lord James, who was now Regent on behalf of the young Bruce, endeavoured to relieve Berwick, which was besieged by the A.D. 1833. English. A terrible battle ensued at Halidon Hill, near that town, in which the Scots were defeated The friends of David II., however, with great loss. gathering strength, compelled Edward Baliol to take refuge in England, whence he returned with an army under the command of the English King in person, who came to restore his vassal to the throne of Scotland. The Scots made a determined resistance; and the friends and adherents of Baliol were so far overcome, that King David, now eighteen years of age, returned with his consort from France, where they had hitherto resided.

In A.D. 1346, David invaded England, and was taken prisoner by the English at the battle of Neville's Cross. The royal captive was conducted to London; but at the end of eleven years he obtained his freedom for a ransom of one hundred thousand marks. After regaining his liberty he took little interest in the prosperity of his country. He even entered into a treaty to get Edward, or one of his sons, declared heir to the Scottish throne if he himself should die without leaving any male children. This secret and shameful stipulation David attempted repeatedly, but in vain, to fulfil, the Scottish nobles

declaring that they would never have an alien to reign over them.

David II. died in the castle of Edinburgh in the fortyseventh year of his age, and forty-second of his reign. He was a weak and selfish prince, in every respect unworthy of his great father.

QUESTIONS.

Outlines of Scottish History, from A.D. 1153 to A.D. 1371.

- 1. Relate what is recorded in the reign of Malcolm IV.
 - By whom was he succeeded? 3. What was his surname? Why so
- called? 4. State the result of his invasion of England in 1174.
- 5. On what condition did he afterwards regain his liberty?
- 6. Where did he die? By whom was he succeeded?
- 7. What part did he act in connection with the English barons?
- 8. How did he try to improve the condition of his own subjects? 9. What incident took place in Caith-
- ness? 10. How did the king act on this occasion?

- 11. What effect did this produce on the minds of his subjects?
 - 12. Where did he die?
 - 13. Who was his successor? 14. Whom did he marry?
- 15. What advantage was taken of this
- marriage by Henry III.?

 16. Who invaded Scotland during this reign? State the result.

 17. What was the name of Alex-
- ander's daughter? 18. Whom did she marry? Who was
- born of this marriage? 19. What was the state of Scotland
- towards the close of this reign? 20. How did the king meet his death? Who was his heir?
- 21. What proposal did Edward I. make with a view to unite the two kingdoms? How was this frustrated?

Disputed Succession—John Baliol becomes King—Sir William Wallace — Battle of Stirling Bridge — Battle of Falkirk — Death of Wallace.

- 1. On the death of Margaret, how many competitors appeared for the crown?
- 2. From whom did they all claim descent?
 - 3. To whom was the dispute referred?
 - 4. In whose favour did he decide? 5. How was he afterwards treated by
- Edward?
- State what followed.
- 7. Give the result and date of the battle of Dunbar.
 - What happened at Montrose?
- 9. What ultimately became of Baliol? 10. Whom did Edward appoint respectively governor and treasurer of Scotland?
- 11. What did he take with him on his return to England?
- 12. Where is this ancient stone still preserved?
 - 13. Who was Sir William Wallace?

- 14. How did he first of all become known to fame?
- 15. What were some of his exploits?
 16. What information did he get at the siege of Dundee?
- 17. How did he act in such circumstances?
- 18. State the result and date of the battle of Stirling. 19. To what position was Wallace ap-
- pointed after his return from England? 20. Who took offence at this?
- 21. What did Edward do? Number of his army.
- 22. Give the result and date of the battle of Falkirk.
 23. How did Wallace act after his
- defeat at Falkirk? 24. By whom was he betrayed into the hands of the English?
- 25. State particulars regarding his death.

ROBERT BRUCE.-A.D. 1306-A.D. 1329.

- John, the Red Comyn-Bruce Crowned at Scone-Battle of Methyen-Battle of Loudon Hill-Battle of Bannockburn-Peace Established between England and Scotland-Death of Bruce.
 - 1. Who was Robert Bruce?
- 2. What was the name of Bruce's rival to the throne of Scotland?
- 3. What arrangement was made be-tween them with regard to the crown?
- 4. How did Comyn afterwards act in the matter?
- 5. State what followed between him and Bruce.
- 6. Where and when was Bruce crowned?
- 7. What battle was fought shortly after his coronation? Date and result.
- 8. Where did Bruce pass the winter of 1306?
 - 9. When did he return to Scotland?

- 10. What battle was fought shortly after his arrival? Date and result.
- 11. What did Edward I, now determine to do?
 - 12. How was this prevented?
- 13. What further successes attended Bruce ?
- 14. What great battle was fought between him and Edward II.? Date and result.
- 15. For what purpose did Bruce pass
- over to Ireland?

 16. When and where was peace established between England and Scotland?
- 17. What were the principal articles of this treaty?
- 18. Where and when did Bruce die?

DAVID II.-A.D. 1329-A.D. 1371.

- Edward Baliol-Battle of Dupplin-Battle of Halidon Hill-Battle of Neville's Cross—David made Prisoner—Ransomed by his Subjects—Death of the King.
- 1. By whom was Bruce succeeded?
- 2. Who else claimed the crown? On what grounds?
 3. What battle was fought? Date
- and result. 4. What engagement afterwards took he afterwards endeavoured to make?
- place? Date and result.
 - 5. How did the struggle between the
- friends of David II. and the adherents of Baliol end?
- Where was David taken prisoner?
 How did he regain his liberty?
- 8. What was the nature of the treaty
- 9. Where and when did David die?



From the Accession of Robert II. to the Death of James III. A.D. 1371 to A.D. 1488.

ROBERT II	egan to reign	1371,	died	1390.
ROBERT III	- ,,	1390,	,,	1406.
JAMES I		1406,	,,	1437.
JAMES II	,,	1437,	,,	1460.
JAMES III		1460.		1488.

Accession of Robert II.—Battle of Otterbourne—Robert III.—State of the Country—Henry IV. Invades Scotland—Duke of Rothesay—His Imprisonment and Death—Capture of Prince James—Death of the King—James I.—Regency of Murdoch—Battle of Harlaw—The King Regains his Freedom—Nature of his Government—Sir Robert Graham—Conspiracy against James—Murder of the King—James II.—His Minority—The Douglases—State of Society—Earl of Douglas Murdered—Siege of Roxburgh Castle—Death of the King—James III.—The Boyds—Misfortunes of the King—His Attachment to Favourites—Conduct of his Son—Battle of Sauchieburn—Death of the King.

DAVID II. having died without children. Robert, the High Steward of Scotland, succeeded to the throne—an infirm old man of fifty-five years of age. He was the first of the famous house of Stuart, being the only child of Walter, the sixth High Steward, and Marjory, daughter of Robert Bruce. The most important events of this reign were the frequent wars between England and Scotland. James, Earl of Douglas, led a Scottish army across the Border, but was overtaken by Sir Henry Percy and his brother Ralph at Otterbourne, a village twelve miles from Newcastle. Here a desperate battle ensued, in which the brave Douglas fell A.D. 1388. mortally wounded. The Scots, not knowing the loss they had sustained, continued the battle, defeated the English, and took the two Percies prisoners. memorable engagement gave rise to the famous ballad of Chevy Chase. Robert II. died at his castle of Dundonald in Ayrshire, at the advanced age of seventy-five. having reigned nineteen years.

Robert III., eldest son of Robert II., next ascended the throne. His original name was John, but in view of the inglorious reigns of John Baliol of Scotland, and John Lackland of England, it was changed on his accession to that of Robert, a name endeared to the people as that which had been borne by their good King Robert Bruce. But the change of name was of no avail to shield the country from the anarchy and violence of those unhappy times. The people were rude and lawless, the nobles powerful and turbulent; and against such evils the weak and peace-loving character of Robert was but ill fitted to contend. On account of his incapacity to govern, the management of affairs was entrusted to his ambitious brother, Robert, earl of Fife, whom he afterwards created Duke of Albany. Much of this reign is occupied with internal dissensions; the contending chiefs and nobles spreading oppression and bloodshed through both Highlands and Lowlands.

Besides these internal feuds, the Scots and English A.D. 1400. were likewise engaged in almost constant war-fare. Henry IV. entered Scotland at the head of a large army, and laid siege to Edinburgh Castle, which the Duke of Rothesay, the king's eldest son, gallantly defended. This prince, although possessed of much courage, was extremely licentious, and his uncle Albany obtained permission from the king to arrest him, on the pretext of restraining his profligacy by a temporary confinement. His unnatural kinsman confined him in a dungeon in Falkland Palace, and, it is said. starved him to death. The king was now anxious to provide for the safety of his only surviving son, James. Acting on the advice of Wardlaw, bishop of St. Andrews, he resolved to send him to France. The vessel in which he sailed was taken by an English ship off Flamborough Head, and the young prince was carried captive to London, where he was kept a prisoner for eighteen years. The old king sank under these misfortunes, and, laden with years and infirmities, died at Rothesay, after a miserable reign of sixteen years.

The young monarch, James I., was now a captive in England, and for thirteen years the country was governed by Albany, and after his death by his son, Murdoch.

A.D. 1408. During the regency of the former, James Resby, a follower of Wycliffe, was burned at Perth as a heretic. Three years later, the University of St.

Andrews was founded by Bishop Wardlaw, and in the same year was fought the famous battle of Harlaw in Aberdeenshire, in which Donald, Lord of the Isles, who claimed the Earldom of Ross, was defeated by his rival, Alexander Stewart, earl of Mar.

During the few years Murdoch acted as regent, the country fell into a state of the utmost disorder. James, however, having recovered his freedom, returned to Scotland, and took the government into his own hands. was a monarch whose natural powers were of the highest order, and whose education in England had given him acquirements which he could not have attained in his own rude and ignorant realm. To curb the haughty barons, and restore law and justice, was no easy task, but James set about it with an able and determined spirit. Under his strict but wise government Scotland made rapid improvement; but an event occurred which cut him off in the midst of his reforms, and consigned the kingdom to all the evils of a minority. Sir Robert Grahame, who had been imprisoned at the commencement of this reign, had latterly, for certain treasonable practices, been again committed to prison, and his estates Having once more obtained his liberty, he retired to the Highlands, whence he sent a letter to James, upbraiding him as a tyrant, and adding, "You have made me houseless and landless. I renounce my allegiance, and I give you warning that, whenever I meet you, I will slay you as my mortal enemy." Grahame continued to lurk in the Highlands, and, in concert with certain discontented nobles, formed a plot for assassinating the king. James was residing at Blackfriars monastery at Perth, when one night after supper, and just before retiring to rest, the trampling of feet was heard outside the gates. This was Grahame, who, with three nundred armed men, was forcing his way to the royal presence. The king, suspecting their purpose, attempted in vain to escape by the windows; he then seized the tongs, and by main force wrenched up a board of the

floor, and let himself down into the vault underneath. His place of concealment was discovered, and Grahame, A.D. 1437. descending with his drawn sword, ran the king through the body, and despatched him with Thus fell James I., one of the ablest many wounds. monarchs that ever ruled in Scotland. The murderers fled to the Highlands, but were hotly pursued, and in the course of two months most of them were taken and executed. Grahame was put to death with horrible tortures, but he died glorying in his crime.

James II. succeeded his father when only six years of Sir William Crichton, the Chancellor, and Sir Alexander Livingstone, guardian of the king's person, were appointed joint regents, and they continued to administer the affairs of the kingdom until the king had attained his fourteenth year. They were both men of high talents, but almost constantly engaged in rivalry with one another. The misgovernment of the regents, and the licentious tyranny of Douglas and of the other nobles, produced such a state of rapine, oppression, and murder, that no one was safe. The aspiring house of Douglas now attained its highest pitch of pride and power, and the regents, by perfidious and sanguinary proceedings, attempted to crush this dangerous family. They decoved the Earl William, and his younger brother A.D. 1440. David, to Edinburgh Castle, and there abruptly accused them of treason. After being hurried through a form of trial, the two brothers were both beheaded in the back court of the castle.

James, now fourteen years of age, took the government into his own hands. Having placed himself under the guidance of Bishop Kennedy, he set himself to the difficult task of diminishing the power of the nobles. He first of all began with the powerful house of Douglas, and William, a succeeding earl of that family, having been made aware of the king's intention, formed a league with several of the nobility to set the royal authority at defiance, which did not fail to excite in the mind of James the highest indignation; but the mode he adopted to punish the too powerful offender cannot be justified. The earl was invited to a personal interview at Stirling, when he was entertained by the king in the castle. After supper the king took Douglas apart, and remonstrated with him on his late violent proceedings, and urged him to break the league he had formed. Douglas replied that his solemn faith was pledged to that bond, and declared that he would not break it for living man. "If you will not break it," answered the king, "this shall," and he plunged his dagger into Douglas's body. Sir Patrick Gray then felled Douglas to the ground with his battle-axe, and the other courtiers present struck the fallen earl with their daggers.

The murdered earl was succeeded by his brother, James Douglas, who, after a series of encounters with the nobles who adhered to the king, was defeated and compelled to take refuge in England. Relieved from the rivalship of the Douglases, James II. governed Scotland firmly. Taking advantage of the Civil War in England, he made an attempt to drive the English out of the castles of Roxburgh and Berwick. He laid siege to the former, but whilst watching the effect of a battery, one of the rude guns exploded, and a fragment striking the king, fractured his thigh, and killed him on the spot.

James III. succeeded to the throne in his eighth year, and was crowned in the abbey of Kelso during the siege of the castles of Roxburgh and Wark. So long as the Queen-mother and Bishop Kennedy survived, the country enjoyed the benefits of a wise and virtuous government, and the prince the advantage of a prudent and judicious education. But upon their death the power fell into the hands of the Boyds, who discouraged in the prince all attention to business, and fostered in him those desires which were the least likely to interrupt them in their own selfish and ambitious course. After a brief administration of three years, they lost the King's favour, their lands were confiscated, one of them was executed, and the rest were compelled to leave the kingdom. James, now

eighteen years of age, took the government into his own hands, but he rendered himself unpopular by being too much attached to low-born favourites. Cochrane, an architect, Rogers, a musician, Ireland, a man of literature and science, and Hommil, a tailor, were his chief associates. The King's two brothers, the Duke of Albany and the Earl of Mar, now began to conceive treasonable schemes for his dethronement. Albany was imprisoned in Edinburgh Castle, from which he made his escape to France; Mar was allowed to bleed to death in a warm

bath, whether by accident or design is unknown.

Albany, with an English force under the A.D. 1482. Duke of Gloucester, advanced in arms against his native country, and the Scottish army, with their sovereign at their head, marched as far as Lauder to oppose them. In a church of this village the discontented nobles held a council, in which it was resolved to remove the King's minions, who, they said, were usurping their place around the throne. While they were deliberating. Cochrane entered the council, but was immediately seized, and, with the rest of the obnoxious favourites. hanged over Lauder bridge. After this savage butchery. the nobles returned with their captive King to Edinburgh, and shut him up a prisoner in the castle. Through the intercession of Albany, James shortly afterwards obtained his freedom. The Earls of Argyle and Angus, with many other powerful barons, having obtained possession of the person of the King's eldest son, now offered him the crown, if he would join them in dethroning his father. The standard of insurrection was accordingly raised, and the discontented nobles with the young prince engaged in battle with the King's forces at Sauchieburn.

A.D. 1488. near Stirling. The royal troops were defeated, and James, flying from the scene of action, was thrown from his horse at the village of Milton. Being asked his name by the cottagers who carried him into their hut, he answered, "I was your King this morning," and desired them to fetch him a confessor. One of the enemy, who was in pursuit, pretending to be a priest, entered the hut,

and stabbed the King to the heart. The name of the murderer was never known. The King's body was buried at Cambuskenneth, near Stirling.

QUESTIONS.

From the Accession of Robert II. to the death of James III. A.D. 1371 to A.D. 1488.

- 1. Who was the first sovereign of the house of Stuart?
- 2. Account for the origin of the name. 3. What were the most important
- events in the reign of Robert II.? 4. Give the date and result of the battle of Otterbourne.
- 5. What famous ballad had its origin
- from this engagement? 6. When and where did the King die?

 - 7. Who succeeded Robert II.? 8. What was his original name?
 - 9. Why was it changed?
- 10. To whom was the management of affairs entrusted? 11. Who invaded Scotland during
- this reign? 12. For what purpose and with what
- result? 13. How did Albany act towards the
- King's eldest son?
- 14. Relate what happened to the King's second son.
 15. Who succeeded Robert III.?
 16. How long was James I. a captive
- in England? 17. Who acted as regent during most
- of that time? 18. What events mark the year 1411?
- 19. Who succeeded Albany in the
- 20. When James obtained his freedom what did he set himself to do?
- 21. Who conspired against the king? 22. Why had he a grudge against James?
- 23. Where was the King residing at this time?
- 24. State particulars regarding his assassination.
 - 25. By whom was he succeeded?

- 26. Who were appointed regents?27. How long did they manage the affairs of the kingdom?
- 28. Of what base treachery were they guilty?
- 29. How old was James when he took the government into his own hands? 30. What league gave the King un-
- easiness? 31. How did he attempt to break it
- up, and with what result? 32. Who succeeded the murdered
- Earl? 33. What steps did he take to avenge
- the death of his kinsman?
- 34. What afterwards became of him? 35. Relate the circumstances connected with the death of James II.
- 36. How old was James III. when he succeeded his father?
- 37. Who for a time managed the affairs of the government?
- 38. Into whose hands did this power afterwards fall?
- 39. What was the nature of their administration?
- 40. What ultimately befel them? 41 How old was James when he took the government into his own hands? 42. How did he render himself unpopular?
- 43. Who were the King's chief favourites?
- 44. Relate the conduct of the King's two brothers.
- 45. State what happened at Lauder. 46. What finally resulted from the bad feeling which existed between the
- King and his nobles? 47. Give the date and result of the battle.

··~

From the Accession of James IV. to the Union of the Crowns of England and Scotland, A.D 1488 to A.D 1603.

JAMES IV			
JAMES V	,,	1513 1542	
JAMES VI	"	1567	

JAMES IV.-1488 to 1513.

Accession of James IV.—Exploits of Sir Andrew Wood—Rebellions in the Highlands—War with England—Battle of Flodden Field—Death of the King.

James IV. was in his sixteenth year when he ascended the throne, and was crowned at Scone two weeks after his father's death. The first year of his reign passed away in a course of gaiety and dissipation, interrupted only by occasional fits of remorse for the unnatural part he had taken in the rebellion against his father.

In 1489, Sir Andrew Wood of Largo gained great renown for his exploits by sea. With only two ships, he captured five English vessels that were plundering the Scottish merchantmen, and carried his prizes into Leith. Henry VII., enraged at this, offered a reward for the capture of Wood; and an English captain, named Stephen Bull, set out with three ships strongly manned, but after an obstinate engagement was himself taken by the Scotch admiral, and carried into Dundee.

James, with all his love for amusements and devotion to the sports of chivalry, was not neglectful of his duties as a King. In A.D. 1497, he made a progress in the time of winter as far as Inverness, to repress the violence of the Highland chiefs. After much personal exertion, he succeeded in introducing a certain degree of respect for the laws among the fierce inhabitants of the northern counties.

A.D. 1502. James married Margaret, eldest daughter of Henry VII., and so long as the sceptre of England was swayed by that monarch, peace was maintained between the countries; but on the accession of Henry VIII. war soon became inevitable. Henry in vaded France, and James, to serve his French ally,

immediately declared war against England. He crossed the Border with an army of one hundred thousand men, but instead of pressing forward while the English were unprepared, he continued to linger in the neighbourhood of the Tweed, till the number of his troops had become reduced to about thirty thousand. meantime, the Earl of Surrey had collected an army of about thirty-two thousand men to oppose him. was posted on Flodden Hill in so strong a position that Surrey, finding an assault from the south hopeless, led his army across the Till, and by a circuit placed himself to the north of the Scottish army, thus depriving the King of all communication with Scotland. During this manœuvre Surrey exposed himself to certain defeat had James attacked his army in flank. This unaccountable oversight proved fatal to Scotland. The battle began at four in the afternoon, and was maintained with great valour and obstinacy, but it was not till next morning that the Scots were aware of their defeat, and the English sure of their victory. About an equal number fell on each side; the English lost only men of common rank, but the best and bravest of Scotland's sons were left dead on the field. The King and thirteen earls were slain, besides fifteen lords and chiefs of clans, with a long list of gentry, and ten thousand of the common rank; the whole Scottish nation was thrown into mourning, and the fatal field of Flodden is still remembered as one of the greatest calamities that ever befel the kingdom of Scotland.

QUESTIONS.

1. How old was James IV. when he ascended the throne?
2. How did he spend the first year of

his reign?
3. What famous Scottish seaman

lived during this reign? 4. Mention some of his exploits.

5. What event marks the year 1497?

6. Whom did James marry? Date? 7. What benefit did the country de- of the battle. rive from this marriage?

8. Under what circumstances did James invade England?
9. What was the number of his

army?
10. Who was the English commander?

Number of his army?
11. What fatal mistake did James

make?

12. Give the name, date, and result

JAMES V.-1513 to 1542.

Accession of James V.—Regency of Albany—James assumes the government— His Marriage—Quarrels with Henry VIII.—Scotland invaded—Death of the King—Protestant Martyrs.

James IV. was succeeded by his son, James V., who was only eighteen months old at the time of his father's For a time the government was vested in the hands of the Queen-dowager, Margaret, but in consequence of her marriage with Archibald, Earl of Angus, she was deprived of her power, and the office of Regent conferred on the King's uncle, the Duke of Albany. After a feeble rule of eight years the Duke resigned his office, and went to France. Angus now administered the affairs of the kingdom, and having obtained possession of the young King's person, his power was greatly increased; but his pride and insolence caused him to be greatly disliked by the nobles, who eagerly desired to deliver their sovereign from the bondage of the haughty earl. A favourable opportunity having occurred, the King con-A.D. 1528. trived to escape from Falkland at an early hour in the morning, and reach Stirling at break of day.

When Parliament met, the Angus family and their adherents were deprived of their honours and estates, and many of them were banished from the kingdom. The King now took the government into his own hands, and soon gave evidence of his determination to enforce obedience and respect to the laws. He first advanced against the clans inhabiting the borders of Scotland, and compelled them to acknowledge his authority; he next proceeded to the Highlands, and in a short time succeeded in bringing the warlike chiefs of the north into a state of comparative subjection. In A.D. 1536, James crossed over to France, and in the following year married the Princess Magdalen, daughter of Francis I. She survived her marriage only a few weeks, and in the same year the King took for his second wife Mary of Lorraine, daughter of the Duke of Guise.

The English monarch, Henry VIII., after his separa-

tion from Rome, endeavoured to persuade James to do the same, and for that purpose Henry desired an interview with his nephew at York; but, acting on A.D. 1541. the advice of the Archbishop of St. Andrews and other ecclesiastics. James remained in his own dominions. The English monarch's pride was wounded: and an army, under the Duke of Norfolk, was sent to invade Scotland. James immediately collected his forces, to the number of thirty thousand, and marching southwards, encamped at Fala, where he was informed that Norfolk had retreated. The King would have advanced in pursuit of the enemy, but the nobles refused to set foot on English soil. James, in a violent passion, upbraided them as cowards, and having raised another army, marched southwards to the borders of Cumberland: Oliver Sinclair, one of his favourites, was appointed commander, but the nobles refused to fight under his leadership, and the utmost confusion prevailed throughout the whole army. The English, observing the universal disorder, suddenly attacked them at Solway Moss, and quickly put to route the whole of the Scottish The King, on hearing of the defeat of his troops, was so overcome with grief that he shut himself up in Falkland Palace, where he died of a A.D. 1542. broken heart, in the thirty-first year of his age, and thirtieth of his reign.

QUESTIONS.

- 1. How old was James V. at the time | of his father's death?
- 2. Who acted as regents?
 8. Whom did the Queen-mother marry?
- 4. How long did Albany act as regent? 5. By whom was he succeeded?
- 6. What circumstance tended to in-
- crease his power?
 7. To whom did he give offence? How?
 8. When did the King escape from Falkland?
 - 9. What became of the Angus family? effect had it upon James?

- 10. What measures did the King take to enforce obedience to the laws?

 - 11. Whom did James first marry?12. Who was his second wife?13. How did the King give offence to
- Henry VIII.?

 14. What was the consequence?

 15. Where did James lead another
- army?
 16. What threw this army into con-
- fusion? 17. What was the result, and what

MARY QUEEN OF SCOTS.-A.D. 1542-A.D. 1567.

Mary's Minority—Arran Appointed Regent—Schemes of Henry VIII.—Battle of Pinkie—Mary Marries the Dauphin—Claims the English Crown—The Reformation—Mary's Marriage with Darnley—Murder of Rizzio—Murder of Darnley—Mary Marries Bothwell—Queen taken Prisoner to Lochleven—Mary Escapes from Lochleven—Seeks Refuge in England—Imprisoned by Order of Elizabeth—Plots formed against Elizabeth—Mary Executed.

James V. was succeeded by his daughter Mary, an infant scarcely eight days old. The commencement of her reign was marked by violent quarrels among the nobility about the management of affairs. Beaton tried to show that the late King, in his will, had named him Regent, but his pretensions were set aside, and the Earl of Arran was entrusted with the government. Henry VIII. wished to marry his son Edward to the young Queen, but the Regent and Council having refused to accede to this proposal, the English monarch declared A.D. 1547. war against Scotland. At Pinkie, near Musselburgh, the Duke of Somerset gained a great victory over the Scots, 10,000 of whom were left dead on the field, and 1500 taken prisoners. After plundering Leith, Somerset recrossed the border, and entered London laden with spoil.

Mary, when six years of age, was sent to France, and, A.D. 1558, was married to the Dauphin, who afterwards became King, under the title of Francis II. months after Mary's marriage, Elizabeth ascended the throne of England, but the court of France, not considering that the English themselves were to be held the best judges of the title of their own Queen, resolved, in an evil hour, to put forward the claim of the Scottish Queen to the English crown, as being the grand-daughter of Margaret, eldest sister of Henry VIII. Money was coined, and plate wrought, in which Mary, with her husband Francis, assumed the style, title, and armorial bearings of England, as well as Scotland, and thus laid the foundation of that deadly hatred between Elizabeth and Mary which afterwards led to such fatal consequences.

Shortly after the death of Francis, A.D. 1560, Mary returned to Scotland, which for a long time had been

the scene of religious strife and faction. Between the Catholics on the one hand and the Scottish reformers on the other, a long series of hostilities had continued, but the struggle ended in the triumph of the principles of the reformed religion, of which John Knox was the

A.D. 1565.

great leading spirit.

Mary took for her second husband her cousin, Lord Darnley, eldest son of the Earl of Lennox. The marriage proved unfortunate. In a short time Mary lost all affection for her husband, and Darnley, believing that one Rizzio, an Italian musician, was mainly responsible for the Queen's estrangement, lent himself to a plot for putting that unfortunate foreigner to death. Whilst sitting at supper with the Queen and some of her attendants in



HOLYROOD PALACE.

a private apartment in Holyrood, the conspirators entered, and, dragging the unhappy Italian into an adjoining room, despatched him with no less than fifty-six wounds. In the same year Mary gave birth to a son, who afterwards became James Sixth of Scotland, and First of England.

Mary never forgave Darnley for the part he took in the murder of Rizzio, though she became so far reconciled as to visit him when lying ill of the small-pox in Glasgow. At her request he was removed to Edinburgh and lodged in a solitary house called Kirk-of-Field. In a few days a dreadful explosion took place, the house was 9th Feb... blown up, and the dead body of Darnley was found in an adjoining field, but with no marks of violence.

Mary Marries Bothwell—Taken Prisoner to Lochleven Castle
—Her Escape—Seeks Refuge in England—Imprisoned
by order of Elizabeth—Plots formed against Elizabeth—
Mary Executed.

Public opinion pointed to Bothwell as the perpetrator of the murder of Darnley, and Mary herself was suspected of having a share in it. This suspicion was strengthened by her subsequent conduct. On the 15th May, she committed the great folly of marrying Bothwell, stained as he was with the blood of her husband. Such proceedings excited universal indignation; not only the Protestants, but many of the Catholics resolved to enter into a confederacy against their Queen. They quickly assembled their forces, and Mary and Bothwell also collected a number of troops. Both parties met at Carberry Hill, but Mary, seeing no hope of success, surrendered. Bothwell fled, and was afterwards seized as a pirate, and ended his days in a prison in Norway. Mary was conveyed from Holyrood to Lochleven Castle, where she was compelled to resign her crown in favour of her infant son, who was proclaimed King under the title of James VI.

In the following year Mary escaped from the Castle, and after an engagement at Langside, in which she was defeated, she fled to England. Having vainly endeavoured to obtain an interview with Elizabeth, the English Government ordered her to be detained as a state prisoner. During her captivity various conspiracies had been formed by the Catholics to deprive Elizabeth of her crown, and

place Mary on the throne of England. That which ultimately decided her fate was a plot formed by Anthony Babington, and a number of Catholic gentlemen, against the life of Elizabeth. Mary was accused of being accessory to the plot, and was brought to trial before a commission at Fotheringay. She was found guilty and condemned to death. Some time elapsed before Elizabeth could be induced to sign a warrant for the execution of the sentence pronounced on Queen Mary; at last, with seeming reluctance, she consented, and six days after, the unfortunate Mary Stuart was beheaded in the great hall of Fotheringay Castle, in the forty-fifth year of her age, and nineteenth of her captivity.

QUESTIONS.

1. How old was Mary at the time of her father's death?

2. What took place at the commencement of her reign?

3. Who was appointed Regent? 4. What proposal was made by Henry VIII.?

- 5. What battle followed? Date and
- 6. Who was Mary's first husband?
- Date of the marriage? 7. Who ascended the throne of England at this time?
- 8. What claim was put forward by the court of France in favour of Mary? 9. To what did this afterwards lead?
 - 10. When did Francis die?
- 11. Who were the two contending parties in Scotland?
- 12. How did the struggle between them end?
- 13. Whom did Mary take for her second husband?

- 14. Who afterwards became her favourite? What was his fate? Date.
- 15. What happened to Darnley? Date. 16. Who was accused of his murder?
- 17. What caused suspicion to rest upon Mary?
- 18. How soon after the murder did her marriage with Bothwell take place? 19. What did her nobles do?
- 20. Where did both parties meet, and what was the result? Date.
 21. Where was Mary imprisoned?
 22. What was she there compelled to
- do?
- 23. When did she escape? 24. What engagement followed? State
- the result. 25. Where did Mary then go?
- 26. How was she treated by Elizabeth?
- 27. What ultimately decided her fate? 23. Where and when was she executed?

JAMES VI.—A.D. 1567.—A.D. 1603.

Accession of James VI .- State of the Country-King's Favourites-Raid of Ruthven-Presbyterianism Established-Catholic Plot-Gowrie Conspiracy.

JAMES VI. became King of Scotland when thirteen months old. During his long minority the Earls of Moray, Lennox, Mar, and Morton, successively acted as Regents of the kingdom. When about thirteen years of age, James nominally assumed the administration of affairs, but gave himself up to the guidance of unworthy favourites, on whom he conferred the highest honours. The chief of these were Esmé Stuart and Captain James Stuart, the former was created Duke of Lennox, and the latter was raised to the dignity of Earl of Arran. The nobles resolved to deliver the King from the power of a.D. 1582. Such favourites, and for that purpose laid hold of him at Ruthven Castle in Perthshire, imprisoned Arran, and banished Lennox from the kingdom. These proceedings are known in Scottish history as the Raid of Ruthven. In a short time James regained his freedom, and immediately restored Arran to power.

A remarkable and somewhat mysterious attempt was A.D. 1600. next made on the life of the King by John Ruthven, Earl of Gowrie, and his brother Alexander, the Master of Ruthven. This singular occurrence is known in history as the Gowrie Conspiracy. The King was residing at Falkland, when Alexander invited him to come to the Earl's house at Perth. James complied. and, on his arrival, was conducted through several apartments, and at length taken to a small room, where he met a person fully armed. Ruthven suddenly drew his dagger, and held it to the breast of the King, threatening to despatch him. A struggle ensued, and the King's attendants hearing their royal master calling for help, instantly came to the rescue. The King escaped, and the Earl and his brother were slain. Three years after this event Elizabeth died, and the crowns of England and Scotland then became united in the person of James, who assumed the title of King of Great Britain and Ireland, A.D. 1603.

QUESTIONS.

^{1.} How old was James VI, when he became King of Scotland?
2. Who successively acted as Re-

^{2.} Who successively acted as Regents?
3. Mention the names of some of the

^{3.} Mention the names of some of the King's favourites?

^{4.} What is meant by the Raid of Ruthven? Date.
5. State what you know about the

^{5.} State what you know about the Gowrie Conspiracy.
6. What event is known in history as the Union of the Crowns? Date.

HOUSE OF STUART (IN ENGLAND).

JAMES Ibegan	to re	eign	1603.	died	1625.
CHARLES I,					
The COMMONWEALTHlasted	fron	ï	1649	to	1660.
CHARLES IIbegan	to r	eign	1660,	died	1685.
JAMES IIreigne	d fro	m	1685	to	1688.
WILLIAM AND MARY	••	••	1689	,,	1694.
WILLIAMreigned ald	one fi	rom	1694,	died	1702.
ANNE. began					

CHAPTER I.

JAMES 1.—1603-1625.

James s Personal History—His Jonrney to London—His Coronation—Raleigh's Conspiracy—Hampton Court Conference—The Guupowder Plot—The King's Favourites—Proposed Spanish Match—Death and Character of the King—General Facts.

James's Personal History.

James I. of England and VI. of Scotland, the son of Mary Queen of Scots, by her second husband, Lord Darnley, was born in the castle of Edinburgh, 19th June, 1566. He married the Princess Anne of Denmark, by whom he had two sons and one daughter: Henry, who died at the age of nineteen; Charles, who succeeded to the throne of England; and the Princess Elizabeth, who was married to Frederick, Elector Palatine of Bavaria, through whom our present Queen derives her descent from the Stuarts.

The King's Journey to London—His Coronation.

James derived his title to the throne of England from Margaret, eldest daughter of Henry VII., and Queen of his great-grandfather, James IV. On receiving intelligence of the death of Elizabeth, he set out from Edinburgh in the beginning of April 1603, and arrived in London about six weeks afterwards. At each stage of his journey he was met with every demonstration of loyalty, but before he reached the metropolis his popularity had con-

siderably diminished. His English subjects were disappointed with his appearance and demeanour; he did not look like a king; his person was dirty and slovenly; his manners coarse and vulgar, and his conduct dissipated. He endeavoured to procure the favour of his subjects by a lavish distribution of titles. In less than three months seven hundred persons received the honour of knighthood. Such marks of distinction became so common, that their value fell greatly in public estimation. James and his Queen were crowned at Westminster on the 17th July 1603. The crowns of England and Scotland now became united, and James assumed the title of King of Great Britain and Ireland.

Raleigh's Conspiracy—Hampton Court Conference.

Immediately after James's coronation, a conspiracy was formed in favour of his cousin, Lady Arabella Stuart, who, as well as the King, was a descendant of Henry VII. Although ignorant of the plot, Arabella was treated with great harshness by the King, and ultimately sent to the Tower, where she died insane. Sir Walter Raleigh and Lord Cobhain were accused of being the authors of the conspiracy, and were condemned to death, but the capital sentence was commuted to one of imprisonment. Raleigh was detained in the Tower for thirteen years, but having informed the King of a rich gold mine in South America, which had hitherto been unworked, he regained his liberty, and set sail for Guiana, to take possession of the The Spaniards opposed his landing, and after making several fruitless attacks on their settlements, he was compelled to return to England. James, in the meantime, was negotiating a marriage for his son with the court of Spain, and to gratify the government of that country, gave orders that the sentence formerly passed upon Raleigh should be put into execution. The illustrious admiral, navigator, and statesman, was beheaded within the Tower (A.D. 1618).

The Puritans had already presented a petition to the King for certain reforms in the English Church. James accordingly appointed a conference, composed of a number of bishops and the chief Puritan divines, to meet at Hampton Court, in order to discuss the A.D. 1604. leading points of difference between the two parties. The King himself took part in the discussion, and after three meetings had been held, the result proved highly favourable to the Established Church. At the same conference a new translation of the Bible was ordered, which was finished in A.D. 1611, and is still our authorised version of the Scriptures.

The Gunpowder Plot.

The Catholics, on account of their religion, had suffered much persecution in the time of Elizabeth, and on the accession of James they expected that matters would take a turn in their favour. Such, however, was not the case. The laws of the late Queen were now more rigorously enforced, and this increased severity led to the formation of a scheme which had for its object the destruction of the King and the whole of his Parliament. This atrocious project, which was termed the Gunpowder Plot, was first conceived by Robert Catesby, who hoped thereby to succeed in re-establishing the Catholic religion in England. Four Catholics of family and fortune, Wright, Winter, Percy, and Fawkes, were, with some others, his willing accomplices. Their purpose was discovered just in time to prevent its accomplishment. One of the conspirators wrote an anonymous letter to Lord Monteagle, a Catholic peer, warning him of an impending danger, and advising him not to be present at the opening of Parliament, which was to assemble on the 5th of A.D. 1605. November. The letter was shown to Cecil, Earl of Salisbury, and afterwards to the King, who ordered a search to be made in the vaults of the Houses of Parliament. Here were discovered barrels of gunpowder, and Guy Fawkes anxiously inspecting the final arrangements for the explosion. The other conspirators, on hearing that Fawkes had been arrested, fled from London with all possible speed, but in their flight many of them were killed. The survivors were immediately seized and brought to trial, and Fawkes and several others were executed as traitors.

The King's Favourites.

James permitted a mean feeling for unworthy favourites to follow him across the Borders. Of these the most distinguished were Robert Carr, a Scotchman, and George Villiers, son of a Leicestershire knight. The former was advanced to the peerage, and, on his marriage with the Countess of Essex, was created Earl of Somerset. After continuing in power for a number of years, the royal favour was conferred on George Villiers, who, like his predecessor, was eminently successful in pleasing his royal master, who raised him to the dignity of Duke of Buckingham. The nation became indignant, and the nobility, in particular, felt disgusted at the almost unlimited power possessed by this minion of the King.

Proposed Spanish Match—Death and Character of the King.

When James wished his son Charles to marry the daughter of Philip III. of Spain, Buckingham accompanied the Prince to the Court of Spain, to make the necessary arrangements for the marriage. "The two sweet boys," as James called them, travelled in disguise, each under the name of Smith. On reaching the Spanish capital, the heir-apparent of the English crown was well received by Philip and his court. The marriage articles were all arranged, but when it became known in England that Charles was about to connect himself with a Catholic princess, the Protestant spirit of the nation was aroused, and the Parliament directed the Prince to come home with as little delay as possible. Buckingham had rendered himself obnoxious to the Spanish Court by his arrogance and licentiousness, and on his return he advised the Parliament to give no countenance to the proposed To the great delight of the Commons and of the nation, the match was broken off, and the people now became loud in the praises of Buckingham.

The King gave his consent to the Prince's marriage with Henrietta Maria, daughter of Henry IV. of France; but before the marriage took place, James died, after a short illness, at his palace of Theobalds A.D. 1625. in Hertfordshire, and was afterwards buried in Westminster Abbey.

The character of this monarch has often been sketched. Sully described him to his master, the King of France, as

"the wisest fool in Christendom."

GENERAL FACTS.

In this reign Hudson's Bay and Greenland were discovered. James laboured hard but unsuccessfully to supersede Presbyterianism by Episcopacy in his northern dominions. He did much for Ireland, and the superiority of the province of Ulster in industry and the useful arts is due to his exertions. This consideration might teach the Irish of the present day how to redress grievances, and develop the resources of their long distressed country.

SUMMARY OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I.

A.D. 1603---A.D. 1625.

James I., son of Mary Queen of Scots and Darnley. Born at Edinburgh, A.D. 1566. Married Anne of Denmark, by whom he had two sons and one daughter. Died at Theobalds in Hertfordshire, A.D. 1629.

A conspiracy was formed by Sir Walter Raleigh and Lord Cobham to place Lady Arabella Stuart on the throne. Raleigh was tried and condemned, but the sentence was not carried out till A.D. 1618. A Church Conference at the instance of the Puritans was held at Hampton Court, A.D. 1604. The Gunpowder Plot, formed by a number of Catholics for the destruction of the King and his Parliament, was discovered A.D. 1605. The favourites of the King were Robert Carr and George Villiers, the former created Earl of Somerset, and the latter Duke of Buckingham. Negotiations were entered into for a marriage between Prince Charles and the Infanta of Spain, but the match was broken of, and Charles afterwards married Henrietta Maria of France.

QUESTIONS

James's Personal History-King's Journey to London and Coronation — Raleigh's Conspiracy — Hampton Court Conference.

- 1. Relate the personal history of James I.
- 2. How did he derive his title to the throne of England?
- 3. Give particulars regarding his Raleigh put to death? Date.

 9. What was the nature of the Con-
- 4. By what means did he seek to
- obtain the favour of his subjects? 5. State what you know about agreed to at this meeting?
- Raleigh's conspiracy.
- 6. How did Raleigh obtain his liberty?
- 7. State the result of this expedition. 8. Under what circumstances was
- ference at Hampton Court? Date.
- 10. What important measure was

The Gunpowder Plot—King's Favourites—Proposed Spanish Match—Death of the King—General Facts.

- 1. What did the Catholics expect on | the accession of James?
- 2. How were they treated by the King?
- 3. To what did such treatment lead?
 4. Who first formed the idea of the
- Gunpowder Plot? 5. What was his object? Who were
- some of his accomplices? 6. Relate the circumstances which
- led to the discovery of the plot. 7. Who ordered a search to be made in the vaults of the Houses of Parlia-
- ment? 8. State what followed. Date of the in this reign?

- 9. Who were the chief favourites of the King?
- 10. To what dignity was each raised! 11. Whom did James wish his son Charles to marry?
- 12. Who was appointed to make the
- necessary arrangements?

 13. How did the negotiations end? 14. Whom did Charles afterwards
- marry?
- 15. When and where did James die! 16. What description did Sully give of him?
- 17. What general facts are recorded



CHAPTER II.

CHARLES I.—1625-1640.

Charles's Personal History—His First Three Parliaments—War with Spain and France—Petition of Right—Strafford and Laud—Ship Money and John Hampden—Episcopacy and the Covenanters—The Long Parliament—The Civil War—Career of Montroee in Scotland—Cromwell and the Army—Trial and Execution of the King.

Charles's Personal History.

The first-born son of James being dead, Charles, the second son, now in his twenty-fifth year, ascended the vacant throne. He was born at Dunfermline, a town in Fife, noted in early Scottish history as a royal residence, and still more so as a place of royal sepulture. Charles married Henrietta of France, to whom he had been betrothed a short time before his father's death. The issue of this marriage was three sons and three daughters: Charles, afterwards Charles II.; James, afterwards James II.; Henry, Duke of Gloucester; Mary, who married the Prince of Orange; Elizabeth, who died a prisoner in Carisbrooke Castle; and Henrietta Maria, who married Philip, Duke of Orleans.

Charles's First Three Parliaments—War with Spain and France—Petition of Right.

The date of this monarch's accession marks the commencement of one of the most critical and distressing periods in British history. The character and conduct of James had unsettled the popular regard for royalty, and awakened a democratic influence. Charles had many kingly qualities, but he inherited from his father a weak fondness for favourites, and a love of absolute power. Five days after his marriage with Henrietta Maria he met his first Parliament, and demanded supplies for carrying on the war with Spain. This Parliament, which was mainly composed of Puritans, voted him a sum quite inadequate to meet the wants of the government. He therefore dissolved it, and endeavoured to

raise money by forced loans, and by other arbitrary means.

Acting on the advice of Buckingham, Charles sent out an expedition to Cadiz, in the hope of replenishing his diminished exchequer. But the attempt proved a signal failure, and the King was obliged to call a second Parliament. On its meeting, Buckingham was impeached as the author of the war with Spain, but, to save his favourite, Charles had again recourse to a summary dissolution.

Compelled by necessity, he once more betook himself to raise money by illegal taxation and other unconstitutional In this state of affairs he allowed himself, at the instigation of Buckingham, to declare war against France, on pretence of assisting the Huguenots, or French Protest ants, who were besieged by Cardinal Richelieu in their stronghold at La Rochelle. An expedition, under the command of Buckingham, set out to the relief of the place, but the enterprise proved unsuccessful, and its commander returned home after having lost more than half the number of his troops. Two other expeditions followed, but both failed in their efforts to afford assistance to the besieged city. A third was to start under Buckingham, but, when about to embark at Portsmouth, he fell by the hands of an assassin named Felton. expedition then sailed under the command of the Earl of Lindsay, but accomplished nothing, and the town was at last taken by Richelieu.

This failure abroad, and the conduct of the King at home, excited universal indignation throughout the country. Charles, having exhausted all his illegal exactions, found it necessary to call a third Parliament, which at once proceeded to draw up the celebrated Petition of Right, to which, under the pressure of his necessitous circumstances, he reluctantly and insincerely assented. This petition declared the illegality (1) of taxation without the consent of Parliament; (2) of penalties for resisting such taxation; (3) of billeting soldiers and sailors on private individuals; and (4) of

inflicting punishment by martial law. When Parliament met the following year it remonstrated with the King for having levied, of his own accord, certain duties called tonnage and poundage. This the Commons considered as a violation of the Petition of Right, and they passed a resolution declaring that whoever should pay such duties should be accounted an enemy to the liberty of the subject. Shortly after, the infatuated monarch dissolved his third Parliament, and resolved never to call another, A.D. 1629.

Strafford and Laud—Ship-Money and John Hampden.

Charles now resolved to govern without Parliaments, and concluded a peace with France and Spain. He placed himself under the guidance of Thomas Wentworth. Earl of Strafford, and Laud, Bishop of London, who was afterwards raised to be Archbishop of Canterbury. ecclesiastical matters Laud obtained complete ascendency over the mind of the King, and was allowed to treat sectaries of every kind with the utmost severity. Leighton, a Scotch divine, was dragged by this intolerant prelate before the Court of High Commission for writing a book against bishops. He was condemned, and put in the pillory; his ears were cut off and his nose slit, and he was then thrown into prison, where he remained for eleven years. In consequence of the increasing severities practised by Laud, many of the Puritans resolved to emigrate to America, where the "Pilgrim Fathers" founded the colony of Massachusetts.

The Earl of Strafford worked the Court of Star Chamber as cruelly as Laud did that of High Commission. The former condemned one Prynne, a barrister, to the same fate as Leighton, for writing a book against stage plays, in which the Queen's name was lightly spoken of. A reign of terror was inaugurated by these despotic ministers. The imposition of ship-money brought matters to a crisis, and roused the nation to resistance. John Hampden, a gentleman of Buckinghamshire, refused to pay the tax; his case was tried in a court of law, and a decision was given against him, but

he has ever since enjoyed the reputation of a patriot, and his name is still dear to the cause of freedom.

Episcopacy and the Covenanters.

New troubles awaited Charles. Having visited Edinburgh in company with Laud, he formed the design of imposing on Scotland, as a part of her national worship, that gorgeous ritual which his favourite prelate had introduced into England. This ill-advised attempt prepared the Scottish mind for stern resistance, and accordingly, when Charles directed the English liturgy to be introduced into the pulpits of the national churches, the nation became ripe for an explosion. No sooner had the Dean of Edinburgh commenced the new form of service in St. Giles's Church, than Jenny Geddes. "a godly woman," who kept a cabbage stall in the Tron. threw her stool at his head, exclaiming at the same time. "Fause loon! dost thou say mass at my lug?" was the signal for universal uproar. Wild clamours interrupted the service. Women, or, as was then suspected, men in women's dress, rushed towards the desk, and the Dean, disengaging himself from his surplice, with difficulty escaped from their hands. The Bishop of Edinburgh, ascending the pulpit, entreated the people to respect the sacredness of the place, and to reflect on the duty they owed to their God and their King. harangue only increased the tumult. Stones, bricks, and other missiles were thrown at the pulpit, and the interference of the magistrates was necessary to save the bishop's life."

In the following year, a very crowded assembly met in the Greyfriar's Church, Edinburgh, where, after solemn exhortation and prayer, the nobility, gentry, clergy, and a.D. 1638. burgesses, subscribed the Solemn League and Covenant, to which, with uplifted hands, they swore to adhere for the defence of their liberty and religion. They appointed General Leslie, who had served with distinction in Germany, to take command of their troops. A formidable array of twenty thousand blue

bonnets marched to the Borders, where they were met by Charles at the head of his forces. The King, finding his soldiers not disposed to fight against so formidable a body of men, was inclined to listen to their demands. these he at length agreed, and signed a treaty by which he promised to allow all ecclesiastical matters to be settled by the General Assembly, and all civil matters by the Parliament. This arrangement, however, failed to establish peace, so that both parties again prepared for Charles finding further supplies necessary, summoned his fourth Parliament, but the Commons A.D. 1640. were more disposed to discuss grievances than to grant money. After a session of three weeks, the "Short Parliament," as this one has been called, was dissolved. Charles trusted to be able to surprise the Covenanters before they had time to collect their forces. Leslie, however, was prepared; he crossed the Tweed, defeated the Royal forces at Newburn-on-Tyne, and took possession of Newcastle and Durham. A treaty was now entered into at Ripon, by which it was agreed that hostilities should cease, and that the Scots should receive a weekly subsidy of £5600 during their stay in England.

The Long Parliament, A.D. 1640.

This memorable assembly, called on account of its duration the "Long Parliament," met on the 3rd November 1640, and continued till it was turned out by Cromwell in 1653. It was not finally dissolved, however, till 1660. It did not at all sympathise with the King in his difficulties, but proceeded to augment them by impeaching his favourite ministers, Strafford and Laud. former was condemned to death, and although Charles had promised him his protection, he nevertheless allowed his too faithful minister to be delivered up to the fury of This want of firmness on Charles's part his enemies. afterwards caused him deep regret. Strafford was executed on Tower Hill. Laud met a similar fate in 1645. The King next gave his assent to a statute enacting that the present Parliament should not be dissolved, prorogued,

or adjourned, without its own consent. The Courts of Star Chamber and High Commission were abolished; ship-money was declared to be illegal, as well as all kinds of taxes levied without the consent of Parliament. "The whole fabric of absolutism was shattered like a glass-house."

When Parliament re-assembled, another Remonstrance was drawn up and presented by the Commons to the King. It contained a list of all the grievances since his accession, and, at the same time, urged upon him the necessity of allowing himself to be guided by advisers having the confidence of Parliament. The feeling against Charles daily increased, and the aggressions of the Parliament still continuing, Charles madly attempted to seize Pym and Hampden, with three other members, but on arriving at the House he found they had escaped. Commons now claimed command of the army, but when the King was urged to give his assent to this demand, at least for a time, he exclaimed with much vehemence, "No, not for an hour." Being convinced that the time for decisive action had now arrived, he proceeded to York with a number of friends, to make final preparations for the impending struggle.

The Civil War, A.D. 1642.

Charles raised his standard at Nottingham, and upon it was inscribed the motto, "Give Cæsar his due." The two parties engaged in this struggle were distinguished as Cavaliers and Roundheads. The former were ranged under the royal banner, and consisted of the principal nobility and gentry of the kingdom, while the latter swelled the ranks of the Parliamentary army, which was chiefly composed of the tradesmen and common people of London and the central counties. The Earl of Lindsay commanded the Cavaliers, and the Roundheads were placed under the leadership of the Earl of Essex. The chief command of the Royalist cavalry was committed to Prince Rupert, the King's nephew. The first general engagement between the combatants took place on a

Sunday, at **Edgehill** in Warwickshire. Charles was present, clad in complete armour. The conflict was severe, but ended in a drawn battle. Earl 23rd Oct., Lindsay was mortally wounded, and the loss on both sides is said to have been nearly equal.

In the following spring Essex assumed the offensive, and compelled the surrender of Reading. Prince Rupert was victorious in a sharp encounter at Chalgrove near Oxford; it was in this engagement A.D. 1643. that the celebrated John Hampden received his mortal wound. The cause of Charles seemed hopeful. At Atherton Moor in Yorkshire, Rounding Down in Wiltshire, and particularly at Stratton in Devonshire, and Bristol, victory shone on the royal standards. Charles next laid siege to Gloucester, but here the tide of fortune turned against him. The city was relieved by Essex, and the great battle of Newbury in Berkshire followed. Night closed on that bloody field 20th Sept., before either party gave way. The loss on both sides was great, and the result of the contest doubtful.

Negotiations were now entered into between the Scotch Covenanters and the English Parliament. The former agreed to effect an alliance with the latter, on condition that the Parliament would sign the "Solemn League and Covenant." The terrible campaign of 1644 was commenced by 20,000 Scottish troops, who crossed the borders under the command of General Leslie, now Earl of Leven. The great military events of this year were the defeat of the Royalists at Nantwich in Cheshire, the defeat of the Parliamentary army under Waller defeat of the Parliamentary army under wanter at Cropredy Bridge in Oxford, and the great A.D. 1644. battle of Long Marston Moor in Yorkshire, in which Oliver Cromwell, commanding his Ironsides. displayed his splendid military genius. The consequences of this action were most disastrous to the royal cause. York and Newcastle surrendered, and a second battle at Newbury (Oct. 27), which ended in favour of the Parliament, brought the campaign to a close. Another bloody fight had yet to take place, and then the overthrow of the King was complete. The opposing hosts met at Naseby in Northampton-shire, and, after a desperate battle, the hopes of the Royalists were finally extinguished.

Career of Montrose in Scotland.

The devoted courage of a few noblemen protracted the war for about a year longer. The celebrated James Graham, Marquis of Montrose, had run a brilliant career in Scotland in support of Charles's hopeless struggle. This courageous Royalist gained in rapid succession the following victories: Tippermuir near Perth, Inverlochy in Inverness, Dundee in Forfar, Auldearn near Nairn, Alford in Aberdeen, and Kilsyth in Stirling. The last was his most memorable victory; 6000 Covenanters were left dead on the field, and the cause of Charles seemed for the moment triumphant; but at Philip-13th sept., haugh near Selkirk, the brave Montrose was completely defeated, and his army annihilated. The last hopes of Charles were now cut off. He fled from Oxford by night, and, after an adventurous journey, sought shelter in the Scottish camp, which was stationed The Scots, having delivered up their near Newark. A.D. 1647. King to the English Parliament, retired to their own country, and the civil war, which had lasted for four years, was brought to a close.

Cromwell and the Army—Trial and Execution of the King.

The King was taken to Holmby House in Northamptonshire, where he remained a state prisoner for upwards of four months. A severe struggle now commenced between the Presbyterians and Independents, both of whom wished to have the principal share in the settlement of the affairs of the kingdom. Parliament was composed chiefly of the former, and the army of the latter. At the head of the Independents was Cromwell, whose vigorous measures gained for his party an ascendency over the Presbyterians. He ordered Cornet Joyce to remove the King to Hampton Court, where he was

treated, in some respects, as a sovereign. Cromwell and his son-in-law, Ireton, now seemed as if they wished to embrace the cause of Charles, but their designs were suspected by the Levellers—the democracy of the army -and Cromwell, jealous of his own power, found it necessary to adopt a different line of policy. From this time forth he resolved on the death of the King, who, however, contrived to escape, and succeeded in reaching the Isle of Wight. Colonel Hammond, governor of the island, placed him in Carisbrooke Castle. Here proposals were again submitted to him by the Parliament, but he rejected them all. Royalist insurrections broke out in various quarters, and the Scots took up arms in support of the They marched into England, under the command of the Duke of Hamilton, but were 17th Aug. defeated by Cromwell at Preston, and compelled to retreat northwards. This finished the second civil war. Scottish Presbyterianism had gained an ascendency in the English House of Commons; but Cromwell, now the master-spirit of the army, and jealous of the Presbyterians, sent Colonel Pride with a body of pikemen to exclude them from their seats. This proceeding is known in history as "Pride's Purge," and the remaining Parliament, consisting of about fifty members, chiefly Independents, was designated the "Rump."

Charles was tried at Whitehall before judges specially named by the Rump Parliament. He was charged with treason, and declared guilty of all the bloodshed of the civil wars. Sentence of death was passed upon him. In his last moments he was attended by Bishop Juxon, who said to him, "There is but one stage more, it is turbulent and trouble-some, but a short one; it will carry you from earth to heaven." "I go," said the King, "from a corruptible to an incorruptible crown." He meekly laid his head on the block, and at a given signal "the axe descended, and as his head rolled from the body, a deep groan burst from the multitude of the spectators." Thus perished the unfortunate Charles Stuart, in the forty-ninth year of his age, and the twenty-fourth of his reign, A.D. 1649.

SUMMARY OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I.

A.D. 1026-A.D. 1649.

Charles I., second son of James I. Born at Dunfermline, A.D. 1600. Married Henrietta Maria of France, by whom he had three sons, Charles, afterwards Charles II., James, afterwards James II., and Henry, Duke of Gloucester. He had also three daughters, one of whom, Mary, married William, Prime of Orange. Executed at Whitehall, A.D. 1649.

The accession of Charles I. marks the commencement of the quarrel between King and Parliament. The former wanted money, and the latter the redress of grievances and the removal of the royal favourite, Buckingham. Within a year the King dissolved two Parliaments, and endeavoured to raise money by arbitrary means. In 1628 he called his third Parliament, which obtained from him a reluctant assent to the Petition of Right In the same year Buckingham was assassinated at Portsmouth. Charles now took for his advisers Archbishop Laud, and Wentworth, Earl of Strafford, and for eleven years, from 1629 to 1640 governed without Parliaments.

The tyrannical Courts of High Commission and Star Chamber were respectively managed by Laud and Strafford. In 1637 John Hampden refused to pay his share of the illegal tax of Shipmoney. The Long Parliament assembled A.D. 1640; it impeached Strafford and Laud, the former was beheaded in 1641, and the latter in 1645.

The year 1642 witnessed the commencement of the Civil War. The two parties engaged in this struggle were familiarly known by the names of Cavaliers and Roundheads. The former were commanded by the Earl of Lindsay and the latter by the Earl of Essex. Prince Rupert was entrusted with the command of the King's cavalry. The first battle was fought at Edgehill, A.D. 1642, and of the other engagements, the most famous were Newbury, A.D. 1643, Long Marston Moor, A.D. 1644, and Naseby, A.D. 1645.

Charles, seeing that his cause in England was hopeless, fled from Oxford, and surrendered himself to the Scottish army at Newark, and by it was delivered up to the English Parliament, a.D. 1646. After suffering confinement for more than two years, the unfortunate King was brought to trial at Westminster, and executed at Whitehall, A.D. 1649.

QUESTIONS.

Charles's Personal History-His First Three Parliaments-War with Spain and France-Strafford and Laud-Ship-Money and John Hampden.

1. Relate the personal history of Charles I. 2. What makes the date of his acces-

sion memorable?

- 3. Show that such was the case. 4. What were Charles's weak quali-
- ties? 5. What did he demand from his first Parliament?

6. State what followed.

- 7. For what purpose was an expedition sent to Cadiz?
- 8. What took place on the meeting of Charles's second Parliament?
- 9. By what means did the King endeavour to raise money?
- 10. What led him to declare war against France?

- 11. How was it conducted, and how did it end?
- 12. When was the third Parliament summoned?
- 13. What famous Act originated with them?

14. State its provisions.

- 15. What new ministers did Charles choose?
- 16. Over what courts did they respectively preside?
- 17. How did each exercise his authority?
- 18. What brought matters to a crisis?
 19. Who was John Hampden?
- 20. What was the result of the opposition he offered to the imposition of "ship-money?"

Episcopacy and the Covenanters—The Long Parliament—The Civil War-Career of Montrose in Scotland-Cromwell and the Army—Trial and Execution of the King.

- 1. What causes led to discontent in Scotland? 2. Give an account of the disturbance
- which took place in Edinburgh.
- 3. What was the Solemn League and Covenant? 4. Where and when was this sub-
- scribed? 5. Whom did the Covenanters appoint
- as their commander? 6. State what followed.
- 7. Give the date of Charles's fourth Parliament.
- 8. What success attended the forces of Leslie in England?
- 9. What agreement was concluded with the Scots?
- 10. Give the date of the meeting of the Long Parliament.
- 11. When was it finally dissolved? 12. What was the nature of its first
- proceedings?
 13. What courts did it abolish?
- 14. Give the date of the commencement of the Civil War.
- 15. What names were given to the parties engaged in the contest?
- 16. Who were their respective commanders?

- 17. Where did the first engagement
- take place? Result and date?
 18. Relate the military events of 1643, and give the result of each.
 19. What alliance was made with the
- Scots?
- 20. State the military events of 1644. Give the results.
- 21. What battle decided the fate of the King? Date?
- 22. Who still held out for Charles in Scotland?
- 23. What victories did he obtain? 24. Where was he at length defeated?
- Date? 25. To what condition was the King
- now reduced? 26. How did the English Parliament
- obtain possession of his person?
 27. What two great parties now ruled the kingdom?
- 28. Who were the Levellers?
 29. What led to the battle of Preston? Date?
 - 30. What event is known in history
- as "Pride's Purge?"
 31. Describe the trial and execution of the King.

CHAPTER III.

THE COMMONWEALTH AND PROTECTORATE. —1649-1660.

CROMWELL.

Born at Huntingdon, A.D. 1599—Died at Whitehall, A.D. 1658.

England a Republic — Ireland and Sootland Subdued — The Dutch War— Expulsion of the Long Parliament—The Protectorate—Foreign Policy— Death of Cromwell—Cromwell's Successor—Committee of Safety—Monarchy Restored.

England a Republic-Ireland and Scotland Subdued-The Dutch War.

AFTER the execution of Charles, the Commons forbade the proclamation of another king. A week later, they voted the House of Lords useless and dangerous, and next day they abolished the office of king. Having thus become the ruling power in the nation, they appointed a council of state to carry on the government, of which Bradshaw was president, and Milton, the poet, secretary. There was now no longer any hope for royalty in England, but in Scotland Prince Charles had been proclaimed king by the Parliament, and in Ireland by the Earl of Ormond. Cromwell, having been appointed Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland, crossed over with an army of twelve thousand men to suppress the rebellion. He accomplished his task with vigour and promptitude. logic with the Irish was cannon-balls. He took by storm Drogheda, Wexford, Clonmel, and Kinsale, putting to death all who came within his reach; but his severity excited a feeling of enmity against the English which still lurks in the native mind. He quelled the rebellion in ten months, and then returned to England, leaving Ireton to complete the work of subjugation.

Scotland next attracted the attention of Cromwell. Here he found the Scotch army under Leslie entrenched in a strong position near Edinburgh. After vainly endeavouring to draw him into an engagement, Cromwell retired to Dunbar. Leslie followed, and posted his army on a hill overlooking the town. The English soldiers had already suffered severely from sickness and famine, so that their condition now seemed hopeless; but the clergy who crowded the Scottish camp, compelled Leslie to leave his strong position on the hill, and give battle to Cromwell on his own ground. This proved fatal to the Scots. Cromwell saw the mistake, and his troops, by the impetuosity of their attack, carried every-A.D. 1650. thing before them, and gained a complete victory. Leith and Edinburgh immediately surrendered, and all the country south of the Forth yielded to the conqueror.

On the first of January 1651, Charles was proclaimed king at Scone. He solemnly swore to observe the two Covenants, and to establish Presbyterianism in Scotland. Having collected an army of 14,000 men, he contrived to outflank Cromwell's army, and marched rapidly into England, where he found few adherents. Cromwell quickly followed his rival, and overtook him at Worcester. Here a decisive battle was fought, 3rd Sept. in which nearly the whole of the king's followers were either killed or captured. After this disastrous engagement, Charles, for six weeks, was in constant danger of falling into the hands of his enemies. He had many hair-breadth escapes, but at length succeeded in finding a vessel at Shoreham, in which he embarked, and

had left General Monk to complete the conquest of that country.

A Navigation Act was passed by the English, prohibiting importation, except in vessels belonging to England, or those of the country in which the goods were produced. This measure threatened to ruin the commerce of the Dutch, who were at this time the carriers of Europe. A naval war soon broke out between the two countries. Many battles were fought, but after a severe engagement off the Texel, in which the British were victorious, a treaty of peace was concluded at

landed in Normandy. Cromwell, on leaving Scotland.

Westminster, and the war terminated. On the side of the English were Admirals Blake, Monk, Penn, and Dean; and on that of the Dutch, Van Tromp, De Ruyter, and De Witt.

Expulsion of the Long Parliament—The Protectorate.

Before the war was brought to a close a change in the government again took place. This was caused by the jealousy which existed between Parliament and the army. Cromwell's officers called for a dissolution, but the Commons continued to sit. Going down to the House, followed by a number of soldiers, he strode along the floor with his hat on, and reproached the members in the most acrimonious and contemptuous terms. Then stamping loudly on the floor, his soldiers poured in, and received the memorable command, "Take away that bauble," meaning the mace which lay on the table as the symbol of authority. The House was soon cleared. and having locked the door, Cromwell returned with the key in his pocket to Whitehall. A new Parliament was A.D. 1653. next formed, styled "Barebones' Parliament," from one of its leading members, a leather merchant, known as Praise-God Barebones, but it enjoyed no public confidence, and was soon dissolved. Cromwell having got rid of Parliaments, was now supreme and uncontrolled; and the officers of his powerful but submissive army elected him Lord Protector of the Commonwealth.

Foreign Policy—Death of Cromwell.

Cromwell's government, if not loved at home, was respected abroad. The pirates of the Barbary States disappeared from the Mediterranean before the English cruisers; Spain yielded Jamaica; the French ministry sought his friendship, and Dunkirk and portions of the East Indies returned again to the list of British possessions.

Cromwell's last days were dark and unhappy. He felt he had not the confidence of the nation, and that his enemies were burning for revenge. He was regarded by many as not "guiltless of his country's blood," and a tract, entitled "Killing no Murder," was published advocating his assassination. Another book, previously published, on the last hours of Charles I., the "Martyr King," did much to develop a strong reaction against the Protector and his government. Death, however, closed his brilliant and remarkable career before the assassin could succeed in rendering it tragic. He died of ague at Whitehall on the anniversary of his 3rd Sept., A.D. 1658.

Cromwell's Successor—Committee of Safety—Monarchy Restored.

Richard Cromwell succeeded his father, but it at once became apparent that he had not been born to rule. At the request of the leaders of the army he dissolved a new Parliament after it had sat three weeks, and in the same year he resigned the Protectorate. Richard now retired into private life, and so amiable was he in disposition that he lived undisturbed, and died peaceably at the advanced age of eighty-six.

The government was now assumed by twenty-three military officers, styling themselves a Committee of Public Their proceedings were harsh and unjust, and hastened the reaction in favour of monarchy. This was consummated by General Monk, who had been appointed to govern Scotland as a part of the Commonwealth, and who was now at the head of the army, on his march to He reinstated the Long Parliament, which, however, dissolved itself, after having summoned a new one, called the Convention Parliament. This assembly at once agreed to restore Charles II. to the throne of his father. The exiled monarch lost no time in responding to the call. He set sail from the Hague, and landed at Dover, where he was received by General Monk, and entered London on his own birthday, A.D. 1660. amidst the most joyful acclamations of all classes of the people.

GENERAL FACTS.

Previous to the reign of Charles I., the system of banking had not been practised. Men of capital deposited their money in the Royal mint, but when hostilities commenced between the king and his Parliament, the merchants, for greater security, entrusted their money to the care of goldsmiths, who thus became the first bankers. During the civil war the postal system, which had been previously established, was completely overthrown; but this most important department of the public service was re-modelled and greatly improved a few years before the death of Cromwell. The Jews, who had been banished from England during the reign of Edward I., were now permitted to return. George Fox, a shoemaker, was the founder of a religious sect called Quakers.

SUMMARY OF THE COMMONWEALTH AND PROTECTORATE.

A.D. 1649.-A.D. 1660.

Cromwell, Lord Protector of the Commonwealth of England, was born at Huntingdon, A.D. 1599. Married Elizabeth, daughter of Sir James Bourchier, A.D. 1620. Died at Whitehall, A.D. 1658.

Cromwell, as Lord Protector, ruled England for five years, from A.D. 1653 to A.D. 1658. The Commonwealth lasted eleven years, from A.D. 1649 to A.D. 1660.

Cromwell was sent over to Ireland to put down a royalist rebellion, A.D. 1649. Having subdued that country, he next entered Scotland, and defeated the Scots under Leslie at Dunbar, A.D. 1650. Leith and Edinburgh surrendered, and the whole of the country south of the Forth submitted to the conqueror. On his return to England, he defeated Charles II. at Worcester, A.D. 1651. Several naval victories were gained by Blake and Monk over the Dutch.

Having dissolved the Long Parliament, A.D. 1653, Barebones' or Little Parliament met, but in five months was dissolved, and Cromwell was declared Lord Protector of the Commonwealth. He caused his power to be felt abroad; Jamaica was taken from Spain, Dunkirk was recaptured, and the pirates of the Barbary States were driven from the Mediterranean. The fear of being assassinated clouded the latter days of Cromwell's life. He died

Sept. 3, A.D. 1658, and was succeeded by his son Richard, who, in the following year, resigned the Protectorate. A Committee of Safety was appointed, and afterwards the Long Parliament was reinstated. It dissolved itself after having resolved to summon a new one, called the Convention Parliament. Charles II. was now recalled and restored to the throne of his father, May 29th, A.D. 1660.

QUESTIONS.

Eingland a Republic—Ireland and Scotland Subdued—The Dutch War—Expulsion of the Long Parliament—The Protectorate—Foreign Policy—Death of Cromwell—Cromwell's Successor—Committee of Safety—Monarchy Restored

- 1. What measures were adopted by the House of Commons after the execution of Charles?
- 2. Give an account of the rebellion in Ireland.
- 3. What proceedings took place in Scotland?4. What solemn promise did Charles
- make to the Scots?

 5. Relate the circumstances connected
- with his march into England,
- 6. How did he afterwards escape?7. What was the Navigation Act?8. To what did the passing of this
- measure lead?
 9. How did the war terminate? Date?
- 10. Give an account of the expulsion of the Long Parliament.
- 11. What parliament was next formed?
 12. What title was now conferred upon Cromwell? By whom?

- 13. State some of the advantages which arose from his foreign policy.

 14. How were Cromwell's latter days disturbed?
 - 15. Date of his death.
- 16. By whom was Cromwell succeeded?
- 17. When did he resign the Protectorate?
- 18. Who now assumed the government?
- 19. By whom was the Long Parliament reinstated?
- 20. What was the Convention Parliament?
- 21. Relate the circumstances connected with the restoration of Charles II. Date.
- 22. What general facts are recorded in the time of the Commonwealth?



CHAPTER IV.

RESTORATION OF THE STUART DYNASTY.

CHARLES II,-1660-1685.

Charles's Personal History—Acts of the Convention Parliament—Charles's Second Parliament—The Plague—Fire of London—First Dutch War—Change of Ministry—Charles Shuts the Exchequer—Second Dutch War—Popish Plot—Habeas Corpus Act—Bill of Exclusion—Whig and Tory—Political Plots—Death of the King—Troubles in Scotland—General Facts.

Charles's Personal History — Acts of the Convention Parliament.

MONARCHY was restored in the person of Charles II., who was born at St. James's Palace, A.D. 1630. He married the Princess Catherine of Portugal, with whom he received a dowry of £500,000, the fortress of Tangier in Africa, and Bombay in Hindostan. She bore him no children.

The Convention Parliament, which had agreed to invite Charles to take possession of the vacant throne, continued to sit after his restoration. By this assembly the annual revenue of the crown was fixed at £1,200,000, the revenues of the old feudal system were abolished, and the duties of tonnage and poundage were voted to the King for life.* An Act of Indemnity or of general pardon was passed, and extended to all except those who had been concerned in the death of Charles I. nine regicides were brought to trial, but only ten were executed. The bodies of Cromwell, Ireton, and Bradshaw were exhumed, and hung in chains on the gallows at Tyburn. Sir Henry Vane and General Lambert were afterwards brought to trial; the former was executed, and the latter was permitted to spend the rest of his days as an exile in the island of Guernsev. The Convention Parliament was dissolved by the King at the close of the year 1660.

^{*} Tonnage and Poundage. The former was a tax of two shillings on every tun of wine imported by foreigners, but English merchants paid an import duty according to the tonnage of their ships. The latter was a tax of sixpence paid on every pound of merchandise either imported or exported.

Charles's Second Parliament.

In May 1661 a new Parliament was called, in which the Cavalier party were predominant. Episcopacy was re-established; the vacant bishoprics were filled up, and the ejected clergy restored to their livings. The Corporation Act was passed, which excluded all except Episcopalians from municipal offices. This enactment was followed by the Act of Uniformity (1662), which required of all persons holding ecclesiastical preferment to renounce the Covenant. Two thousand Presbyterian clergymen refused to comply with its provisions, and were at once ejected from their livings. The Act of Uniformity was succeeded by another still more stringent. and which struck a further blow at all dissenters from Episcopacy (1664). This was the Conventicle Act. which declared that all religious meetings not in conformity with the Established Church were seditious. Attendance at such meetings was punishable either by fine, imprisonment, or banishment. This statute was daily violated, and the prisons were soon filled. Another Act followed, called the Five Mile Act (1665), which required of all dissenting ministers to take the oath of non-resistance. Those who refused were ordered to keep at a distance of five miles from any corporate town, or any other place where they had preached. The various Acts just enumerated formed what has been called the Clarendon Code, and under which it was felt that every barrier which had been erected during the last thirty years for the protection of civil and religious liberty was now demolished.

The Plague-Fire of London.

England was visited in the year 1665 with a dreadful disease called the Plague. It lasted about five months, during which time it swept into the grave about half a million of the population. In London alone, 100,000 of the inhabitants perished out of a population of half a million. Those who could escape fled from the city, leaving all their property behind; and few of those who

had to remain ventured out of doors. The public thoroughfares became overgrown with grass, and not a sound was heard but the warning bell that accompanied the death-cart, and the summons of the undertakers: "Bring out your dead!" which was answered by the melancholy cry from the windows, "Pray for us!" In some parts of the metropolis almost every house had the warning mark on the door—a red cross with the words, "Lord, have mercy upon us!" It was not till the cold weather of winter set in that this dreadful scourge ceased its ravages.

In the following year the stricken city was visited with another calamity. Early in September a fire broke out at a baker's house near London Bridge, and raged with great fury. For more than a week the devouring element continued its ravages, and it was only stopped by blowing up a number of houses, thus causing gaps which prevented the flames from leaping over. The ruins covered 436 acres, nearly the whole of the city, from the Tower to the Temple, being reduced to ashes. This frightful catastrophe proved a blessing in disguise by the sanitary reforms to which it afterwards led. A column called the "Monument," designed by Sir Christopher Wren, and intended to commemorate the fire, has been crected near the spot where it originated.

First Dutch War.

Charles, unlike Cromwell, did nothing to augment or even maintain the influence and dignity of his government in the estimation of foreign powers. In 1662 he had sold Dunkirk for £400,000 to relieve his pecuniary necessities, and had also plunged into war with Holland, apparently to gratify the popular feeling, but really with a view to plunder, and to inflict a blow on Protestantism, which he secretly disliked. Notwithstanding a great victory gained at Lowestoft, the war with Holland was a mistake. In the following year the Dutch were victorious in an engagement off the North Foreland; their fleet entered the mouth of the Thames, destroyed the fort

at Sheerness, and, but for the non-arrival of their allies, the French, would have burned London, and thus completed the humiliation of England. Peace was shortly afterwards concluded at Breda. This treaty, however, was regarded as highly disgraceful to A.D. 1667. the nation, and Clarendon, who had hitherto acted as the chief adviser of the King, was dismissed from office. Being accused as the evil counsellor of his Sovereign, and as the cause of many of the calamities which had recently befallen the country, he was impeached by the Commons, and compelled to leave the country. When in exile he wrote his celebrated "History of the Great Rebellion." He died at Rouen, A.D. 1674.

Change of Ministry.

The downfall of Clarendon led to the formation of a ministry called the "Cabal," a term which at that time signified a secret council or committee. It is a mistake to suppose that the name owes its origin to the initials of those who then formed the chief ministers of state, viz. Clifford, Ashley, Buckingham, Arlington, and Lauder-The word was in use long before any of these figured in history. The five men thus chosen to manage the affairs of the nation were destitute of all right principle, and ministered only to the King's love of arbitrary power and debasing pleasures. They agreed, however, to the famous Triple Alliance between England, A.D. 1668. Holland, and Sweden, in order to check the ambitious designs of Louis XIV. This league led to the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, by which the French King surrendered a great portion of his recent conquests. Charles's prodigality could not be restrained, and in order to obtain larger supplies than the Parliament felt disposed to give, he had recourse to the meanness of begging from the French treasury. He secretly entered into a treaty at Dover, by which he agreed, when a fitting opportunity offered, to make a public profession of the Roman Catholic religion, and to join Louis in a war against Holland, upon condition of receiving a yearly pension of £200,000, and the aid of six thousand French troops, in case of a rebellion in England.

Charles Shuts the Exchequer-Second Dutch War.

Before the war commenced, Charles obtained from Parliament a grant of £1,800,000, to enable him to fit out a flect for the protection of the coast, but the money was all spent before the fleet was ready. The profligate monarch, acting on the advice of Clifford, agreed to the "shutting up of the Exchequer" for a year, which means that payments due to those who had advanced money to the Government were suspended. By this frandulent act the King became possessed of £1,300,000. Many were ruined, and the whole commercial interests of the country were for a time completely paralysed.

War with Holland was declared. The first action took

A.D. 1672. Place off Lowestoft, on the coast of Suffolk, between De Ruyter and the Duke of York. After

a long and obstinate engagement, in which the English sustained considerable loss, the Dutch withdrew. Louis, meanwhile, had led a powerful army into Holland, so that the cause of the Dutch seemed hopeless. William, Prince of Orange, came to the rescue, and though only twenty-one years of age, he repelled the invaders, and obliged them to leave the country. When peace was concluded between this country and Holland, the Prince of Orange came over into England and married his cousin, the Princess Mary, daughter of the Duke of York.

Popish Plot-Habeas Corpus Act-Bill of Exclusion.

Not long after the marriage it was rumoured that several plots had been discovered, having for their object the destruction of the King, and the re-establishment of the Catholic religion in England. The most noted of the Catholic religion in England. The most noted of these was one known as the "Popish Plot." Titus Oates, an infamous character, pretended to be able to give information regarding this alleged conspiracy, but the whole of his story was only a

piece of sensational fiction, to which the nation too readily gave credence. This vile and worthless impostor was regarded as the deliverer of his country, and received a yearly pension of £1200. Many innocent persons were seized and executed, amongst whom was the venerable Earl of Strafford. In consequence of the excitement caused by the false reports which had been circulated by Oates and others like him, Parliament immediately passed an Act disqualifying Roman Catholics for sitting in either House, and this Act continued in force till 1829.

The celebrated Habeas Corpus Act was passed A.D. 1679, which provides that no man should be long detained a prisoner without either the cause of his imprisonment being certified in open court, or his being brought to trial. This Act is sometimes "suspended," that is, power is given to the Government for a limited period to imprison any one suspected of crime without bringing him to trial. This, however, is only done on occasions of great public danger. Like Magna Charta, it forms one of the grand bulwarks of individual liberty. Lord Ashley, now Earl of Shaftesbury, brought in a bill to exclude the Duke of York from the succession, because of his adhesion to the Roman Catholic faith. To prevent the passing of this measure, Charles abruptly dissolved Parliament, and had recourse to arbitrary rule.

Whig and Tory—Political Plots—Death of the King.

Next year the King summoned a new Parliament, and it was now that the terms Whig and Tory first came into use. The former is of Scottish origin, and was given to those who opposed the Court and desired the exclusion of the Duke of York from the crown. The latter is of Irish origin, and was applied to those who were friends of the Court. The Exclusion Bill was again introduced, but though it passed the Commons, it was rejected by the Peers. The Whigs, by the violence of their opposition, defeated their own ends, as there were many who feared that the disputes which had arisen regarding the

succession would ultimately lead to a renewal of the civil war. Public opinion now began to turn A.D. 1681.

advantage of this sudden reaction, dissolved his fifth and last Parliament, which had met at Oxford.

The Whigs, on learning that the current of public opinion was against them, should have refrained for a season from further agitation; but the Earl of Shaftesbury, one of the violent leaders of the opposition, formed the design of raising a rebellion to secure the crown for the Duke of Monmouth. Lords Essex, Russell, and Howard, together with Algernon Sydney and John Hampden, grandson of the great patriot, acted with greater prudence and caution, and refused to co-operate with Shaftesbury, who now provided for his own safety by escaping to Holland. Several associates of an inferior stamp entered into a conspiracy to assassinate the King on his way from Newmarket, at a farm called the Rye-house in Hertfordshire. The design of the conspirators was frustrated by the King returning sooner than was expected. The Whig leaders denied that it was their intention to assassinate the King, but they were nevertheless regarded as being in some way or other connected with the plot. Monmouth fled to the continent, and Russell, Sydney, and many others were executed.

Charles now became an absolute monarch, and continued such to the end of his reign. In the 6th Feb., beginning of February he was seized with a fit of apoplexy, and died, after a few days' illness, having previously declared himself a Catholic, and received the sacrament from a priest named Huddlestone. He was buried in Westminster Abbey.

Charles was possessed of good natural abilities, but they were sacrificed to indolence and vice. "In his private life he was as profligate as in his public life; setting an open example of vice and debauchery to his subjects, which they were only too ready to follow, so that his reign is still a bye-word for shameless indecency."

[&]quot;A merry monarch, scandalous and poor."

Troubles in Scotland.

When Charles ascended the throne, the Presbyterians in Scotland expected that, in consideration of the services they had rendered him when in their country, he would secure for them their own peculiar form of church government. Charles, however, disliked Presbyterianism, and characterised it as a religion unfit for a gentleman. Episcopacy was accordingly re-established in Scotland, and the oath of allegiance and supremacy imposed upon the people. The great majority refused to take the oath, and persecution and rebellion followed in quick succession.

James Sharpe, a Presbyterian minister, had been sent to London to plead the cause of his non-conforming brethren; but he proved faithless to their interests, and returned to Scotland as Archbishop of St. Andrews. consequence of the tyranny of Sharpe, an insurrection broke out in some of the western counties, which formed the stronghold of the Covenanters, but the insurgents were routed at Rullion Green on the Pentland Hills, and many of them executed. As Sharpe was travelling across Magus-Moor towards St. Andrews, he was attacked by Balfour of Burley, Haxton of Rathillet, and others whom he had deeply wronged. They dragged him from his carriage, and put him to death under circumstances of the greatest cruelty. Another rising followed, and at 22nd June, 1679. Drumolog, the Royal troops under Graham of A.D. 1679. Claverhouse were defeated, but at Bothwell Bridge, the insurgents were completely routed by the Duke of Monmouth.

GENERAL FACTS.

During the reign of Charles II. guineas were first coined—they were so named from being made of gold brought from Guinea by the African Company. Insurance offices against fire were established in London—the Phœnix being the first opened. Chelsea Hospital for infirm soldiers was founded in 1682, and in the same

year William Penn, the Quaker, founded a colony of "Friends" in a district of North America, which he named Pennsylvania.

SUMMARY OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES IL

A.D. 1600-A.D. 1685.

Charles II., son of Charles I. Born at St. James's Palace, A.D. 1630. Married the Princes Catherine, daughter of John IV. of Portugal. Died at Whitehall, A.D. 1685. Reigned 25 years.

The Convention Parliament continued to sit for a few months after the restoration of Charles, but was dissolved by the King at the close of the year. Several of the adherents of Cromwell were executed, and the bodies of the Protector and other regicides were dug from their graves and hung on the gallows.

Charles's second Parliament, sometimes called the Pension Parliament, passed four Acts; the Corporation Act, the Act of Uniformity, the Conventicle Act, and the Five Mile Act. These form what has been termed the Clarendon Code.

The Great Plague raged in London A.D. 1665, and in the same year war was declared against Holland. The Great Fire broke out in London, A.D. 1666, and in the following year the Dutch destroyed the fort at Sheerness, and burnt several English ships in the Thames. The Treaty of Breda brought the war to a close, A.D. 1667. Lord Clarendon was dismissed from office and banished, after which the Cabal ministry was formed.

England and France declared war against Holland, A.D. 1672. William, Prince of Orange, drove the Dutch out of Holland, and when peace was concluded, came over to England and married Mary, daughter of James, Duke of York.

Titus Oates falsely asserted that the Catholics desired the destruction of the King and his Government. The nation credited his statement, and several innocent persons were executed.

The famous Habeas Corpus Act was passed by Charles's third Parliament, A.D. 1679. His fourth Parliament, which met A.D. 1680, introduced a Bill for excluding the Duke of York from the throne, but it was lost in the House of Lords. The Rye-House Plot, designed to place the Duke of Monmouth on the throne, was discovered A.D. 1683. Russell and Sydney were executed. Monmouth was pardoned, but withdrew to the continent. Charles, shortly before his death, declared himself a Catholic, He was buried in Westminster Abbey,

QUESTIONS.

Charles's Personal History—Acts of the Convention Parliament—Charles's Second Parliament—The Plague—Fire of London-First Dutch War-Change of Ministry.

1. Relate the personal history of Charles II. What were some of the Acts of the

Convention Parliament?

- 3. Explain the meaning of "tonnage" and "poundage."
- 4. How many of the regicides were executed? 5. When was the Convention Parlia-
- ment dissolved? 6. What party was predominant in the new Parliament?
- 7. Enumerate with dates the various
- Acts passed by this Parliament.
 8. By what name were these Acts
- afterwards known? 9. In what year did the Plague visit England?
- 10. What was the condition of London while it lasted?
- 11. What calamity succeeded the Plague?

- 12. How long did it last, and how was it at length stopped?
- 13. What commemorates the spot where the fire originated?
- 14. Why did Charles engage in a war with Holland?
- 15. What were some of the events which followed?
- 16. Where and when was peace concluded?
 - 17. What was the fate of Clarendon?
 18. Explain the meaning of the term Cabal.
- 19. Who were the persons who formed the Cabal?
- 20. What character is given of them? 21. What was the Triple Alliance? 22. To what did this league afterwards lead?
- 23. What disgraceful measures did the King adopt in order to raise money? 24. What was the nature of the treaty of Dover? Dute.

Charles Shuts the Exchequer-Second Dutch War-Popish Plot-Habeas Corpus Act-Bill of Exclusion-Whig and Tory-Death of the King-Troubles in Scotland-General Facts.

- 1. What is meant by "Shutting up; the Exchequer?"
- 2. When did the second Dutch war commence?
 - 3. What events followed?
 - 4. When was peace concluded?
- 5, Whom did William, Prince of
- Orange, marry?
 6. What was the nature of the Popish Plot?
- 7. Describe the part taken by Titus Oates in this alleged conspiracy
- 8. State the results which followed. 9. When was the Habeas Corpus Act passed?
- 10. Relate the provisions of this important measure.
- 11. What is meant by a "Suspension" of this Act? 12. Explain the origin and meaning
- of the terms "Whig" and "Tory."
 18. What was the Exclusion Bill?

- 14. When did Charles dissolve his fifth Parliament?
- 15. What was the nature of the Earl of Shaftesbury's rebellion?
- 16. State the design of the Rye-House Plot. Date.
- 17. How was the object of the conspirators frustrated?
- 18. When did Charles die? Describe his character.
- 19. What did the Presbyterians in Scotland expect from Charles on his accession to the throne? Why?
- 20. How did he act towards his former supporters?
- 21. Relate what is recorded of Arch-
- bishop Sharpe.
 22. What engagements took place in Scotland between the Covenanters and Royal troops?
- 23. What general facts are recorded in the reign of Charles II.?

CHAPTER V.

JAMES 11.-1685-1688.

James's Personal History—His Domestic Policy—Rebellion under Monmouth and Argyle—Cruelties of Colonel Kirke and Judge Jeffreys—James favour the Catholics—Birth of the Old Pretender—Arrival of the Prince of Orange—Flight and Abdication of the King—William and Mary Proclaimed.

James's Personal History.

James, Duke of York, second surviving son of Charles I, born at St. James's Palace, 1633, now ascended the throne, under the title of James II. He married first Anne Hyde, daughter of the Earl of Clarendon, and after her death he espoused Mary D'Este, daughter of the Duke of Modena. The children born to James by his first wife were Mary and Anne, both of whom became Queens of England. By his second wife he had James Francis Edward, commonly called the Old Pretender, on account of doubts being entertained whether James's Queen was really his mother, and to distinguish him from his son who was styled the Young Pretender.

The King's Domestic Policy—Rebellion under Monmouth and Argyle.

James ascended the throne without opposition. declared to the Privy Council his firm adherence to the constitution, and took the oaths to maintain the Church and Government of the country as by law established. This declaration gave great satisfaction, and all the more so as most people believed that the king would have recourse to arbitrary power. But they had not long to wait before he appeared in his true colours. asking the consent of Parliament, he issued a proclamation ordering payment of certain taxes which had been voted for only a limited time. He next made open profession of his attachment to the Catholic religion, by attending in regal state the public celebration of mass. Notwithstanding such procedure, the Commons voted him as a personal revenue for life the sum of £1,900,000.

The execution of Russel, Sydney, and others for their alleged concern in the Rye-House Plot, had so terrified the friends of constitutional government, that many sought a voluntary exile in Holland. Among others of less note were the Duke of Monmouth and the Earl of Argyle, under whom simultaneous invasions of England and Scotland were planned at Amsterdam. Both expeditions failed of success. Argyle landed in Cantyre, but could not rouse his clansmen, the Campbells, in sufficient numbers. His little army was encountered by the Royal troops in Dumbartoushire, and dispersed. The Earl himself was captured, and, after suffering many indignities, was taken to Edinburgh and executed.

Meanwhile Monmouth, "the darling of the English people," landed on the coast of Dorsetshire, where he was joined by about 6000 of the common people. At Taunton he caused himself to be proclaimed king, and at Sedgemoor, in Somersetshire, the Duke encoun- A.D. 1688. tered the royal troops under Lord Faversham. This was the last engagement fought on English soil. The rebels would certainly have been victorious, but for the cowardice or treachery of Grey, the commander of the Duke's cavalry, who, at the first onset, abandoned his position to the enemy. Monmouth fled, but was afterwards found concealed in a ditch, disguised as a peasant, with a few peas in his pocket, which served him for food, He was taken to London, and after vainly imploring pardon at the knees of the king, his uncle, was executed on Tower Hill.

Cruelties of Colonel Kirke and Judge Jeffreys.

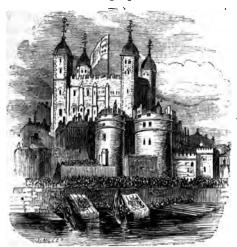
All concerned in the rebellion were punished in the most barbarous manner. Faversham only desisted from hanging on the spot when the Bishop of Bath and Wells informed him that his victims were entitled to a trial. Colonel Kirke's soldiers ravaged the country, and on account of the dreadful slaughter which they committed, they earned for themselves the ironical title of "Kirke's Lambs." The infamous Jeffreys exceeded in blood-

thirstiness the barbarities of the savage Colonel. natural brutality, inflamed by continual intoxication, vented itself in the orders he gave for the execution of upwards of three hundred individuals. "At every spot where two roads met, on every market place, on the green of every large village which had furnished Monmouth with soldiers, ironed corpses clattering in the wind, or heads and quarters stuck on poles, poisoned the air, and made the traveller sick with horror." To the present day this circuit bears the horribly suggestive name of "The Bloody Assizes." When this monster of cruelty returned from his bloody campaign, the King, to mark his approbation of his conduct, raised him to the peerage, and afterwards to the Lord Chancellorship!

James favours the Catholics.

As if the enormities of Jeffreys had not sufficiently disfigured the annals of his time, James now proceeded to unfold his design of re-establishing the Catholic religion in Britain. He set law and Parliament at designce, attacked the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge, and thrust into these seats of learning, men of Roman Catholic principles. He issued an order in council, requiring the clergy to read from their respective pulpits a "Declaration of Indulgence," the real object of which was to admit Catholics to military, civil, and ecclesiastical offices. Seven bishops who declined to read the declaration, were accused by the King of rebellion, and sent to the Tower. They were conveyed thither by water, and followed by immense crowds of people, who fell on their knees or ran into the river, imploring the blessing of the undaunted As the day of trial approached, the popular feeling became intense. On the 29th of June, A.D. 1688. the bishops were arraigned in Westminster Hall. The trial lasted from nine in the morning to seven in the evening, and the jury, after being shut up all night, entered the court the following morning with a verdict of "Not Guilty." Shouts of applause immediately followed,

and in a short time the whole city resounded with the joyful acclamations of the people.



TOWER OF LONDON.

Birth of the Old Pretender—Arrival of the Prince of Orange—Flight and Abdication of the King.

On the tenth of the same month the Queen gave birth to a son, commonly styled the Old Pretender. But for this event James might have been permitted to remain in undisturbed possession of the throne. The Protestants, however, became alarmed at the prospect of the succession of a Catholic prince, and immediately sent an invitation to William, Prince of Orange, the husband of Mary, the King's eldest daughter, to come over to England, and rescue the country from the thraldom of James.

William accepted the invitation, and the preparations for the expedition were all but concluded before James was convinced of the danger that threatened him. When, however, he received a letter from his minister at the Hague, informing him that his nephew was on the eve of setting sail to invade England, he became deadly pale, and the letter dropped from his hand. He tried to retrace his steps, in order to regain the confidence of his subjects. But it was now too late. The crisis had come. William had set sail, and was already on his way to effect the deliverance of England. Upon his banner, bearing the motto of his house, "I will maintain," he had with much tact supplied the words—"the Protestant Religion and the liberties of England." On the 5th of November he landed at Torbay, and in a short time the prin-A.D. 1688. landed at 101 buy, and cipal persons in the kingdom rallied round him. The King was deserted by his former adherents, and being informed that his own daughter, the Princess Anne, had also abandoned him, he burst into tears, and exclaimed, "God help me; my own children have forsaken me!" After making some vain attempts at negotiation, James provided for his own safety by escaping to France, whither his Queen, with her infant son, had already fled.

William and Mary Proclaimed.

William entered London on the same day that James had left it. He was met by a number of peers and other members of Parliament, who requested him to assume the government, and to call a Convention to settle the affairs of the nation. When the Convention met, it declared the throne vacant by the abdication of James, and after a long discussion the Lords and Commons resolved that the Prince and Princess of Orange should be declared King and Queen of England, but that the royal power should be exercised by William alone. In the event of William and Mary dying without issue, the crown was to devolve on the Princess Anne and her children. Thus, step by step, the great event known in history as the Revolution was accomplished, and the severe and protracted struggle between Catholicism and Protestantism -between absolute power and civil rights-brought to a close.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF JAMES II.

A.D. 1685,-A.D. 1688.

James II., brother of Charles II. Born at St. James's, A.D. 1633. Married, first, Anne Hyde, daughter of Lord Clarendon; second, Mary D'Este, daughter of the Duke of Modena. Died at St. Germains, A.D. 1701. Reigned 3 years.

The short reign of James II. ended in his being driven from the throne of England. This event is known in history as the **Revolution**. An invasion of Scotland by Argyle, and of England by Monmouth, A.D. 1685, ended in the former being taken and executed, and the latter, after his defeat at **Sedgemoor**, shared a similar fate. Then followed the "Bloody Assize," presided over by Judge Jeffreys, to punish the rebels.

James II. endeavoured to re-establish the Catholic religion in England, by conferring offices in church and state on Catholics, contrary to the Act of Uniformity and the Test Act. He issued a Declaration of Indulgence, and ordered the clergy to read it from the pulpits. Seven bishops who refused were tried, but to the

great joy of the nation were acquitted.

William, Prince of Orange, was invited to come to England to take the crown, and, on his arrival in London, James escaped to France, Dec. 18, A.D. 1688.

QUESTIONS.

- James's Personal History—His Domestic Policy—Rebellion under Monmouth and Argyle—Cruelties of Colonel Kirke and Judge Jeffreys.
- 1. Relate the personal history of James II.
- What act on the part of the King gave great satisfaction to the country?
 How did he afterwards conduct
- 8. How did he afterwards conduct himself?
- 4. Give an account of the rebellion under Monmouth and Argyle.
- 5. Date of the battle of Sedgemoor.6. What was done to those who took
- part in the rebellion?
 7. Relate the conduct of Colonel Kirke and Judge Jeffreys.
- 8. How was the latter afterwards rewarded by the King?
- James favours the Catholics—Birth of the Old Pretender— Arrival of the Prince of Orange—Flight and Abdication of the King—William and Mary Proclaimed.
- 1. What means did James take for establishing once more the Catholic religion in England?

2. What was the object of the Dcclaration of Indulgence?

- 8. Who refused to read the Declaration?4. Relate what afterwards took place.
- 5. What event gave alarm to the Protestants? Why?
- 6. How did they act in such circumstances?
- 7. Give an account of the arrival of William, Prince of Orange, in England. Date.

8. What was now the position of James?

9. What was William requested to do on his arrival?

10. What resolutions were adopted by the Convention?

11. By what name are those proceedings known in history?

CHAPTER VI.

WILLIAM	and	MARY	re	igned	from	1689 (ю 1694 .
WILLIAM	alon	.e				1694	1702.

William's Personal History—Resistance in Scotland and Ireland—Massacre of Glenone—Darien Expedition—Battle of La Hogne—National Debt—Triennial Parliaments—Peace of Ryswick—Act of Settlement—Death and Character of William—General Facts.

William's Personal History.

WILLIAM, son of William II., Stadtholder, or first minister of the States of Holland, and Mary, eldest daughter of Charles I., was born at the Hague in 1650. He married Mary, eldest daughter of James II. and his Queen. Anne Hyde. William and Mary had no children.



EDINBURGH CASTLE.

Resistance in Scotland and Ireland.

In Scotland the Convention of Estates boldly voted that James had forfeited the crown, and they followed the example of England by conferring it on William and Mary. But the castle of Edinburgh continued to be held

for James by the Duke of Gordon, and when it was at last abandoned, Graham of Claverhouse, now Viscount Dundee, indignantly refused to submit, and proceeded to the Highlands to raise the standard of James, who meditated an invasion for the purpose of recovering the triple crown he had so timidly cast away. The dethroned monarch, instead of landing in Scotland, where the Jacobites, the adherents of James, would have fought for him, chose to land in Ireland, and attempted to conquer Protestant Ulster by the aid of the Catholics. He was doomed to bitter disappointment. town of Londonderry held out against his most determined efforts. Besieged and blockaded, its Protestant refugees, under the heroic Walker, submitted to the utmost horrors of famine; and though reduced to the greatest extremities they stedfastly resisted until relieved by a supply of provisions from England. At the end of three months James was compelled to raise the siege. In the following year William landed in Ireland, and met the forces of James on the banks of the Boyne near Drogheda. Here, on the 1st of A.D. 1690. July, was fought the decisive battle of the cam-James's army was completely routed, and the dethroned and vanquished monarch, who had witnessed the battle from a neighbouring height, fled for safety to Tyrconnel and St. Ruth still managed to keep the field, but the following year witnessed the fall of Athlone, and not long after the Irish were A.D. 1691. defeated with great slaughter at Aghrim (July 12), where St. Ruth was killed by a cannon ball. In the month of October, Limerick, their last stronghold, after a siege of six weeks, capitulated, and in a short time the whole of Ireland submitted to William.

Meanwhile in Scotland the Jacobites under Viscount Dundee defeated William's troops under General Mackay at Killiecrankie Pass, A.D. 1689. But Dundee, in the moment of victory, fell by a musket ball while standing up in his stirrups beckoning his horsemen to join in the action.

Massacre of Glencoe.

The government of William was now established in England, the Scottish Lowlands, and Ireland, but in the Highlands there were still a number of rebel chiefs, whose submission he was anxious to obtain by pacific measures. He accordingly issued a proclamation, offering a pardon to all who should lay down their arms, a.D. 1691. and take the oath of allegiance on or before the thirty-first day of December. Before the day arrived all the clans had submitted except the Macdonalds of Glencoe; but on the very last day, the thirty-first of December, Macdonald arrived at Fort-William to take the oath. Here, however, he was informed that the governor had no power to administer it, and that he must go to Inverary to be sworn before the Sheriff of



PASS OF GLENCOE.

Argyle. The distance prevented him from taking the oath within the prescribed time, and the Earl of Bredalbane, his deadly foe, having represented the chieftain as a traitor, William signed an order for the destruction of the whole of the clan. The royal mandate was barbarously executed by Captain Campbell of Glenlyon, who, on the night of the first of February, entered the house of Macdonald, asking quarters for himself and his men. The request was readily granted. Campbell and his

party of soldiers were distributed among the clan, and enjoyed their hospitality, and joined in their amusements for twelve days, at the end of which a cruel and treacherous massacre was perpetrated. Thirty-eight of the unsuspecting inhabitants of the valley of Glencoe were murdered during night, and many of the helpless women and children perished of hunger and cold in the midst of the mountain snows. The Master of Stair, Secretary of Scotland, has been charged with the heavier share of the guilt of this horrible tragedy; but there can be no doubt that in connection with it there will for ever rest a foul stain on William's character.

Battle of La Hogue-National Debt-Triennial Parliaments. The massacre of Glencoe excited so great indignation

in Scotland, that a formidable attempt was made to overthrow the government of William. The Jacobites solicited aid from Louis, who fitted out a fleet of sixty-three sail, under the command of Admiral Tourville. The French expedition was attacked off Cape La Hogue by the combined English and Dutch 23nd and fleets under Admirals Russell and Rooke, and A.D. 1692 defeated with a loss of twenty-five ships. After the battle, Mary's feeling of sympathy for those seamen who had been disabled in the engagement, induced her to give up her palace at Greenwich for their reception. In 1694 the foundation of the present noble building was laid, and Greenwich Hospital has till recently been used as a

To meet the expenses incurred by the war, Parliament had recourse to the Dutch system of borrowing money, and thus was commenced the National Debt, which in a few years increased from three million to seventeen million pounds sterling. Taxation was also extended, and the Triennial Act, limiting the duration of each Parliament to three years, was passed, although William had refused his assent to this measure in a former session.

residence for old and disabled seamen of the Royal Navy.

To the great grief of the King and the country, the

close of the year witnessed the death of Queen Mary. After her death various plots were formed against the life of William, the most daring of which was one planned by a Scotch officer named Barclay, who intended to assassinate the King on his return from hunting in Richmond Park. The scheme was detected, and the chief conspirators were condemned and executed.



PAINTED HALL, GREENWICH HOSPITAL.

Peace of Ryswick--Act of Settlement-Death and Character of William.

After the war had continued for a number of years, the armies of the French and the allies, finding it difficult to obtain supplies to enable them to carry on hostilities, concluded a treaty of peace at Ryswick in Holland, by which it was agreed that the French King should acknowledge William's title to the throne of Great Britain. Peace, however, did not long continue, for on the death of James II. at St. Germains, Louis immediately recognised his son as King, under the title

of James III., on which William resolved to join in the war against France, which had recently broken out in consequence of the dispute about the Spanish Succession. The Duke of Gloucester, only surviving son of the Princess Anne, having lately died, it now became necessary to make legal provision for the succession. An act, called the Act of Settlement, was accordingly passed, which provided that the crown, on the death of Anne, should devolve on the next Protestant heir. This was Sophia, Electress of Hanover, the grand-child of James I.

Death prevented William from carrying out his purpose of farther humbling Louis. As he was proceeding on horseback to Hampton Court, his horse fell, and, having sustained a fracture of the collarbone, he fevered and died. In after years the Jacobites used to drink to the health of "the little gentleman with the velvet coat," referring to the mole whose hillock had caused William's horse to stumble.

GENERAL FACTS.

The Toleration Act was passed, A.D. 1689, which secured liberty of worship to all Protestant Dissenters; and in the same year was passed the Bill of Rights, which fixed the power of the crown and the rights of the subject. It enacted that the King could not suspend the laws, levy money, or keep up a standing army, without the consent of Parliament, and secured the right of petitioning the crown, the freedom of elections, and the frequent meeting of Parliament. The Bank of England was established by a Scottish merchant named Paterson, A.D. 1694, and in the same year was ensured the freedom of the press. The parochial school system of Scotland was established by Act of Parliament, A.D. 1696, and the benefits conferred by it on the country have been universally admitted. This year also the Bank of Scotland was established by a merchant named Holland. Judges were appointed for life, and no longer liable to be dismissed at the pleasure of the King.

SUMMARY OF REIGN OF WILLIAM III. AND MARY II.

William and Mary, A.D. 1689.—A.D. 1694. William alone,A.D. 1694.—A.D. 1702.

William, son of William II., Stadtholder of Holland, and of Mary, eldest daughter of Charles II. Born at the Hague, A.D. 1502. Married Mary, daughter of James II. Died at Kensington. A.D. 1702. Mary died at Kensington, A.D. 1694. Reigned together 5 years. William reigned alone 8 years.

At Killiecrankie, in Perthshire, the royal troops under General Mackay were defeated by Viscount Dundee, A.D. 1689. Dundee fell in the moment of victory. In Ireland the chief events were the siege of Londonderry, A.D. 1689; the battle of the Boyne, A.D. 1690; the battle of Aghrim, A.D. 1691, and in the same year the siege of Limerick. These all ended in favour of William.

The massacre of the Macdonalds in the valley of Glencoe took place, A.D. 1692; and, in the same year, the French fleet was defeated by the English and Dutch fleets off Cape La Hogue. Foundation of the National Debt laid. The war was brought to a close by the treaty of Ryswick, A.D. 1697. The Act of Settlement was passed, A.D. 1701, which provided that on the death of Anne the crown should pass to the House of Brunswick.

QUESTIONS.

William's Personal History — Resistance in Scotland and Ireland—Massacre of Glencoe—Battle of La Hogue— National Debt—Triennial Parliaments—Peace of Ryswick—Act of Settlement—Death of the King—General Facts.

- .. Relate the personal history of William III.
- 2. Who raised the standard of James in the Highlands of Scotland?
- 3. Where did James land? For what purpose?
 - 4. What town did he besiege?
 - 5. How was it relieved?6. Where did William meet the forces
- 6. Where did William meet the forces of James?
- 7. Give the date and result of the battle.
- 8. What other events took place in Ireland?
- In whose favour did they all end?
 Give the date and result of the battle of Killiecrankie.
- 11. Relate the circumstances connected with the massacre of Glencoe. Date.
- 12. From whom did the Jacobites solicit aid? For what purpose?
 - 13. What war now commenced?

- 14. Give the date and result of the battle of La Hogue.
- 15. How did the queen show her sympathy for the disabled seamen?
 16. How were the expenses of the war met?
- 17. Of what did this lay the founda-
- 18. What was the Triennial Act?
- 19. By whom was a plot formed against the life of the king?
- 20. What treaty brought the war to a close? Date?
- 21. What was the nature of this treaty?
- 22. How was it observed by the French King?
- 23. What was the Act of Settlement? Date?
- 24. Relate the circumstances connected with the death of William.
 25. What general facts are recorded in this reign?

CHAPTER VII.

ANNE.

ANNE. - 1702 - 1714.

Anne's Personal History—Her Accession—War of the Spanish Succession— Legislative Union of the Parliaments of England and Scotland—Trial of Sacheverel—The Tories in Power—Treaty of Utrecht—Death and Character of the Queen—General Facts.

Anne's Personal History.

ANNE, second daughter of James II. by Anne Hyde, was born at St. James's, A.D. 1665. She married George, Prince of Denmark. Their children all died in infancy, with the exception of William, Duke of Gloucester, who lived till he was nearly twelve years of age.

Accession of Queen Anne-War of the Spanish Succession.

Anne was thirty-eight years of age when she ascended the throne, and was completely under the guidance of the Countess of Marlborough, whose husband also possessed great influence at Court. On the death of William, the whole of Europe looked with much interest on the line of policy which his successor would adopt. When Parliament met, the Queen expressed her intention of continuing the warlike preparations of the late King. two months after her accession, war was declared against France and Spain by England, Austria, and the Netherlands. This is called the War of the Spanish Succession. and for carrying on which William was actively engaged in making preparations at the time of his death. point at issue was whether Philip, grandson of Louis XIV., or Charles, Archduke of Austria, should succeed to the throne of Spain. England united with the other European states in support of the latter, while the King of France supported the claims of Philip. The war lasted for nearly eleven years, and desolated some of the finest parts of the continent.

The Earl, afterwards Duke of Marlborough, was appointed commander-in-chief of the allied army in the Netherlands. In the first campaign a number of towns a.D. 1702. were taken, the most important of which was Liege. At the same time a powerful fleet, under Sir George Rooke, was successful in an engagement off Cadiz.

The chief military events of the second campaign were the capture of Huy, Bonn, Limburg, and Gueldres. The close of the year is memorable for what is known in history as the Great Storm. It lasted from Nov. 26 to Dec. 1, and did an enormous amount of damage, destroying churches, houses, and shipping. In London alone the property destroyed was estimated at nearly £1,000,000.

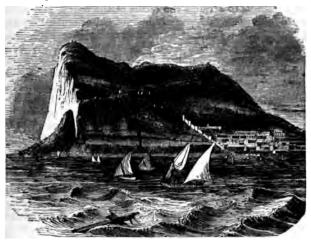
Two great events—the victory of Blenheim, and the capture of Gibraltar—achieved by English prowess, have rendered the year 1704 for ever illustrious in the history of British warfare. Marlborough, fearing lest the French should penetrate to Vienna, hastened into Bavaria, and came in sight of the enemy at Blenheim, on 2nd Aug., the banks of the Danube, when in concert with A.D. 1704, the Imperial commander, Prince Eugene of Savoy, he won a great battle over the French and Bavarians, under Marshal Tallard, who was taken prisoner. For this great victory Marlborough received the thanks of both Houses of Parliament, and had settled on him and his heirs the manor of Woodstock, on which was erected, at the public expense, a magnificent mansion named Blenheim, from the scene of his

famous victory.

Sir George Rooke, who had been sent on a cruise up the Mediterranean, resolved to make an attack on Gibraltar. The fleet, with the assistance of a number of troops under the command of Prince Hesse of Darmstadt, a.D. 1704. captured the fortress, which has since withstood long-continued sieges, and more than once defied the combined attacks of France and Spain. It has ever since remained in possession of Great Britain.

In 1705 the Earl of Peterborough landed in Spain, at the head of an army of seven thousand Dutch and British troops. He gained a number of successes, the most brilliant of which was the taking of the strong fortress of Barcelona.

In the campaign of 1706 Marlborough defeated Marshal Villeroi in a great battle at Ramillies, and the year 1708 has been rendered memorable by his brilliant victory over the Duke Vendome at Oudenarde. The allies next laid siege to Lille, which, after a gallant resistance, surrendered. Ghent, Bruges, and other important towns, submitted to the conquerors, who were now in possession of the whole of French Flanders.



GIBRALTAR.

In 1709 Marlborough and Eugene, after a terrible siege, captured Tournay, and a few months later encountered the French at Malplaquet. The latter was the most sanguinary conflict that had yet taken place. After seven hours' dreadful carnage, the French gave way, leaving the victorious Duke in possession of the field.



ufull of the nto power. nighty and rlborough was conucen's bedto was so John were reated Earl mequer, and lingbroke, · feeling in ministers alborough, tinguished own use as obliged He was mond, who extensive

echt, and

A.D. 1713.

compared victories terms of ant succesl'retender; d to cede

ocht. The

Union of the Parliaments of England and Scotland.

Since the accession of James I., England and Scotland had been governed by the same King, but still retained their respective Parliaments. The union of the legislatures of the two kingdoms was now considered necessary, in view of a change of dynasty and the threat of the Scottish Parliament to sever the union of the crowns on the death of the Queen, if certain commercial privileges were not accorded to Scotland; but the measure met with violent opposition from the Parliament and the people of Scotland. Commissioners were appointed from both nations to arrange the terms of the union, and after much discussion, and not without the aid of much English gold, the articles of this important treaty were at length agreed upon. Its chief provisions were that, the two kingdoms should be united into one, under the name of Great Britain: that the succession to the throne should be vested in the House of Hanover; that Scotland should retain her Presbyterian form of worship, and be represented in the united Parliament by sixteen peers and forty-five commoners. The Scottish Parliament sat for the last time on March 25, and in May 1, 1707, the Act of Union took effect. A feeling of hatred and discontent at the union prevailed for many years; but the experience of more than one hundred and fifty years has given ample proof of the wisdom of our ancestors, who devised, and, in spite of much opposition, brought to a successful issue a measure which has conferred on both countries great and lasting advantages.

Trial of Sacheverel—The Tories in Power.

Public feeling was excited against the Whigs for the part they took against the Rev. Dr. Sacheverel, who preached two sermons in which he advocated the doctrine of passive obedience, declared the Church to be in danger, denounced all dissenters, and spoke of the Revolution as an unrighteous change. He was impeached by the Whigs, and after a trial which lasted three weeks was found guilty, and suspended from preaching for three

years, A.D. 1710. This sentence caused the downfall of the Whigs, and soon after the Tories came into power. Previous to their accession to office, the haughty and overbearing disposition of the Duchess of Marlborough had caused her to lose the royal favour, which was conferred on Abigail Masham, a woman of the Queen's bedchamber. The influence of this new favourite was so great that Robert Harley and Henry St. John were admitted into the cabinet. The former was created Earl of Oxford, and made Chancellor of the Exchequer, and the latter was raised to the dignity of Lord Bolingbroke. and held the office of Secretary of State. The feeling in Spain being favourable to Philip, the new Tory ministers resolved to bring the war to a close. Marlborough, instead of receiving a vote of thanks for his distinguished services, was accused of appropriating to his own use large sums of the public money, and ere long was obliged to leave England, and retire to the Continent. succeeded in office by the Tory Duke of Ormond, who received instructions not to engage in any extensive enterprise.

Conferences for peace were opened at Utrecht, and when the terms of the treaty were finally arranged, it was found that the advantages A.D. 1713. conferred on England were of small importance compared with the renown the country had acquired by the victories of the Duke of Marlborough. According to the terms of the treaty, Louis agreed to uphold the Protestant succession in England; to abandon the cause of the Pretender; to demolish the fortifications of Dunkirk, and to cede to Britain Nova Scotia, the Hudson Bay Company's territories, and the islands of Newfoundland and St. Christopher.

Death and Character of the Queen.

Anne did not long survive the Peace of Utrecht. The disputes which occurred among the members of her Government caused her declining health all the more rapidly to give way. Having been seized with a fit of

apoplexy, she died on August 1, and was buried in Westminster Abbey by the side of her husband, Prince George of Denmark.

Although deficient in mental vigour, the Queen was possessed of many virtues, on account of which she obtained the title of the "Good Queen Anne." "Her conduct as a wife and mother was exemplary; her Court was at once elegant, refined, and virtuous; her charities were munificent and her reign has this happy distinction from all preceding ones, that in it no arm was raised against the Sovereign, and no subject's blood was shed for treason."

GENERAL FACTS.

An Act, now known as Queen Anne's Bounty, was passed, for the purpose of increasing the incomes of the poorer clergy, A.D. 1704, which benefit still continues to exist. St. Paul's Cathedral was finished by Sir Christopher Wren, after thirty-five years building, A.D. 1708. The first daily newspaper was published, called the *Daily Courant*, A.D. 1709. The population of London having greatly increased, fifty additional churches were erected at the public expense. Legal interest was fixed at 5 per cent. The cant term, "John Bull," was in this reign first applied to the people of England.

SUMMARY OF THE REIGN OF ANNE.

A.D. 1702-A.D. 1714.

Anne, second daughter of James II. Born at St. James's, A.D. 1665. Married Prince George of Denmark. Died at Kensington, A.D. 1714. Reigned 12 years.

Anne had no sooner ascended the throne than the War of the Spanish Succession commenced. The Duke of Mariborough was appointed commander of the allied armies. Gibraltar was taken from the Spaniards by Sir George Rooke, A.D. 1704, and in the same year the French and Bavarians were defeated by Marlborough at Blenheim. This distinguished commander afterwards gained the battles of Ramilies, A.D. 1706; Oudenarde, A.D. 1708; and Malplaquet, A.D. 1709. The Earl of Peterborough captured Barcelona, A.D. 1705, and nearly succeeded in driving Philip out

of Spain. The war was brought to a close by the treaty of Utrecht, A.D. 1713.

At home the chief events were the Legislative Union of England and Scotland into one kingdom, A.D. 1707, and the contentions between the two great political parties—the Whigs and Tories resulting in the downfall of the former.

With the death of Queen Anne the line of the Stuarts ended.

QUESTIONS.

Anne's Personal History—Her Accession—War of the Spanish Succession—Legislative Union of the Parliaments of England and Scotland—Trial of Sacheverel—The Tories in Power—Treaty of Utrecht—Death and Character of the Queen—General Facts.

- 1. Relate the personal history of Queen Anne.
- 2. Under whose guidance did the Queen place herself at her accession?
 - 3. What war immediately commenced? 4. What was the point at issue?
- 5. Who was appointed commander-
- 6. What events took place during the first campaign ?
- 7. Relate those which happened during the second.
- 8. What great events have rendered the year 1704 illustrious?
- 9. How was Marlborough rewarded? 10. For what is the year 1705 remark-&ble?
- 11. Relate the events of the campaign of 1706.
- 12. What tended to bring about the legislative union of the two kingdoms? 18. Mention the chief provisions of during this reign? the union.

- 14. When did the Act of Union take effect?
- 15. State what you know of Dr. Sacheverel.
- 16. What sentence was pronounced against him?
 - 17. To what did this lead?
- 18. What changes took place in the Queen's household?
- 19. Who were the new Tory ministers? 20. What line of policy did they
- adopt?
 21. How did they act in regard to the Duke of Marlborough?
- 22. Who was his successor?
 23. What were the terms of the treaty of Utrecht? Date.
- 24. When did the Queen die? Where was she buried?
- 25. Describe her character. 26. What general facts are recorded



CHAPIER VIII.

SOCIAL LIFE OF THE STUART PERIOD.

Houses—Style of Living—Dress—Anausements—State of the Country—Roads— The Borders—Scottish Highlands—State of Scotland—Witchcraft—National Industry—Learning—Literature.

Houses.—The houses of the seventeenth century were distinguished by a certain elegance of design; and the interior decorations and furniture received increased attention. But even the best rooms, still unpainted, were hung with coarse woollen hangings, and furnished with rush-bottomed chairs. Carpets were more used to



ST. PAUL'S CATHEDRAL.

cover tables than floors, and the floors, if not still littered with rushes, were coloured brown with a composition of soot and small beer, the better to hide the dirt. The London houses, of wood and plaster, with projecting

upper storeys, formed streets so narrow that people could shake hands from opposite sides; but when rebuilt after the Great Fire, the ordinary material was brick, and a better style of architecture was employed. The domes and spires of the churches, and notably of St. Paul's, were designed by Sir Christopher Wren; but what were then the mansions of rich citizens are now turned into counting-houses and warerooms. The city had only one bridge, crowded with old and crazy tenements, and arrayed in barbarous fashion with the ghastly heads of malefactors. Scotland was still a country of huts and hovels. farm-houses were small thatched buildings of loose stones, divided into two apartments called a but and a ben. The smoke from the peat-fire in the centre of the floor, hanging in clouds in the apartment, blackened the exposed joists, and found its way out by a hole in the roof, but frequently by the door. Even in Edinburgh, the shops were sorry sheds of wood and thatch, called booths, and the royal palaces of Holyrood and Falkland were also covered with thatch till the middle of the seventeenth century.

Style of Living.—The fare of the Stuart period is marked by extravagant expense, and by some "villainous compounds" of French cookery—some of them more rare than delicate, such as fried or stewed snails and frogs' legs, of which we find occasional mention; but the roastbeef of England now became the celebrated national dish. Charles II. is said to have in frolic knighted the loin of beef by the title of Sir Loin, which it still bears, and the practice of hurrahing after drinking healths dates from the age of the Merry Monarch. The tendency to late hours had now fairly set in, and four o'clock was the fashionable dinner hour. The table of a country gentleman was plentiful, though somewhat coarse, and the hospitality was profuse. The ladies, who had cooked the repast, retired after it had been eaten, leaving the gentlemen to smoke tobacco and drink beer. With the Restoration, ten and coffee were introduced, the former costing at first as much as 40s. per lb. Both beverages were sold in the liquid form, and an excise duty was

imposed of 8d. per gallon. Tea was drunk in the mornings, cold and without sugar or cream. It began to supersede beer, and sobriety was fostered by the use of "this wakeful and civil drink." But coffee was at first the chief favourite, and coffee-houses became the resort of all classes for gathering and retailing the gossip and political news of the hour. The great mass of the people of England lived on rye, barley, and oats. In Scotland, even in noblemen's houses, all sat down at the same board, but the dainties were placed at the upper end. The diet of the menials consisted chiefly of broth, oatmeal porridge, and a small allowance of animal food. Wine was abundant, owing to the close intercourse of Scotland with France, and was frequently drunk to excess.

Dress.—The two most striking figures of this period were the Cavalier and the Puritan. The Cavalier was adorned with a short doublet of silk, satin or velvet. of the richest colours, with loose full sleeves slashed in front, and a falling collar of the costliest point-lace; a rich scarf, which encircled the waist, was tied in a large bow at the side; in the broad-leafed Flemish beaver hat was a plume of feathers; and sometimes a short embroidered cloak was worn over one shoulder. The breeches. reaching to the knee, were fringed and pointed. Long buff gloves or gauntlets, and high-heeled, wide-topped boots completed the attire which has been termed Vandyke, after the great painter, who loved to present the subjects of his pencil in such costume. This picturesque and handsome garb, borrowed from Spain, was disliked by the Puritans, who abhorred the vanities of silks and satins, and loved coarser stuffs of sombre colours, the plain narrow collar, and the old high-crowned black hat. Both Puritan and Cavalier wore the peaked beard and the moustache; but whilst the Roundhead kept his hair cropped close (hence the name), or hanging lank about his ears, the Royalist delighted in long luxuriant ringlets. But towards the end of Charles the Second's reign, in imitation of the French fashions, long flowing wigs of curled and frizzled hair covered the head and shoulders.

and hung down nearly a yard in length—a fashion which continued for a century. Warriors wore them hanging over their breastplates, and even boys, not yet in their teens, followed the fashion. The fashionable young men of London might be seen with their embroidered coats, fringed gloves, and scented snuff, combing out their monstrous periwigs in public.

The female costume differed less widely from our own. A fine lady had so long a train to her dress as to require several pages to bear it up, and she seldom moved abroad without a muff of fur, a fan of ostrich feathers, and a black mask or vizor over her face.

Amusements.—The Puritans were so remarkably strict in their conduct that they were opposed to all kinds of sports, and during their sway horse-racing, cock-fighting, and bear-baiting, were prohibited. During the Commonwealth the Maypoles were cut down, the theatres were shut up, and the players flogged; but with the Restoration the theatre was reopened, and in regard to the music, dresses, scenery, and decorations of the stage, great improvements were effected. But although women had now been admitted to the stage, the parts of women had still often to be played by handsome young men in petticoats; and on one occasion, when the play was late of beginning, the excuse proferred was that the Queen was not yet shaved.

State of the Country.—Not much more than half the area of the country was under tillage or pasture, and the proprietor did not derive more than one-fourth of the rent now drawn from the same acres. What was not under cultivation consisted of moor, forest, and marsh. Scarcely a hedge-row or enclosure of any kind was to be seen where now the soil is rich with harvest produce. The last wild boars had perished under the hands of rustics during the Civil War; the last wolf in the island had been slain in Scotland in the reign of Charles II.; but red deer in thousands wandered free over the country, the wild bull with white mane still roamed the southern forests, foxes were a common nuisance, while the martin,

the badger, and the wild cat abounded in the wooded tracts. Our sheep and oxen were small in size, and our native horses were not valued at more than 50s. each. Spanish jennets were imported for service as war-chargers, and grey Flanders mares for coach-horses.

The Roads.—The roads, one of the first elements of civilization, were still in a wretched condition. traveller was in constant danger of his neck, of sticking fast in the mud or quagmire, of losing his way, or of being carried off by the floods. Goods were conveyed along the best highways in stage-waggons at fifteen times the expense of their conveyance by railway in the present On by-roads, and on all others north of York and west of Exeter, goods were conveyed by long trains of pack-The rich travelled in a coach and six, not from choice, but necessity; and six strong horses were not always sufficient. Travellers of humbler condition performed their journeys mounted on a pack-saddle between two baskets, or nestled among the straw of the stagewaggon. It was thought a surprising era in travelling when the Flying Coach in 1669 made the journey from Oxford to London, a distance of 55 miles, between sunrise and sunset. Several hundred hackney coaches plied in the streets of London, but sedan-chairs had been introduced in 1634, for the professed object of relieving the overcrowding of the streets with coaches.

The Borders—Scottish Highlands.—By the accession of James VI. of Scotland to the throne of England, his power and resources were so much increased that he could now with a firmer hand check the lawlessness of the Borderers and the Highlands. The Highlanders, indeed, continued in a state of barbarism, and fearful tales are told of their cruelty and ferocity. Cherishing revenge as a chief virtue, the clans were at constant feud with each other, and when not engaged in cutting each other's throats, were ever and anon making inroads upon the Lowlands—burning cottages, slaughtering the inmates, lifting cattle, and levying black-mail. Hating the arts of peace, the small patch of barley on the edge of the

moor was left to be cultivated by infirm old men and the women and children, whilst war and hunting were at once the business and the pastime of the mountaineer.

A somewhat similar class of marauders, called *free-booters*, inhabited both sides of the Border, and committed their depredations with perfect impartiality:

"They stole the beeves that made their broth From England and from Scotland both."

Into that wild and lawless region no one ventured "with out making his will." Farm-houses were fortified, as well as the gentlemen's seats, by what was called peel-towers, and the inmates slept with weapons under their pillow. The magistrates of the Border counties were now empowered to levy an armed force in defence, and to hunt down the freebooters with bloodhounds. Judges and juries now made speedy work with these notorious offenders -scores of them being hurried to the gallows with little beyond the formality of a trial. But mounted highwaymen scoured all the great thoroughfares of the country. In London itself, thieves and robbers infested the unlighted streets, and even fashionable young gentlemen about town — "flown with insolence and wine" — swaggered along the streets after nightfall, smashing windows, and insulting or attacking all whom they met.

State of Scotland.—Scotland had not yet reached the same degree of social improvement as England. Lawlessness, and violence, and rudeness of demeanour, characterised all classes. After the accession of James to the English crown, great numbers of Scotchmen followed him to London to seek to better their fortunes in a richer country and a wider sphere. But the King was at length so annoyed with their petitions that they were strictly forbidden to leave Scotland for London without his royal sanction. When the Thirty Years' War, or the war of Protestantism and Catholicism, was raging in Germany, many thousand Scotchmen of the better classes took service as mercenary soldiers ("soldiers of fortune" they were called) with almost every state on the continent.

Another and a numerous class sought employment in a different way: Scotchmen swarmed as pedlars, or travelling merchants, in Germany, in Poland, and in all the northern parts of Europe; and, having amassed no little wealth, returned to Scotland to spend the evening of their days in ease and competence,

Witchcraft.—In the seventeenth century, the belief in witchcraft was universal. King James I. wrote a violent treatise against it, believing as he did that witches had raised a violent storm in the North Sea, from which he had nearly perished as he crossed over to Denmark to marry his Queen. Even Lord Bacon was not free from this weakness and folly of the age. Many innocent persons suffered death on this charge. To be old and poor, to be ill-favoured and cross-tempered or weakminded, to have any oddity of manner or appearance, was enough to excite suspicion; and if the poor creature (generally some lonely old woman in her dotage) had been heard to mutter some threat against those at enmity with her, and if some misfortune happened thereafter to those persons—if a child fell sick, or a cow died, or the churning brought no butter-it was fortunate if she was not brought to trial as a witch, and subjected to torture and burning alive at the stake. One favourite method of testing the guilt of an accused person was to tie her hand and foot, and throw her into the water: if she sank, she was drowned, and there was an end of her; if she floated, she only escaped the water to perish by the fire.

National Industry.—Notwithstanding the evils caused by the Civil War, the impetus given to trade and manufactures under the Tudors never ceased to operate. Commerce was greatly extended by the establishment of the sugar colonies in America. Great efforts had been made by James I. to establish the silk manufacture in England. With this view 10,000 mulberry trees had been sent down to each county to be planted, and instructions issued for the breeding and rearing of silk-worms. The plan, however, proved a failure. But, in A.D. 1685, Louis XIV. of France revoked the celebrated Edict of Nantes, which

had secured religious toleration to his Protestant subjects, and 50,000 French refugees, most of them skilled artizans, sought an asylum in England. Their skill and labour, thus transferred, gave an immense impulse to our arts and manufactures, especially the silk trade, which was largely established in London.

LEARNING AND PERIODICAL LITERATURE OF THE STUART PERIOD.

Learning .- Out of London and the two university towns there was scarcely a printing-press in the kingdom. Books were therefore still few in number. Female education seems at this period to have been greatly neglected; a lady's only reading consisted of her prayer-book and her cookery-book; and she could not write a letter with correct grammar and spelling. After the Restoration Greek was much neglected; at the universities it was not thought necessary that a clergyman should be able to read the New Testament in the original tongue. Latin was spoken and written with case and accuracy. French, however, was fast superseding Latin, and was becoming the language of the Court and of fushionable It had also a marked influence upon our literasociety. ture, both in taste and style.

Periodical literature, which has now expanded into such dimensions, and which exercises so wide an influence, took its rise in the beginning of the eighteenth century. The Tatler, the Spectator, and the Guardian—the Spectator being the most famous—were published from 1709-13, with the object of correcting the taste and improving the morals of the day; and they were eminently successful. With these publications are associated the names of Addison and Sir Richard Steele, who were their originators and chief contributors. Newspapers were poor in quality and few in number. From the date of the Spanish Armada no newspaper had been published till the commencement of the Civil War in 1642, when swarms of broadsheets told the stirring news of battles lost and won. After the Restoration none were permitted

by Charles II. to appear without Court sanction, and no political news was allowed. None of them consisted of more than a single leaf, which, however, the editor was often at a loss to fill. A portion of it was often kept blank for the purchaser to fill up in writing with private news to his friends in the country. A less ingenious device was to fill the unoccupied space with passages from the Sacred Scriptures-one editor having in this way exhausted the whole of the New Testament and a large part of the Old.

QUESTIONS

Houses.

- 1. What distinguished the houses of the seventeenth century? 2. With what were the best rooms furnished?
- before and after the Great Fire.
- 5. What kind of buildings were designed by Sir Christopher Wren?
- 6. Describe the farm-houses in Scot-
- 2. With what were the bost looks in I and.
 3. For what were carpets chiefly used?
 4. Describe the houses of London fore and after the Great Fire.

 land.
 7. What was the nature of the shops in Edinburgh, and of the palaces of Holyrood and Falkland?

Style of Living.

- 1. Characterise the fare of the Stuart.
- 2. What was now the national dish of England?
- 3. Explain the origin of the title "sirloin.
- 4. What was the fashionable dinnerhour?
- 5. Describe the table of a country wine. gentleman.
- 6. When were tea and coffee introduced? 7. What purposes did coffee-houses serve?
- 8. On what did most of the people of England live?
- 9. Of what did the diet of the menials consist? 10. Account for the abundance of

Dress.

- 1. Who were the two most striking figures of this period?

 2. Describe the dress of the Cavalier. | about reign?
- Of the Puritan.
- "Roundhead."
- 4. What French fashion was adopted about the end of Charles the Second's
- 5. What is remarked of the fashion-3. Account for the origin of the term able young men of London?
 6. Describe the dress worn by ladies.

Amusements.

1. What amusements were forbidden 2. When wa what respect? 2. When was a change effected? In by the Puritans?

State of the Country.

- 1. How much of the country was under cultivation?
- 2. Of what did the rest consist?
- 3. What wild animals now ceased to horses? exist in England?
- 4. Mention those which were still to be found.
- 5. What is stated regarding sheep and oxen?
- 6. What was the value of native
- 7. Where were others obtained?
- 8. To what uses were they put?

Roads.

- 1. Characterise the state of the roads? 2. To what dangers were travellers poorer classes?
- exposed?
- How were goods conveyed along the best highways?
- 4. How were they conveyed along by-roads?
- 5. How did the rich travel? The
- 6. What was then considered a remarkable feat in the history of
- travelling? 7. When and for what purpose were sedan chairs introduced?

The Borders—Scottish Highlands.

- 1. What part of the country still continued in a wild and lawless state?
- 2. Who endeavoured to check this? By what means?
- 3. What is related regarding the rid of them? or uelty and ferocity of the Highlanders? uelty and ferocity of the Highlanders? 8. By whom were the streets of 4. Explain the meaning of "black- London infested? mail."
- 5. By whom was the work of cultio. By whom was the work of the variety of the land carried on?

 6. Who were the freebooters?

 7. What means were employed to get

State of Scotland.

- 1. State some of the characteristics of all classes of society in Scotland.
- 2. For what reason did many follow King James to England?
- 3. Why did he afterwards prohibit them?
- 4. In what war did many take service?
- 5. Explain the meaning of "mercenary" soldiers.
 6. Where and how did other Scotchmen find employment?

Witchcraft.

- 1. When was the belief in witchcraft : universal?
- 2. Who wrote against it? For what
- 3. What distinguished person was a picion. believer in it?
- 4. What happened to many innocent persons?
- 5. Mention some of those peculiarities which were calculated to excite sus-

National Industry.

- 1. How had commerce become extended?
- 2. What efforts were made by James I. to establish the silk manufacture in England?
- 3. State the result.
 - 4. What was the Edict of Nantes?
 - 5. What effect had its revocation upon England? Give the date.

Learning and Periodical Literature.

- 1. How do you account for the continued scarcity of books?
- 2. In what state was female education? 3. Of what did a lady's reading
- consist?
- What language was neglected after the Restoration?
 - 5. State how this was the case. 6. What language still continued to
- be spoken and written? 7. What was gradually becoming the language of the Court?
- 8. When did periodical literature take its rise?
- 9. What were then the most famous periodicals? 10. When were they published? For
- what purpose?
 11. What names are associated with
- these publications?
 12. Relate what is stated about news-
- papers.

 13. Why was a portion of the paper
- often kept blank? 14. In what other way was the unoccupied space sometimes filled?

CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY.

OF THE

PRINCIPAL EVENTS DURING THE STUART PERIOD.

A.D. 1603-A.D. 1714.

Seventeenth Century.

A.D. JAMES I., A.D. 1603-1625.

- 1603. Main Plot, formed by Sir Walter Raleigh, Lords Cobham and Grey, to place Lady Arabella Stuart on the throne. Lady Arabella was cousin to James I.
- 1604. Hampton Court Conference, held between representatives of the Puritans and dignitaries of the Established Church.
- 1605. Gunpowder Flot formed for the destruction of the King and Parliament.
- 1609. Circulation of the blood discovered by Dr. William Harvey.
- 1611. Province of Ulster in Ireland colonised by Scottish and English Protestants. Present authorised translation of the Bible published.
- 1612. Death of Robert Cecil, chief minister of the crown.
- 1618. Sir Walter Raleigh executed.
- 1620. Emigration of the Pilgrim Fathers in the Mayflower to New England.
- 1623. Prince Charles and the Duke of Buckingham travel to Spain in disguise in order that the prince might see the Infanta, to whom he was engaged to be married. At the close of the year the Spanish match was broken off, and Charles was betrothed to Henrietta Maria of France.
- 1625. James dies at Theobalds in Hertfordshire.

CHARLES I., A.D. 1625-1649.

- 1625. Charles's first Parliament meets at Westminster. King requires money to carry on the war with Spain. Tonnage and poundage voted for one year.
- 1626. Second Parliament. Buckingham impeached, but to save his minister, Charles dissolves the Parliament.
- 1627. Failure of the Duke of Buckingham's expedition to aid the Huguenots (French Protestants) at La Rochelle.
- 1623. Third Parliament. Petition of Right drawn up, and reluctantly signed by the King. Duke of Buckingham assassinated at Portsmouth by Felton.
- 1629. Parliament Dissolved. From this date till 1640 there was no Parliament. Charles ruled as an absolute monarch.
- 1634. Ship Money imposed on seaport towns. This tax extended to inland towns the following year.

1638. National Covenant signed by the Scots against all innova-

tions in religion.

1640. Fourth Parliament assembled. Dissolved in three weeks because it refused to grant money without a redress of grievances.

The Long Parliament assembled (Nov. 3). The Earl of Strafford and Archbishop Laud impeached. The former

beheaded in 1641, and the latter in 1645.

1641. Courts of High Commission and Star Chamber abolished.

1642. The Civil War, or Great Rebellion. Royal standard raised at Nottingham (Aug. 22).

1646. End of the first Civil War.

1647. The Scots deliver Charles up to the Parliament.

1648. Second Civil War. Pride's Purge, a proceeding so called on account of Colonel Pride having been sent by Cromwell to exclude all members from the House who were favourable to the King. Those who remained received the name of the Rump Parliament.

1649. Charles tried in Westminster Hall. Condemned and

executed.

THE COMMONWEALTH, A.D. 1649—1660

1649. Charles II. proclaimed King in Scotland, and not long after in Ireland. Office of King and House of Lords abolished by the Commons. Council of State appointed to conduct the government. Cromwell sent to Ireland to put down a rebellion.

1650. The Marquis of Montrose supports the cause of Charles II. in Scotland. Is captured, taken to Edinburgh, and

executed.

1651. Charles II. crowned by the Scots at Scone. Navigation

Act passed.

1652. First war with the Dutch.

1653. Rump Parliament dissolved by Cromwell. Barebones or Little Parliament dissolved after sitting about five months. Cromwell declared Lord Protector of the Commonwealth (Dec. 16).

1655. War with Spain. Jews allowed to return to England.

1658. Death of Cromwell. His son Richard proclaimed Lord Protector.

1659. A new Parliament assembled, but dissolved by Richard after sitting three months. Richard resigns the Protectorate. Rump Parliament again meets but is expelled by the army, and a Committee of Safety appointed. Two months later the Rump Parliament is re-instated.

1660. General Monk, commander of the Parliamentary army in Scotland, advances to London with his troops and re-assembles the members of the Long Parliament.

- 1707. Act of Union passed, by which England and Scotland were united into one kingdom under the name of Great Britain.
- 1710. Dr. Sacheverel tried and convicted for denouncing the Revolution and the Protestant Succession. Is suspended from preaching for three years.

1711. A new Parliament meets and accuses Marlborough of peculation; he is afterwards deprived of all his offices.

1714. Death of the Princess Sophia. Her son George Louis becomes heir-apparent. Queen Anne dies at Kensington, and is buried at Westminster.

BATTLES AND SIEGES DURING THE STUART PERIOD.

B. Battle. N. B. Naval Battle. S. Siege.

- S. Rochelle, A.D. 1628. Besieged by Cardinal Richelieu. Buckingham sent to its relief, but failed to accomplish anything. Town capitulated.
- B. Newburn-on-Tyne, A.D. 1640. The English defeated by the Scotch under General Alexander Leslie.
- B. Edgehill, A.D. 1642. An indecisive engagement between the Royalists under Charles I. and the Parliamentary forces under the Earl of Essex.
- 8. Reading. A.D. 1643. Taken by the Parliamentary forces under the Earl of Essex after a siege of ten days.
- B. Stratton, A.D. 1643 (May 19). The Royalists are victorious. B. Chalgrove, A.D. 1643 (June 18). The Royalists under Prince Rupert defeat the Parliamentary army. Hampden mortally wounded.
- B. Atherton Moor, A.D. 1643 (June 30). The Royalists under the Marquis of Newcastle defeat the Parliamentary forces under Lord Fairfax.
- B. Rounding Down, A.D. 1643 (July 13). The Royalists victorious.
- 8. Bristol, A.D. 1643. Captured by the Royalists under Prince Rupert.
- S. Gloucester, A.D. 1643. Besieged by the Royalists under
- Charles I. The siege raised by Essex.

 B. Newbury, A.D. 1643 (Sept. 20). The Royalists under Charles I. and Prince Rupert are defeated by the Parliamentary
- forces under the Earl of Essex.

 B. Nantwich, A.D. 1644 (Jan. 25). The Royalists are defeated.

 B. Newark, A.D. 1644. The Royalists under Prince Rupert de-
- feat the Parliamentary army.
- B. Marston Moor, A.D. 1644 (July 2). The Royalists under Prince Rupert and the Marquis of Newcastle are defeated by the Parliamentary forces under the Earl of Leven and Cromwell.

- B. Tippermuir, A.D. 1644 (Sept. 1). The Covenanters under Lord Elcho are defeated by the Royalists under the Marquis of Montrose.
- B. Newbury (second battle), A.D. 1644 (Oct. 27). An indecisive battle between the Royalists under Charles I. and the Parliamentary forces under the Earl of Manchester and Cromwell.
- B. Inverlochy, A.D. 1645 (Feb. 2). The Covenanters under the Marquis of Argyle are defeated by the Royalists under the Marquis of Montrose.
- B. Dundee, A.D. 1645. The Covenanters defeated.
- B. Auldearn, A.D. 1645 (May 4).
 B. Naseby, A.D. 1645 (June 14).
 The Covenanters defeated.
 The Royalists under Charles I. and Prince Rupert are defeated by the Parliamentary forces under Cromwell, Ireton, and Fairfax.
- B. Alford, A.D. 1645 (July 2). The Covenanters defeated.
- B. Kilsyth, A.D. 1645 (Aug. 19). The Covenanters defeated.
 B. Philiphaugh, A.D. 1645 (Sept. 13). The Royalists under the Marquis of Montrose are defeated by the Covenanters under General David Leslie.
- B. Preston, A.D. 1648. The Royalists under the Duke of Hamilton are defeated by the Parliamentary forces under Cromwell.
- S. Drogheda,
- I Towns in Ireland captured by the Parliamentary S. Wexford,
- S. Clonmell, forces under Cromwell, A.D. 1649.
- S. Kinsale, B. Dunbar, A.D. 1650. The Scots under Leslie defeated by the English under Cromwell.
- B. Worcester, A.D. 1651. The Royalists under Prince Charles defeated by the Parliamentary forces under Cromwell.
- S. Limerick, A.D. 1651. Captured by Ireton.
- N. B. off Texel, A.D. 1653. Between the English and the Dutch. The English victorious.
- N. B. off Lowestoft, A.D. 1665. Between the English and the Dutch. The English victorious.
- N. B. off N. Foreland, A.D. 1666. Between the English and the Dutch. The English defeated.
- B. Rullion Green, A.D. 1666. The Covenanters under Colonel Wallace are defeated by the English under General Dalziel.
- B. Drumclog, A.D. 1679. The Royal troops under Claverhouse defeated by the Covenanters.
- The Covenanters defeated by B. Bothwell Bridge, A.D. 1679. the Royal troops under the Duke of Monmouth.
- B. Sedgemoor, A.D. 1685. The rebels under the Duke of Monmouth defeated by the Royal troops under Lord Feversham.
- S. Londonderry, A.D. 1689. Unsuccessfully besieged by James II. Relieved after being invested for 105 days.

with Spain, which now entered into a defensive alliance with England, France, and Holland. In spite of fierce opposition, Walpole's influence in Parliament was gradually increasing. His policy was to keep England at peace and himself in power, and as his administration was marked by a period of tranquillity which lasted ten years, the commerce of the country was extended, and national prosperity greatly increased. To put a stop to smuggling, which was now carried on to a great extent, A.D. 1733. Walpole introduced into the House of Commons will be a supposed in the House of Com

The Porteous Riot.

to repeal the Septennial Act, but failed.

In 1736, Edinburgh was the scene of a very serious Two smugglers, named Wilson and Robertson, were condemned to death for having robbed a collector of Excise in the neighbourhood of Kirkcaldy. When in church hearing the condemned sermon, Wilson overpowered the soldiers, and Robertson escaped. sympathy was felt for Wilson, who had been the means of liberating his fellow-prisoner. His execution, however, was proceeded with, and after it was over the hangman and soldiers were attacked by the mob. Porteous. captain of the guard of the city, having been struck by one of the rioters, ordered his men to fire on the crowd, and several were killed. Porteous having exceeded his duty, was tried, found guilty of murder, and condemned to death. He afterwards obtained a reprieve, but this act of clemency only tended to excite the fury of the people, who burst open the prison, and having seized Porteous, dragged him to the Grassmarket, and there hanged him on a dyer's pole. In consequence of this violent outrage, the Provost was dismissed from office, and a fine of £2000 imposed on the city, for the benefit of the widow of the unfortunate captain.

The Prince of Wales, having allied himself with the Tories, was encouraged by them to demand an increase of income. The King refused to agree to this demand, and henceforth father and son lived at enmity with each other. In the same year (1737) died the prudent and virtuous Queen Caroline.

Hostilities with Spain Renewed.

A dispute arose with the Spanish Government, who prohibited our merchant sailors from trading with her colonies in South America. Walpole advocated peaceful measures, and endeavoured to settle the dispute by a convention, but all his efforts were unavailing, A.D. 1739. and war was accordingly proclaimed. The greatest enthusiasm prevailed: the London bells rung out merry peals, on hearing which the peace-loving minister was heard to say, "Ay, they may ring the bells now, but they will wring their hands before long."

Admiral Vernon, with a fleet of six vessels, captured Porto Bello on the Isthmus of Darien (Nov. 22). Another expedition, under Admiral Anson, was sent to attack the Spanish possessions on the coast of South America. He took and plundered the town of Paita in Chili, and in consequence of the success which attended Vernon in his attack on Porto Bello, he was entrusted with the command of a second expedition, which failed in a combined attack on the strong fortress of Carthagena in South America. The news of this disaster caused great indignation in England, and Walpole, finding that he no longer enjoyed the confidence of Parliament, retired from office with the title of Earl of Oxford. A new ministry was formed by Pulteney, whose ambition was further gratified by being raised to the peerage, with the title of Earl of Bath. His administration lasted only a short time, and the management of affairs passed into the hands of the Pelhams, who continued in power for fifteen years.

War of the Austrian Succession.

The death of the Emperor Charles VI. of Austria, A.D. 1740, caused the whole of Europe to be involved in war, which lasted many years. The Emperor having no male issue, his daughter Maria Theresa, Queen of Hungary, according to the terms of a Treaty called the Pragmatic Sanction, should have succeeded to the whole of his dominions. But Frederick II., King of Prussia, attempted to deprive her of Silesia, and the Elector of Bavaria was supported by Louis XV., King of France, in his claims to the Imperial throne. At this juncture the English monarch resolved to support Maria Theresa. of Stair, who was appointed to command the troops, advanced into Germany, but finding himself in danger of being cut off from supplies, endeavoured to avoid an engagement. In this critical situation King George and his son, the Duke of Cumberland, arrived, and 23rd June, in a desperate battle at Dettingen defeated the A.D. 1743. French under Marshall Noailles. The King showed great courage, but since this engagement no English sovereign has commanded an army in person. The French now withdrew from Germany, but Louis XV. declared war against England. Marshal Saxe invested Tournay with a strong force, and the Duke of Cumberland, with inferior numbers, advanced to its relief. French were stationed behind the village of Fontenov. and here Cumberland resolved to attack them. After a long and bloody contest, the Duke was defeated, with the loss of 10,000 men, and shortly afterwards the whole of Flanders fell into the hands of the Peace was afterwards concluded at Aix-la-Chapelle, which placed matters on nearly the same footing as they had been at the commencement of the war. The National Debt was now increased to eighty millions.

Second Jacobite Rebellion.

The successes gained by the French over the English in Flanders induced Prince Charles Edward, the Young

Pretender, to make an attempt to recover the throne of his ancestors. Louis, acting on the advice of the King of Prussia, declined to give him any assistance, so that the Prince had to trust to his own resources. procured some money and ammunition, he set sail for Scotland, and landed at Moidart in Inverness-shire, with only five or six attendants, A.D. 1745. On his arrival he was met by a number of his most steadfast adherents, who vainly endeavoured to dissuade him from engaging in an enterprise which held out little or no prospect of success. He raised his standard in Glenfinnan, and was speedily joined by Cameron of Lochiel, the Macdonalds, and Sir John Cope, comseveral other Highland clans. mander of the King's forces in Scotland, marched northwards as far as Inverness, thus leaving the whole of the southern counties exposed to the inroads of the Pretender's forces, which now amounted to 1600 men. The Prince did not fail to take advantage of Cope's false movement; marching southward, and being joined by numerous reinforcements, he entered Perth, where he made a short stay, and then proceeded towards Edinburgh. He entered the capital in triumph, and took up his residence in Holyrood, the ancient palace of his ancestors.

In the meantime, Sir John Cope had sailed from Aberdeen, and had landed his forces at Dunbar. The young Chevalier at once set out to give him battle. armies came in sight of each other at Prestonpans, a village near Edinburgh. The action 21st Sept., which followed lasted only a short time, and ended in the total defeat of the King's forces, and the conqueror returned in triumphal procession to Edinburgh, the band playing, "The King shall have his own again." This victory gave the Prince an additional supply of arms and ammunition, of which he stood much in need, and at the same time increased the number of his adherents. By the end of October his army amounted to nearly 6000 men, and with these he resolved to cross the border. He entered England on the west, and laid siege to Carlisle, which surrendered in three days. At Manchester, where he fixed his head-quarters, he was joined by a number of the English Jacobites, and then pushed on to Derby. where a council of war was held to determine the plan of future operations. His great desire was to reach London, 130 miles distant, but his council advised him to retreat, as the Duke of Cumberland, who had arrived from Flanders, was at Lichfield with a large army, and General Wade was marching through Yorkshire at the head of 14,000 men, while a third lay at Finchley Common commanded by the King. In such a critical state of affairs, and with no immediate prospect of foreign aid, the young Prince, with great reluctance, consented to return to On the 6th of December he commenced his retreat, which was conducted by Lord George Murray in such excellent order that the Duke of Cumberland failed to overtake him. Prince Charles arrived in Glasgow on the 26th, and then marched to Stirling, where he obtained large accessions to his forces. He defeated the royal army at Falkirk, but this victory not being very decisive, he proceeded northwards, and passed the remaining part of the winter in the neighbourhood of Inverness. 16th April, The Duke of Cumberland pursued, and the A.D. 1746. memorable and decisive battle of Culloden was fought, which resulted in the complete overthrow of the Pretender's army.

The famous Rebellion of '45 was now at an end, but the triumph thus gained was disgraced by the barbarous cruelties inflicted on the vanquished. The unfortunate Prince, after his defeat, wandered for nearly six months among the Highlands and Western Isles, enduring many hardships, and often making hair-breadth escapes. A reward of £30,000 was offered for his apprehension, and though his place of concealment was known to many, he was never betrayed. Charles bade farewell to Scotland (Sept. 20), embarking almost at the same spot where he had landed fourteen months before. To no one was the Prince more indebted for his preservation than to a young lady, named Flora Macdonald, who, at the risk of her own life, nobly undertook to save him from his enemies.

"Her name," says Dr. Johnson, "will for ever live in history." Many noblemen who took part in this rebellion were executed, and great numbers of inferior rank were transported for life to the American colonies. Lords Balmerino, Kilmarnock, and Lovat, who were beheaded on Tower Hill, were the last persons who suffered this punishment in England.

The Seven Years' War.

A war, known as the Seven Years' War, broke out between England and France, in consequence of disputes about the boundaries of their respective American colonies, A.D. 1756. Hostilities between the two countries were carried on in Europe and India, as well as in America. A powerful French fleet, with ten thousand troops on board, sailed from Toulon and captured the island of Minorca, which had been taken from the Spaniards in the reign of 'Queen Anne. Byng, the English Admiral, had been sent from Gibraltar to intercept the French squadron, but was brought to A.D. 1756. trial for not doing his duty, was found guilty, and condemned to death. He was shot at Portsmouth, on the quarter-deck of the St. George. Byng met his fate with dignified courage and resignation.

In America, the French held Canada. The whole of this extensive and valuable territory was inhabited by French subjects, and its forts were garrisoned by French troops. The neighbouring British settlements were the scene of frequent aggressions, which the government at home now resolved to check. At the commencement of the war our forces made a number of unsuccessful attacks on the French forts, and in order to save the honour of the nation, some master-spirit was required to guide the affairs of the state.

Fortunately for the glory of England, William Pitt, the Great Commoner, was now chosen to preside in the British Cabinet. His clear judgment and bold spirit enabled him to overcome every obstacle, and ere long his efforts were crowned with success. Quickly the French

forts fell into the hands of the British, and at sea the victories gained by Hawke, Howe, and Boscawen retrieved the honour of the British flag. Pitt's great object was the conquest of Canada, and its annexation to the British dominions. General Wolfe was sent to take Quebec, then the capital of the French provinces. city was strongly fortified, and held by a French officer named Montcalm. Wolfe formed the idea of climbing the rocky precipices above the city, called the Heights of Abraham. This hazardous undertaking was accomplished during night, and next morning the British sept., troops engaged the French in a deadly struggle. A.D. 1759. In the action both commanders were mortally wounded. As Wolfe lay dying, a cry was heard, "They run! They run!" "Who run?" inquired the expiring "The French," was the reply. "Then," said he, "I die content." In five days Quebec surrendered, and in the following year the whole of Canada was ceded to

England.

French aggression was not confined to America only, it extended also to our settlements in India. Dupleix, the French Governor of Pondicherry, formed a grand scheme for the conquest of the greater part of the peninsula, and the expulsion of the English from the whole of their possessions. At first he gained a number of successes. but a youth named Clive, a clerk in the Civil Service, was destined ere long to overthrow the ambitious design of the French Governor. Young Clive left his desk and entered the army, where he soon gave proof of great military genius. He distinguished himself at the siege of Pondicherry, and afterwards captured the French province of Arcot (1751). An attack was made on Calcutta by Dowlah, the rajah of Bengal. The fort was taken, and the town fell into the hands of the enemy (1756). A terrible fate befel a number of the English prisoners. One hundred and forty-six of these unhappy victims were thrown into the Black Hole, a prison only eighteen feet square, with two small openings for the admission of light and air. This happened during summer, when the heat was greatest, and on the morning following their imprisonment only twenty-three came out alive. The rest were suffocated, and the few who survived died shortly afterwards of fever contracted during their short but dreadful captivity. Clive, now promoted to the rank of colonel, attacked the rajah, and recovered Calcutta. But the most signal of all his triumphs was gained on the plain of Plassey. A.D. 1757. With only three thousand men, he titterly defeated the Nabob's forces, which amounted to seventy thousand. For his eminent services, Clive was created an Irish peer, under the title of Lord Clive, Baron of Plassey.

In the midst of such victories George II. died suddenly of heart disease at Kensington, A.D. 1760.

GENERAL FACTS.

During this reign an important change was effected on the Calendar. According to the Old Style, the year commenced on March 24, but an Act was passed (1752) which declared that henceforth the year should begin on January 1. In order to make the Calendar correspond exactly with the solar year, the 3rd of September was altered to the 14th, thus leaving out eleven days. All European nations, except Russia, calculate their time according to the New Style. Another measure was passed in Parliament, declaring all clandestine marriages illegal. The newspaper press now began to acquire considerable political importance. The art of stereotyping was introduced, and the foundation of the British Museum was laid in 1753.

SUMMARY OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE II.

A.D. 1727-A.D. 1760.

George II., only son of George I. Born at Hanover, A.D. 1683. Married Caroline of Anspach. Died at Kensington, A.D. 1760.

Sir Robert Walpole continued to act as chief minister of the Crown for fifteen years. His great financial scheme was his Excise Bill, which made wine and tobacco liable to Excise duties. It met with much opposition, and had to be withdrawn. Porteous Riots took place in Edinburgh, A.D. 1736. In 1739 war was declared against Spain. Admiral Vernon took the town of Porto Bello on the Isthmus of Darien, but failed to capture the fortress of Carthagena in South America, A.D. 1741.

On the death of Charles VI. of Austria in 1740, a war, known as the War of the Austrian Succession, began. Charles had appointed his daughter, Maria Theresa, heir to his dominions, portions of which were seized by Frederick II. of Prussia and the Elector of Bavaria. Britain took the side of Maria Theresa, and France supported the claims of Frederick and the Elector. King George in person defeated the French at Dettingen in Bavaria, A.D. 1743, but at Fontency in Belgium the English were beaten by the French under Marshal Saxe, A.D. 1745. Peace was made at Aix-la-Chapelle, A.D. 1748.

A Second Jacobite Rebellion commenced in Scotland, A.D. 1745, which lasted for about nine months. The young Chevalier, Prince Charles Edward, son of the Old Pretender. having landed at Moidart in Inverness-shire, defeated Sir John Cope at Prestonpans in Haddington, then marched south as far as Derby, but, on the approach of the Royalists, retreated northwards, and was finally overthrown by the Duke of Cumberland at Culloden Moor (April 16, 1746). He afterwards escaped to

France, and died, A.D. 1788.

Since the time of Walpole there had been no Prime Minister of mark, but William Pitt now became the favourite, and, though disliked by the King, was made Premier, A.D. 1757. In the previous year, a war, known as the Seven Years' War, broke out between England and France. Under the able guidance of Pitt the foundation of our Indian Empire was laid by Clive, who gained the battle of Plassey, A.D. 1757. The conquest of Canada was effected by Wolfe, who fell at the taking of Quebec, A.D. 1759. The King died suddenly at Kensington, A.D. 1760.

QUESTIONS.

George's Personal History - His Accession - Walpole's Administration—The Porteous Riot—Hostilities with Spain Renewed — War of the Austrian Succession — Second Jacobite Rebellion-The Seven Years' War-Death of the King-General Facts.

2. In what respect had he the advantage over his father?

3. Whom did he retain as chief minister of the crown? 4. What disputes did the Treaty of

Seville settle? Date?

1. Relate the personal history of | 5. What was the nature of Walpole's

policy?
6. What Bill did he introduce into 7. What was the cause of the Porteous Riot? Date?

8. What led to a quarrel between the King and the Prince of Wales?

9. What led Britain to declare war against Spain?

10. State the leading events of the war.

11. What caused Walvole to resign

11. What caused Walpole to resign office?

12. State the circumstances which led

12. State the circumstances which led to the War of the Austrian Succession. 13. Give the date and results of the various battles fought.

14. Who were the respective commanders?

15. What treaty brought the war to a close? Date?

a close? Date?
16. What was the name of the Young Pretender?

17. Where did he land, and what was the number of his attendants?

18. By whom was he joined?

19. Over whom did he obtain a victory? Place and date?
20. Of what advantage was this to

20. Of what advantage was this to him?

21. What success attended his invasion of England?

22. Where was a council of war held?
23. What resolution was here come to?
24. What reasons were assigned for

24. What reasons were assigned for this?
25. Who conducted the retreat?

26. On their arrival in Scotland what battles were fought?

27. Give the date and result of each. 28. What became of the Prince after his final defeat?

29. To whom was he much indebted for his preservation?

30. Who were the last persons that were beheaded in England?

31. What led to the Seven Years'

32. In what countries was it carried on?

 State the events which took place in Europe.

34. Who at this time held Canada?
35. What distinguished statesman

was at the head of the Government?

36. Who was sent to take Quebec?

37. Give particulars with date. 38. By whom was the foundation of

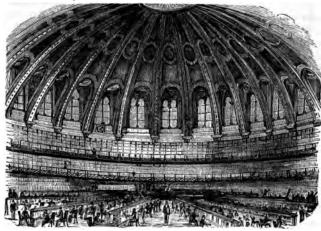
our Indian Empire laid?
39. State some of his most brilliant

achievements.
40. Which was the greatest of all his triumphs? Date?

41. How was he rewarded for his services?

42. When and where did George II. die? 43. What general facts are recorded

in this reign?
44. In what year was the foundation of the British Museum laid?



READING ROOM, BRITISH MUSEUM.

CHAPTER III.

GEORGE III.—1760-1820.

SECTION I.

George's Personal History—His Accession—Close of the Seven Years' War—Case of John Wilkes—The American War—Siege of Gibraltar—The Gordon Ries.

George's Personal History—His Accession—Close of the Seven Years' War.

George III., eldest son of Frederick, late Prince of Wales. and grandson of George II., was born in London, June 4, He married Charlotte Sophia, daughter of Charles Frederick of Mecklenburg-Strelitz. His children were: George, who succeeded to the throne; Frederick, Duke of York; William, who became King William IV .: Edward, Duke of Kent, father of Queen Victoria; Ernest Augustus, Duke of Cumberland; Augustus Frederick, Duke of Sussex; Adolphus Frederick, Duke of Cambridge; and six daughters. The reign of George III., the longest recorded in British history, may be divided into three sections—the first extending from the date of the King's accession to the Treaty of Versailles in 1783, which ratified the independence of America; the second, from 1783 to the union of the Parliament of Ireland with that of Great Britain in 1801; and the third, from 1801 to the death of the King in 1820.

George III. was twenty-two years of age when he ascended the throne. His knowledge of the language, habits, and institutions of the country, rendered his accession more popular than that of the two preceding monarchs. "Born and educated in this country," he said in his opening speech to Parliament, "I glory in the name of Briton." This expression gave great satisfaction, and raised the new King still higher in the esteem of the nation. His moral and religious character, his dignified conduct, and his temperate habits, had a beneficial effect on the manners of the Court, which, under the first two Georges, had been extremely corrupt and immoral.

The war with France still continued, and a treaty, called the Family Compact, was formed between France and Spain against England. This league led Pitt to propose that hostilities should forthwith be declared against both of these countries; but his views not having received the approval of his colleagues, the great Commoner resigned office, A.D. 1761. He received from government an annual pension of £3000, and his wife was raised to

the peerage, with the title of Baroness Chatham.

The Earl of Bute, a Scottish nobleman, and late tutor of the King, now became Prime Minister. In the beginning of the year 1762 war was declared against Spain, and though of short duration, Britain gained a number of brilliant successes. Spain was deprived of the Philippine Islands, and of the rich city of Havannah, and France lost a number of her West India Islands. In a short time both of these countries were desirous that hostilities should cease, and Bute, anxious to reduce the public expenditure, readily yielded to their wishes. A Treaty of Peace was signed at Paris, 10th February, 1763, which restored to France most of the islands she had lost. but the British retained Canada, recovered Minorca, and obtained Florida from Spain in exchange for Havannah. The only combatants now in the field were Prussia and Austria, and a treaty signed at **Hubertsburg** in Saxony brought the Seven Years' War to a close.

Case of John Wilkes-The American War.

The peace was denounced by Pitt, and a general feeling of indignation was raised against Bute and the other members of his administration. John Wilkes, member of Parliament for Aylesbury, attacked in a violent and scurrilous manner the King and his government in a paper which he published, called the North Briton. The government ordered his arrest, and Wilkes was accordingly apprehended and committed to the Tower, but was shortly afterwards discharged, on account of his privilege as a member of Parliament. When Parliment met, the obnoxious paper was ordered to be burnt by the hands

of the common hangman. A riot ensued; crowds assembled in the streets, shouting, "Wilkes! and Liberty!" Wilkes then withdrew to France, and having been found guilty of the charge preferred against him, was expelled from the House of Commons. After signal reverses of fortune, Wilkes became Sheriff, and afterwards Lord Mayor of London. At a subsequent period he entered Parliament as member for Middlesex.

Grenville, now Prime Minister, introduced a bill for A.D. 1765. the purpose of imposing certain taxes on the American colonies in order to assist in defraying the expenses connected with their protection. measure was called the Stamp Act, but from the determined opposition it met with from all classes in America. Grenville's successor, the Marquis of Rockingham, repealed the obnoxious statute. Another Act, however equally distasteful to the colonists, was passed in 1767. imposing taxes on tea, glass, paper, and other articles, but when Lord North became Premier, in 1770, he repealed the whole of the taxes except that on tea, which was retained in order to assert the right of Britain to tax America. This was the cause of the quarrel between the two countries. On the arrival at Boston of two vessels laden with tea (1773), a number of the citizens boarded the ships, and threw great quantities of the cargo over-For this outrage, Boston was deprived of its commercial privileges, and Massachusetts of its charter. In the following year a convention of delegates from the several States met at Philadelphia, and published a declaration of rights which they solemnly agreed to maintain and defend.

An appeal to the sword could not now be avoided, A.D. 1775. and the first blood in this disastrous strife was shed at Lexington near Boston, in an engagement between the Massachusetts militia and the royal troops under General Gage. The colonists were successful, but the arrival of fresh troops from England under Generals Howe, Burgoyne, and Clinton, enabled Gage to make preparations for carrying on hostilities on a larger

George Washington, who had been appointed commander-in-chief of the colonial forces, gave battle to the royal troops at Bunker's Hill, which overlooked the city of Boston. The Americans were defeated, but the loss of the victors greatly exceeded that of the vanquished. General Howe having quitted Boston, the city was taken possession of by Washington, and the British troops embarked for Halifax. At Philadelphia the members of Congress issued their famous Declaration of Independence, by which the colonies, under the name 4th July.
A.D. 1776. of the United States of America, renounced all allegiance to the mother country. At this time Admiral Lord Howe arrived from England with large reinforcements, and joined his brother who had landed his forces on Long Island in order to dislodge the Americans. Washington was defeated at Brooklyn, and New York fell into the hands of the British, who held it till the close of the war. Lord Howe, finding it impossible to penetrate into Pennsylvania through New Jersey, embarked his troops at New York, proceeded up the Chesapeake, and landed his forces at the head of the Elk, 25th August, A.D. 1777. Washington hastened to meet him, and took up a strong position on the Brandywine River. where an obstinate engagement took place, in which the English gained a complete victory (11th September), after which Philadelphia vielded to the conquerors. Hitherto the result of the war had been, on the whole, favourable to the Royalists, but in the following year the British general, Burgoyne, was compelled to surrender, with about 6000 men, at Saratoga. This defeat led A.D. 1778. France to declare in favour of the Americans.

It was now that Pitt, Earl of Chatham, the distinguished orator and statesman, made his last appearance in Parliament. When addressing the House of Lords, in his usual eloquent and impressive manner, on the subject of the war, he was seized with a convulsive fit, and fell insensible into the arms of those beside him. He was carried home, and died a few weeks afterwards, in the seventieth year of his age, A.D. 1778. He was buried in

Westminster Abbey, and an annuity of £4000 was settled on his descendants.

In order to conciliate the colonists, the British Government repealed the obnoxious tea duty, and declared that in future America would be relieved of all taxation; commissioners were also appointed with powers to treat with the Americans, who, however, refused to listen to any terms which fell short of a full acknowledgment of the Independence of the States. This was the only condition to which the commissioners could not consent, and negotiations were accordingly broken off.

Meanwhile France had joined the colonists in the war against Britain, and in the following year (1779) her example was followed by Spain and Holland. The British troops under General Clinton took Charleston, and at Camden, Lord Cornwallis gained a victory over

General Gates, A.D. 1780.

The battle fought at Eutaw Springs, about sixty miles from Charleston, was the last, and one of 8th Sept.
A.D. 1781 the most obstinate engagements between the armies of Britain and America. Both parties claimed the victory, but Cornwallis, according to instructions, retired to York Town, which was quickly invested by Washington and Lafayette, while a French fleet under Count De Grasse blocked up York river. Cornwallis informed Clinton of his critical position, and as he received no definite promise of aid, after a brave defence of three weeks, he reluctantly surrendered with a force of about seven thousand men. Various skirmishes followed. but this disaster virtually terminated the American War of Independence. France and Spain would still have carried on the war, but articles of peace between Great Britain and America were signed at Paris, and on the 3rd September, A.D. 1783, the Independence of the thirteen United States was formally acknowledged by the Treaty of Versailles.

Siege of Gibraltar—The Gordon Riots.

Towards the close of the American war, Gibraltar was

gallantly defended by General Elliot, who, for nearly four years, defied the attacks and baffled all the efforts of the combined French and Spanish fleets to capture this important fortress. This was the most memorable of all the sieges; it lasted from July 1779 till January 1783, and has ever since remained in undisturbed possession of the British. When peace was concluded, the veteran defender was raised to the peerage with the title of Lord Heathfield.

In the year 1780, London became the scene of a number of serious and disgraceful riots, caused by the repeal of certain penal laws affecting Roman Catholics. A crazy nobleman, Lord George Gordon, headed the anti-Catholic party, and under his auspices a mob having assembled in St. George's Fields, proceeded to the House of Commons to petition against the repeal, but Parliament refused to grant the prayer of the petition. The mob then proceeded to acts of violence; Catholic chapels were set on fire; the prisons were broken open and burnt, as well as several private houses belonging to Catholic families. The rioters were in possession of the metropolis for five days, and it was not till the military had been called out, and nearly five hundred persons killed, that order was restored. Many of the ringleaders were executed. Lord George was tried, but acquitted. He afterwards became a convert to the Jewish religion, and died insane.

SUMMARY OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE III. SECTION I. A.D. 1760—A.D. 1783.

George III. eldest son of Frederick, Prince of Wales, who died in 1751, and grandson of George II. Born in London, a.D. 1738. Married Charlotte of Mecklenburg-Strelitz. Died at Windsor, a.D. 1820. Reigned 60 years.

The accession of George III., a born Englishman, was hailed with delight. Pitt the "Great Commoner," resigned office, A.D. 1761, and in the following year war was declared against Spain, which was brought to a close by the Treaty of Paris, 10th Feb. A.D. 1763. This was followed by the Treaty of Hubertsburg (Saxony), which terminated the Seven Years' War. In the same year John Wilkes was arrested by order of the government for having written a number of offensive articles in a paper called the North Briton.

A measure called the Stamp Act, passed A.D. 1765, ultimately led to a war between Britain and America, which lasted from A.D. 1775 till A.D 1783. The chief engagements during the war were: Bunker's Hill, A.D. 1775, in which the Americans were defeated; Brandywine River, A.D 1777, the Americans again defeated; Saratoga, A.D. 1777, the British under General Burgoyne surrendered; Charleston and Camden, A.D. 1780, the British victorious; Eutaw Springs, A.D. 1781, both parties claimed the victory; York Town, A.D. 1781, the British under Lord Cornwallis surrendered. The war terminated A.D. 1783, and the Independence of the Thirteen United States was formally acknowledged by the Treaty of Versailles, 3rd September, A.D. 1783.

The combined French and Spanish fleets failed in an attempt to capture Gibraltar, the siege lasted from 1779 till 1783. 1780 the Gordon Riots took place in London, caused by the repeal of several enactments against Roman Catholics. For nearly a week the capital was in the power of a furious mob. Twenty-one of the rioters were executed; Gordon was sent to the Tower, but

afterwards acquitted.

QUESTIONS.

George's Personal History—His Accession—Close of the Seven Years' War-Case of John Wilkes-The American War-Siege of Gibraltar—The Gordon Riots.

1. Relate the Personal History of George III.

2. Into what three sections may this reign be divided?

- 3. What rendered George's accession more popular than the two preceding monarchs?
- 4. What was the "Family Compact?" 5. When, and for what reason, did
- Pitt resign office? 6. What success did Britain obtain in the war against France and Spain?
- 7. When did the war end?8. What treaty brought the Seven
- Years' War to a close? 9. State what you know of John
- Wilkes. What was the Stamp Act? By whom was it introduced?
 - 11. Who repealed it? Why?

 - 12. What other act was passed?
 13. Why was the tax on tea retained?
 14. To what did this lead?

 - 15. What happened at Boston?

- 16. When did the war with America commence?
 - 17. Mention, with dates, the chief
- engagements which took place.
 18. What happened to the Earl of Chatham when addressing the House of Lords on the subject of the war?
- 19. What proposal did the British Government make in order to conciliate the colonists?
- 20. State the result.
 21. What disaster virtually terminated the American war?
- 22. Mention the date and place of the treaty which formally acknowledged the Independence of the United States.
- 22. Give an account of the last siege sustained by Gibraltar. 23. State the cause of the Gordon
- riots. Date.
 24. What acts of violence were com
- mitted by the mob?
 - 25. How was order restored?

CHAPTER IV.

GEORGE III. (Continued):—1783-1801. SECTION II.

Coalition Ministry—Pitt Administration—Warren Hastings—The French Revolution—War with France—Mutinies in the Navy—Rebellion in Ireland —Battle of the Nile—War in India—Union with Ireland.

Coalition Ministry-Pitt Administration-Warren Hastings.

The war with America had added above a hundred millions to the national debt. Shortly after the preliminaries of peace had been concluded, the great Coalition Ministry, under the Duke of Portland, was formed, in which Lord North, the leader of the Tory party, acted along with Charles Fox, the leader of the Reformers.* This administration was very unpopular both with the King and the people, and on the defeat of a bill introduced by Fox for the management of affairs in India, his Majesty dismissed Portland and his colleagues from office.

William Pitt, second son of the late Earl of Chatham, now became Prime Minister at the early age of twenty-four. He had to contend for a time against a factious opposition, but ultimately succeeded in carrying A.D. 1784. through both Houses an East India Bill. This measure established a Board of Control, composed of six members, who were to act along with the directors of the East India Company in the management of the affairs of India.

Warren Hastings, the first Governor-General of India, returned to England after twelve years of distinguished service in that part of the British dominions. He endeavoured to carry on the work which Lord Clive, his illustrious predecessor, had commenced. He captured the French factories in Bengal, recovered Pondicherry, defeated Hyder Ali, and thus obtained possession of the Presidency of Madras. So successful was his administration, that

^{*} By a Coalition Ministry is meant one composed of parties not of the same opinion, who yet agree to sink their differences and act in common.

when he left Iniis the country was peaceful and property and its reverse more than doubled. His reputation, however, was stained by various alleged acts of cruelty and extortion, and the Commons, yielding to the vehement eloquence of Burke, Sheridan, and Fox, resolved to draw up articles of impeachment against him. His trial began in February 1788, and was not concluded till April 1795, when Hastings was acquitted by the Lord of the charges brought against him.

In the autumn of 1788 the King became mentally deranged, which rendered the appointment of a Regennecessary. Fox and the Whig leaders advocated the inherent right of the Prince of Wales to the Regency-Pitt, on the other hand, maintained that he had no legal claim till it was conferred on him by Parliament. While the dispute was going on, the King, to the great joy of the nation, recovered, and thus further proceedings were rendered unnecessary.

The French Revolution-War with France.'

The peace which had continued in Europe for a number of years was now interrupted by the breaking out of the French Resolution. This with crisis in the affairs of France of causes which can only ment was despotic, and the finances were in nobles, deprayed and dissolutionables, university university.

and on the 1st of February France formally declared war against Great Britain, and thus commenced a contest which raged in Europe with terrible fierceness for more

than twenty years.

An expedition under the Duke of York, second son of the King, was sent to Holland, which was then invaded by the French, but the Duke, after severe disasters, was compelled to return to England. In the south of France. Toulon had declared for Louis XVII., but this important seaport was besieged by Napoleon Bonaparte, a young officer of artillery, and Lord Hood, the British Admiral, who had been received into the city, was forced to abandon it. The progress of events on the Continent was more favourable to France than England, but in naval operations the British fleet still maintained its superiority. The first of these naval triumphs was gained by Lord Howe, over the French fleet off Brest, A.D. 1794. Several of the French West India Islands also were taken. the beginning of the year 1797, Sir John Jervis gained a brilliant victory over the Spanish fleet off Cape St. Vin-For this success he was raised to the peerage, and Nelson, who was second in command, was made an admiral, and received the Order of the Bath. same year another great triumph was achieved by Admiral Duncan, over the French and Dutch fleets, off The gallant commander was rewarded Camperdown. with a peerage, and a pension of £3000 a year.

Notwithstanding these successes the prospects of England were gloomy enough. The enormous expenses of the war had greatly increased the amount of taxes, and the people, dreading a French invasion, rushed to the bank to exchange their notes for gold. Payment in cash was suspended, and an issue of paper money was authorised by Act of Parliament. Discontent and ill-feeling prevailed, and the King, on his way to Parliament, was insulted by a mob, who demanded peace, cheap bread,

and Pitt's dismissal.

Mutinies in the Navy-Rebellion in Ireland.

To add to the troubles of the nation, two alarming mutinies broke out in the navy. The sailors of the Channel Fleet complained of the low rate of pay, the scanty supply of rations, the want of proper medical attendance, and the harsh treatment received from their Their complaints were listened to, concessions granted, and in a short time this dangerous revolt was suppressed. No sooner, however, had the alarm caused by this outbreak subsided than the same mutinous spirit manifested itself in the North Sea Fleet, stationed at the Nore. The sailors expelled their officers, and chose Richard Parker, a seaman of great ability, as their commander. They blockaded the Thames, and threatened to bombard Vigorous measures were adopted by the ministry to suppress this mutiny, which after some difficulty was effectually quelled. Parker and other ringleaders were hanged at the yard-arm, but the rest were pardoned.

During the war of the French Revolution an association of malcontents was formed in Ireland, called the United Irishmen. The association proposed to set up an Irish republic on the model of France, and as Irish Catholics had for a long period been ripe for rebellion, they assembled in large numbers and commenced a regular warfare, A.D. 1798. They made an attack on New Ross, but were repulsed, and at Vinegar-hill, near Enniscorthy, they were completely routed. Several of the ringleaders were captured and executed, while others less guilty were pardoned. After the rebellion had been crushed, the British Government began to take steps to effect a closer connection between Britain and Ireland. This was accomplished by the legislative union of the two countries in 1801.

Battle of the Nile-War in India.

France now contemplated the conquest of Egypt, with the design of ultimately destroying British power in India. Napoleon was sent on this enterprise, and on his way up the Mediterranean, took possession of Malta, and afterwards landed his forces at Alexandria. Nelson found the French squadron in the Bay of Aboukir, and there fought the great Battle of the Nile, A.D. 1798. The conflict was fierce and bloody, and at its close it was found that the whole of the French ships, except two, were either captured or destroyed. This great victory gave the English the command of the Mediterranean. Nelson was raised to the peerage, with the title of Baron Nelson of the Nile. Napoleon, after the destruction of his fleet, advanced into Syria, reduced Gaza and Jaffa, but was repulsed at Acre by the Turks and English, under the gallant Sir Sydney Smith, A.D. 1799.

In India, the English laid siege to Seringapatam, the capital of the dominions of Tippoo Saib; the city was taken by storm, and the Sultan himself slain. His two sons were taken prisoners, and the whole of his treasures divided among the conquerors. It was in the war with Tippoo Saib that Colonel Arthur Wellesley, afterwards the Duke of Wellington, laid the

foundation of his military fame.

Union with Ireland.

This important measure was at first violently opposed by the Irish generally, but after much long and angry discussion, and the liberal distribution of bribes and honours, together with the prospect held out by Pitt that it would immediately be followed by the removal of all political disabilities from Catholics, it passed the Irish Parliament, and the Union came into operation on the first of January 1801. The two islands were henceforth incorporated into one kingdom, bearing the name of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland. The cross of the patron saint of Ireland, St. Patrick, was also added to those of St. George and St. Andrew, on the British flag.

SUMMARY OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE! III.

SECTION II. A.D. 1783-1801.

William Pitt, second son of the Earl of Chatham. became Premier at the age of twenty-four, A.D. 1783. He carried his India Bill, which established a Board of Control having supreme power over the government of India and the affairs of the com-The first Governor-General of India, Warren Hastings, returned to England, and was impeached by Parliament, A.D. His trial lasted for seven years (1788-1795), and ended in 1786. his acquittal. The year 1789 witnessed the breaking out of the French Revolution, and, in 1792, France was declared a Republic. In the following year, Britain engaged in a war with France, the chief events of which were: the defeat of the French fleet by Lord Howe, off Brest, A.D. 1794; the defeat of the Spanish fleet by Jervis and Nelson, off Cape St. Vincent, A.D. 1797; the defeat of the French and Dutch fleets by Admiral Duncan, off Camperdown, and the Great Battle of the Nile, in which Admiral Nelson destroyed nearly the whole of the French fleet, A.D. 1798. In the same year a rebellion broke out in Ireland, which led to the Legislative Union of Great Britain and Ireland, A.D. 1801.

QUESTIONS.

Coalition Ministry—Pitt Administration—Warren Hastings— The French Revolution-War with France-Mutinies in the Navy—Rebellion in Ireland—Battle of the Nile—War in India-Union with Ireland.

- 1. Where, and by whom, was the Great Coalition Ministry formed?
- 2. Explain the term "Coalition Ministry.
- 3. At what age did William Pitt become Prime Minister?
- 4. What were the provisions of his India Bill?
- 5. Who was the first Governor-General of India?
- 6. What were some of his successes? 7. In what condition did he leave India ?
- 8. What cast a stain upon his reputa-
- 9. How long did his trial last? State how it ended.
- 10. Give the date of the French Revolution.
- 11. State some of the causes which
- led to it.
 12. What were some of the results which it produced?

- 13. When did France declare war against Great Britain?
- 14. State some of the events of the war.
- 15. What naval triumphs were achieved by Britain?
- 16. Give the dates, and names of the commanders.
- 17. Describe the state of matters at home.
- 18. Relate the circumstances connected with the outbreak of mutinies in the navy.
- 19. Give an account of the rebellion in Ireland. Date.
- 20. What was the design of France with regard to India?
- 21. Who was sent on this enterprise?22. State the events which followed. Give dates.
- 23. When did the Legislative Union with Ireland take place?

CHAPTER V.

GEORGE III. (Continued).—1801-1820.

SECTION III.

Pitt Resigns Office—Battle of Copenhagen—Battle of Alexandria—Renewal of the War with France—Battle of Trafalgar—Grenville Ministry—Bombardment of Copenhagen—The Peninsular War—Battle of Waterloo—Napoleon Banished—State of the Country—Bombardment of Algiers—Death of the King—General Facts.

Pitt Resigns Office—Battle of Copenhagen—Battle of Alexandria

PITT had for a long time been desirous to bring in a Bill to repeal the Test and Corporation Act, which excluded Catholics and Dissenters from Parliament; but as this was resolutely opposed by the King, he retired from office, and was succeeded by Mr. Addington, the late Speaker. About this time his Majesty was seized with another attack of insanity, which, however, was happily of short duration.

In March an expedition, under the command of Admiral Sir Hyde Parker and Vice-Admiral Lord Nelson, set sail from Yarmouth Roads to check the design of Denmark, which had united with the other northern powers to resist the right of England to search The British fleet appeared neutral vessels. before Copenhagen, and after a few hours' 2nd April, desperate fighting the English gained a decisive victory, which was mainly, if not entirely, due to the undaunted courage displayed by Nelson, who afterwards received the thanks of a grateful country, and at the same time was raised to the rank of Viscount. victory, and the assassination of the Czar Paul, led to the dissolution of the league, or, as it was called, the Armed Neutrality, and a treaty, favourable to England, was signed at St. Petersburg. In the A.D. 1801. led an army into Egypt, and at Alexandria completely defeated the French troops which Napoleon had left behind him. In the contest Sir Ralph was mortally wounded, but the victory he achieved led to the evacuation of Egypt by the French. The war between France and England was brought to a close by a Treaty 27th Mar., of Peace which was signed at Amiens. According to the terms of this treaty, England surrendered all her conquests except Ceylon and Trinidad, the Knights of St. John receiving the island of Malta.

Renewal of the War with France-Battle of Trafalgar.

The peace of Amiens was of short duration. War was again declared in May 1803, and in the following year Mr. Pitt returned to office. On the renewal of hostilities Bonaparte ordered the arrest and imprisonment of 10,000 English travellers in France, who were not liberated till his abdication in 1814. Napoleon, who had been elected First Consul in 1802, now assumed the title of Emperor of France. His aim was to bring the whole of Europe under his sway, and the invasion of England formed part of his design. An immense number of forces was stationed along the northern coast of France ready to be conveyed across the Channel, but the fleet which was to transport them to England was closely watched and chased by Nelson up and down the seas, and was now. together with the Spanish squadron, blockaded in Cadiz. As soon as both fleets came out, they were attacked by Nelson off Trafalgar. Before the action commenced. Nelson gave orders to hoist on board his flag-ship, the Victory, the memorable signal, "England expects every man to do his duty." The battle commenced 21st Oct., about noon; by three o'clock the French Admiral Villeneuve was made prisoner, and before evening the naval power of France was annihilated. But this victory was dearly purchased, for just before the close of the engagement England's great naval hero fell mortally wounded. When informed that the victory was complete, he replied, "Thank God, I have done my duty" The whole of England mourned his loss.

Grenville Ministry—Abolition of the African Slave Trade— Bombardment of Copenhagen.

Pitt, exhausted by the cares and labours of official life, died the following year, and a new administration, designated the ministry of "All the Talents," was formed by Lord Grenville, with Fox as Foreign Secretary; but not many months had passed away ere the latter was summoned to follow his great political rival to the grave. The remains of both these illustrious statesmen repose side by side in Westminster Abbey. To the Grenville administration belongs the honour of abolishing the African slave trade; a.D. 1807. but the decisive blow given to the infamous traffic was effected mainly by the powerful and eloquent advocacy of Wilberforce, Clarkson, and Pitt.

The victories gained by Napoleon at Austerlitz in 1805, and at Jena in 1806, made him master of the whole of Austria and Prussia. He entered the Prussian capital in triumph, and issued his famous "Berlin Decree," which prohibited the nations of Europe from holding intercourse with Great Britain. The British Government having reason to suppose that the navy of Denmark was to be placed at the disposal of France, sent out an expedition to demand the surrender of the Danish warships till the close of the war. This order not being complied with, Copenhagen was bombarded, and at the end of four days the garrison capitulated, and the whole of the Danish fleet was taken to England, A.D. 1807.

The Peninsular War—A.D. 1808—1814.

Napoleon's ambition knew no bounds. To his already extensive dominions he now wished to add the Spanish Peninsula. A French army took possession of Lisbon in 1807, and in the following year the crown of Spain was conferred by Napoleon upon his own brother, Joseph, But the whole of the Spanish nation refused to submit to the yoke of the usurper, and having solicited assistance from England, Sir Arthur Wellesley was sent into the

Peninsula with an army of 10,000 men, and who ere long proved to be more than a match for the French conqueror. He defeated the French, under Junot, at Vimeiro (1808), after which the Convention of Cintra was concluded, and the French agreed to evacuate Portugal. Wellesley was now recalled, and the command of the army entrusted to Sir John Moore, who advanced into Spain, but was obliged to retreat northward, closely followed by Marshal

Soult. After a disastrous but well-managed retreat he reached Corunna, where he intended
to embark; but Soult having come up, a fierce
battle ensued, in which Sir John Moore fell, mortally
wounded. Victory, however, rewarded his bravery, and
the British troops were permitted to embark, under the
command of Sir John Hope. The French again invaded
Portugal, but Wellesley having returned from England
at the head of an increased number of forces, drove Soult
so hastily from Oporto "that he himself sat down to the
dinner which had been prepared for the French Marshal."

Having pursued the French into the interior of A.D. 1809. Spain, he defeated them at Talavera. For this important victory Wellesley was created Viscount Wellington of Talavera. The victorious commander now resolved to retire into Portugal, and was quickly followed by Massena, the greatest of all the French generals, with 80,000 troops, but his progress was checked at Busaco, with the loss of 5000 men. After the action, Wellington retired behind his three impregnable Lines of Torres Vedras.

This year (1811) the King was again afflicted with insanity, from which he never afterwards recovered, and, in consequence, George, Prince of Wales, was appointed Regent of the kingdom.

In the beginning of the year, Wellington quitted his strong position, determined to meet the enemy. The heights of Barossa, Fuentes D'Onoro, and Albuera, witnessed in succession great but bloody victories achieved over the bravest of the French generals. In 1812, Wellington stormed and captured the cities of

Ciudad Rodrigo and Badajos, and in the same year completely routed the French at Salamanca. The victorious troops now entered Madrid, but the French immediately began to concentrate all their forces for the purpose of regaining possession of the capital, and as Wellington had failed in an attempt to reduce the citadel of Burgos, he deemed it proper to retire into Portugal.

Napoleon Invades Russia—He Abdicates, and Retires to Elba.

This year, in the month of June, Napoleon led an immense army of 500,000 into Russia. Having defeated the Russians in several engagements, he reached the city of Moscow, and took up his residence in the Kremlin. The inhabitants soon after set fire to the city, and, in a short time, the once fair and stately piles of buildings became a mass of smouldering ruins. Without food, or even the means of shelter against the rigours of a Russian winter, Napoleon commenced his memorable but disastrous retreat. Of the 500,000 that had crossed the Niemen in June, only 40,000 re-crossed it in December; the rest had either fallen by the sword or perished on their homeward march, the horrors and calamities of which almost baffle description.

In Spain, the British under Wellington gained a splendid victory at Vittoria, the French leaving behind them a large quantity of valuable and military stores, and nearly one million sterling in the hands of the allies. Marching northwards, the victorious general crossed the frontier and entered France, and in the following year defeated Soult at Orthes, which put him in possession of the important city of Bordeaux. The last battle in the Peninsular War was fought at Toulouse in 1814, when Wellington was again the victor. After the battle he received intelligence that Bonaparte had signed his abdication at Fontainebleau, and that Louis XVIII, had been restored to the throne of his ancestors. The fallen Emperor was permitted to retire to the island of Elba. Wellington returned to

Ĺ

England and landed at Dover, 23rd June 1814. Fresh honours awaited the great hero of the war; he was created a Duke, and the sum of £500,000 was voted to him for the purchase of an estate.

Battle of Waterloo.

To the astonishment of all Europe, Napoleon, in less than a year, had contrived to escape from his island home, and was once more Emperor of France. A powerful coalition was immediately formed against him. British and Prussian troops assembled in the Netherlands, under the command of Wellington and Blucher. On the 11th of June 1815, Napoleon left Paris, "to measure himself," he said, "with Wellington," and on the 14th of the same month, he crossed the Belgian frontier with an army of 125,000 men. On the 16th he defeated Blucher at Ligny. and on the same day Marshal Ney, with the other portion of the army, attacked Wellington at Quatre Bras, but was driven back with great loss. When Wellington heard of Blucher's defeat he fell back, and took up a fresh position at Waterloo, whence he sent word to the Prussian commander that he would meet the French in a general engagement, provided he would pledge himself to come to his assistance with a corps of 25,000 men. this Blucher replied that he would come, not with one corps only, but with his whole army. Accordingly, on the morning of the 18th of June, the British and French armies were drawn up in battle array, and about eleven o'clock the grand decisive struggle commenced. Napoleon's army consisted of 72,000 veteran troops, and the number of Wellington's forces was estimated at 67,000, of whom scarcely more than one-third were British, the rest consisting of Hanoverians, Brunswickers, Dutch, and about 18,000 Belgians, who had acted a cowardly part in every battle, and their conduct at Waterloo formed no exception to their former The first shot was fired by the French, and in a short time the strife became general, and raged with dreadful fury over the whole field of battle. The British

acted chiefly on the defensive, and after six hours' hard fighting, Napoleon, finding that his cavalry could make no impression on the solid squares of British infantry, determined to make a general attack with his whole army on the centre of the British line. The sound of the Prussian cannon in the distance indicated the approach of Blucher, and as this new movement was Napoleon's last and only hope, he ordered his Old Guard, who had yet taken no part in the battle, to form into two columns under Ney, "the bravest of the brave." Wellington was equal to the emergency; calm and collected, and knowing that the critical moment had arrived, he rode forward to head his men against the onset of the Imperial Guard. The Duke's reserves were stationed behind the ridge of the hill, and as soon as the first column of the French Guards gained the summit, the word of command was given—"Up, Guards, and at them." Instantly the British Grenadiers started in regular and perfect order, and poured such terrific volleys into the advancing lines of the enemy, that in a few moments vast numbers of Napoleon's best and bravest troops were levelled with the ground. Despair and panic now seized the French and the Imperial Guard, who had never before turned their backs to the foe, retreated in haste down the hill, pursued for some distance by the victorious British. prevent the possibility of Napoleon rallying his broken and retiring columns, Wellington ordered a general charge to be made. This was accordingly done. Duke himself headed the attack, and as the bullets of both friends and foes were whistling fast round him, one of his staff remonstrated with him for thus exposing a "Never mind," was the Duke's life of such value. answer, "Never mind, let them fire away; the battle's won, and my life is of no consequence now." Napoleon, aware of the utter hopelessness of retrieving his position, shouted to his staff, "All is lost! Save himself who can!" The British, worn out with toil and suffering, allowed the Prussians to carry on the pursuit, which they did with merciless fury, and with great difficulty

the vanquished Emperor escaped from the field. number who fell on this dreadful day of carnage was immense, but the victory achieved delivered Europe from the voke of despotism, and "finally restored to the world Peace, Security, and Independence."

Napoleon Banished-State of the Country.

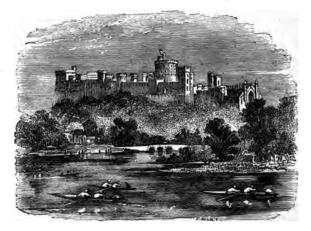
Napoleon fled to Paris, but his return met with no joyous welcome. The fallen Emperor, finding himself deserted by his former friends, was obliged to sign his second abdication, and quit the city. He retired to Rochefort, where he intended to embark for America. but the French coast was so closely watched by British cruisers that he found escape impossible. He therefore surrendered himself on board a British man-of-war, and, in accordance with the decision of the Allies, was banished to St. Helena, where he died, 5th May 1821.

Louis XVIII. having been replaced on the throne of France, the Allies signed the Second Peace of Paris, 20th Nov. 1815, by which France was restricted to her former boundaries. The war now ended had raised the National Debt of Britain to the enormous sum of eight hundred millions, with no prospect of an immediate diminution of the taxation which had pressed so heavily on the nation. Discontent accordingly prevailed; and to add to the general distress, the crops for several successive years proved deficient; trade and commerce were interrupted. and large bodies of men were rendered destitute from want of employment. Riots took place in London and various other towns, and such was the disordered state of the country, that the Government found it necessary to order a suspension of the Habeas Corpus Act, and to adopt other extreme measures for the restoration of order.

Bombardment of Algiers—Death of the King.

An expedition under Lord Exmouth was sent to A.D. 1816. Algiers, to compel the Dey to abolish Christian slavery and to deliver up all the Christian slaves in his possession. The enterprise was successful.

and nearly 2000 slaves were liberated. On the 23rd of January 1820, Edward, Duke of Kent, died, leaving behind him an only daughter, our present Queen, then only eight months old. Six days after the death of this Prince, the long and eventful reign of George A.D. 1820 III. was brought to a close. His Majesty died at Windsor on the 29th of January, in the eighty-second year of his age, and the sixtieth of his reign.



WINDSOR CASTLE.

GENERAL FACTS.

The long reign of George III. was marked by numerous and important inventions and discoveries. The manufactures of the country were greatly advanced in consequence of the improvements effected by James Watt on the steam engine. The "spinning-jenny" was invented by James Hargreaves, a carpenter and weaver, in 1767; and in 1769 Richard Arkwright, a barber, gave to the world his "spinning-frame." The former of these inventors died a pauper, and the latter at his death was

possessed of more than half-a-million sterling. "mule-jenny" was invented by Samuel Crompton in 1779, and the "power-loom" by Dr. Cartwright of Oxford in 1784. These and other similar inventions have increased trade to an almost fabulous extent, and enabled Britain greatly to outstrip all other manufacturing countries. Vaccination was introduced by Dr. Jenner in 1796. The Royal College of Surgeons was founded in 1800, and in 1801 the first census of Great Britain was made, when the population amounted to 10,917,000; since that time the census has been regularly taken every ten vears. Geographical knowledge was greatly extended by the discoveries of Captain Cook, who thrice circumnavigated the globe. It was owing to the efforts made by Sir Samuel Romilly that the penal laws of this country were improved, and the punishment of death in the case of many small offences done away with.

SUMMARY OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE III.

SECTION III. A.D. 1801-A.D. 1820.

Nelson destroyed the Danish fleet at Copenhagen, A.D. 1801. This victory, and the assassination of the Czar Paul, broke up the Armed Neutrality League, which had been formed against England by Russia, Prussia, Sweden, and Denmark. In the same year the battle of Alexandria was gained over the French by Sir Ralph Abercromby. A Treaty of Peace was concluded at Amiens, A.D. 1802, by which England surrendered all her conquests except Ceylon and Trinadad. The war with France was renewed the following year, and Bonaparte assembled troops and transports at Boulogne for the invasion of England. His design was frustrated by Nelson, who gained a great naval victory off Trafalgar, over the French and Spanish fleets, A.D. 1805. In this engagement Nelson fell mortally wounded. Next year Britain had to mourn the loss of two of her most illustrious statesmen, William Pitt and Charles James Fox. Napoleon, after his victory at Jena, A.D. 1806, entered Berlin in triumph, and issued the Berlin Decree against British commerce. In 1807 Copenhagen was bombarded by the British, and the whole of the Danish fleet taken to England,

The Peninsular War commenced in 1808 and lasted till 1814. Bonaparte having seized the kingdoms of Spain and Portugal, the inhabitants of the Peninsula applied to England to aid them in driving out the usurper. Sir Arthur Wellesley, afterwards the Duke of Wellington, was sent. He gained a number of splendid victories over the French, and at last succeeded in driving them across the Pyrenees into their own country, where was fought the battle of Toulouse. The following were the principal battles: Vimiero, A.D. 1808; Corunna, A.D. 1809; Talavera, A.D. 1809; Busaco, A.D. 1810; Barrosa, Fuentes d'Onoro, and Albuera, A.D. 1811; Ciudad Rodrigo, Badajoz, and Salamanca, A.D. 1812; Vittoria, A.D. 1813; Orthes, A.D. 1814; Toulouse, A.D. 1814. Bonaparte signed his abdication at Fontainebleau, and was permitted to retire with the title of Emperor to the island of Elba. Having escaped from Elba, he gave battle to Wellington at Waterloo, A.D. 1815, when he was finally overthrown and sent prisoner to St. Helena, where he died, A.D. 1821. The last military operation of this reign was the successful bombardment of Algiers by Lord Exmouth, A.D. 1816. The result was that nearly 2000 Christian slaves were liberated. George III. died at Windsor, 29th January 1820, in the eighty-second year of his age, and the sixtieth of his reign.



COPENHAGEN.

QUESTIONS.

- Pitt Resigns Office-Battle of Copenhagen-Battle of Alexandria - Renewal of the War with France - Battle of Trafalgar-Grenville Ministry-Bombardment of Copenhagen.
- 1. What measure was Pitt anxious to have repealed?
 - 2. Who opposed him in this?
- 3. To what did this opposition lead?
- 4. For what purpose was an expedi-tion sent against Denmark?
 - 5. State the result, with date,

- 8. What treaty brought the war to a close?
 - State its terms.

Bonaparte?

- 10. When was the war again renewed? 11. What order was now issued by
- 6. To what did this victory lead?
 7. Who gained the battle of Alexandria? Over whom? Date?

- 12. What formed part of his design? 13. What preparations did he make for this purpose?
- 14. How was his design frustrated?
- 15. What great naval gained by Nelson? Date? 16. What events mark the year 1806?
- 17. What honour belongs to the Grenville Administration?
- 18. What victories made Napoleon master of Austria and Prussia?
- 19. State what you know of the "Berlin Decree. 20. What led to the bombardment
- of Copenhagen? 21. State the result, with date.

The Peninsular War-Battle of Waterloo-Napoleon Banished-State of the Country-Bombardment of Algiers-Death of the King-General Facts.

- 1. What led to the Peninsular War? Date?
- 2. To whom did the inhabitants of
- the Peninsula apply for aid?
 3. How was their application reseived?
 - 4. What events happened in 1808? 5. State what you know of Sir John
- Moore. 6. What was Wellesley's next great
- victory? Date?
 7. What honour was now conferred
- upon him?
 - 8. Who followed him into Portugal? 9. What took place at Busaco?
- 10. What became of Wellington after the action?
- 11. What happened to the King in 1811?
- 12. What victories were this year gained by Wellington?
- 13. Relate the events of 1812. 14. Give an account of Napoleon's
- invasion of Russia. Date. 15. What important victory was gained by Wellington in Spain in 1813?
- 16. What country did he afterwards took place during this reign? enter?

- 17. What successes did he obtain? 18. Which was the last battle fought in the Peninsular War? Date?
- 19. Where did Napoleon sign his abdication?
- 20. What afterwards became of him? 21. What honours did Wellington re-
- ceive on his return to England 22. What led to the battle of Water-
- loo? 23. State the numbers of the respec-
- tive armies 24. Mention the names of the com-
- manders. 25. Give an account of this great battle.
 - 26. What now became of Napoleon?
- 27. Where and when did he die? 28. What was the state of the country at the conclusion of the war?
- 29. For what purpose was an expedition sent to Algiers?
 - 30. How did it succeed? Date?
- 31. Where and when did George III. die?
- 32. What inventions and discoveries

CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY

OF THE

PRINCIPAL EVENTS FROM THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE I. TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE III.

A.D. 1714-A.D. 1820.

Eighteenth Century.

GEORGE I., A.D. 1714-1727.

- 1715. Oxford, Bolingbroke, and Ormond impeached by the New Parliament for having advised the late Queen to conclude the Treaty of Utrecht. The first was committed to the Tower; the other two escaped to the Continent and joined the Pretender. Riot Act passed. First Jacobite Rebellion. The Pretender landed at Peterhead in Aberdeen, but finding his cause hopeless, he and the Earl of Mar sailed for France.
- 1716. Septennial Act passed for extending the possible duration of Parliaments from three to seven years.
- 1718. The Quadruple Alliance between England, France, Holland, and the Empire formed against Spain.
- 1720. Collapse of the South Sea Company. Thousands of families ruined.
- 1721. Sir Robert Walpole becomes Chancellor of the Exchequer and Premier.
- 1723. Atterbury, Bishop of Rochester, banished for taking part in a Jacobite conspiracy.
- 1727. The King, whilst travelling in Hanover, is seized with apoplexy, and dies near Osnabrück. Reigned 13 years.

GEORGE II., A.D. 1727-1760.

- 1727. Walpole obtains a majority in the New Parliament.
- 1732. Walpole introduces his famous Excise Bill. It meets with violent opposition, and is afterwards withdrawn.
- 1736. Porteous Riots take place in Edinburgh.
- 1737. The King and the Prince of Wales quarrel. Death of Queen Caroline.
- 1739. War declared against Spain.

A.D.

- 1740. Commencement of the War of the Austrian Succession.
- 1742. Walpole resigns. Pulteney becomes Premier, and is created Earl of Bath.
- 1744. France declares war against Britain.

- 1745. Second Jacobite Rebellion on behalf of Prince Charles Edward, son of the Pretender.
- 1751. Death of Frederick, Prince of Wales.
- 1752. An Act passed for Alteration of the Calendar, and the new style of reckoning adopted.
- 1756. Commencement of the Seven Years' War. Pitt appointed Premier.
- 1757. Foundation of the British Empire in India.
- 1760. Death of George II. Reigned 33 years.

GEORGE III., A.D. 1760-1820.

- 1762. The Earl of Bute becomes Premier. War declared against Spain for forming an alliance with France.
- 1763. John Wilkes, member for Aylesbury, arrested for publishing a libel on the King in the North Briton. Is expelled from Parliament. Bute is succeeded by George Grenville.
- 1765. American Stamp Act passed. Grenville is succeeded by the Marquis of Rockingham.
- 1766. Repeal of the Stamp Act. Rockingham resigns, and is succeeded by Pitt, now Earl of Chatham.
- 1767. Townshend, Chancellor of the Exchequer, carries a Bill imposing duties in the British colonies on tea, glass, paper, and other articles.
- 1768. Chatham resigns, and is succeeded to the Premiership by the Duke of Grafton.
- 1770. Grafton resigns, and Lord North becomes Premier. All the duties imposed on America repealed except that on tea.
- 1773. Cargoes of taxed tea on arrival at Boston are thrown overboard.
- 1775. Commencement of the American War of Independence.
 Washington appointed commander-in-chief.
- 1776. Declaration of American Independence by members of Congress assembled at Philadelphia, 4th July.
- 1778. France declares in favour of the Americans. Death of the Earl of Chatham.
- 1779. Spain joins France against England,
- 1780. Gordon Riots, directed against the Catholics, take place in London.
- 1782. The Marquis of Rockingham becomes Premier, and on his death Lord Shelburne, with William Pitt, second son of Lord Chatham, as Chancellor of the Exchequer. Independence of the United States recognised.
- 1783. The famous Coalition Ministry formed under the Duke of Portland. Lord North and Charles James Fox appointed

Secretaries of State. The Ministry defeated on an India Bill introduced by Fox, and Pitt becomes Premier at the age of 24.

1784. Pitt carries his India Bill, establishing a Board of Control. 1786. Impeachment of Warren Hastings. His trial began in 1788, and was not concluded till 1795, when he was acquitted.

1789. Commencement of the French Revolution.

1793. Execution of Louis XVI. France declares war against England and Holland.

1795. War with Holland. The Dutch deprived of the Cape of Good Hope and Island of Ceylon.

1796. Spain declares war against England.

1797. Mutinies of the sailors at Spithead and the Nore.
1798. Rebellion in Ireland. Bonaparte invades Egypt.

1801. The Legislative Union of Great Britain and Ireland.

1803. Renewal of the War with France.

1804. Bonaparte becomes Emperor of France under the title of Napoleon I.

1806. Death of Pitt. A ministry of "All the Talents," formed by Grenville, with Fox as Foreign Secretary. Berlin Decrees issued by Napoleon to destroy the trade of England. Fox dies in September at the age of 57.

1807. Slave trade abolished. The Duke of Portland appointed

Premier.

1808. Commencement of the Peninsular War.

1809. Portland is succeeded by Spencer Percival as Premier.

1811. George, Prince of Wales, appointed Regent. The King had become incurably insane.

1812. Mr. Percival, the Prime Minister, is shot in the lobby of the House of Commons by Bellingham, a Liverpool merchant. The Earl of Liverpool becomes Premier. Napoleon invades Russia. United States declare War against England.

1814. Napoleon abdicates, and is sent to Elba.

1815. Napoleon escapes from Elba and returns to France. He abdicates a second time, and is sent to St. Helena.

1820. Death of the King at Windsor.

BATTLES AND SIEGES FROM THE COMMENCE-MENT OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE I. TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE III.

B. Battle. N. B. Naval Battle. S. Siege.

- B. Sheriffmuir, A.D. 1715. The Jacobites under the Earl of Mar defeated by the Royalists under the Duke of Argyle.
- Gibraltar, A.D. 1727. Besieged by the Spaniards, but after the siege had lasted four months, the assailants withdrew.
- Porto Bello, A.D. 1739. Taken by the English under Admiral Vernon.
- S. Carthagena, A.D. 1741. Unsuccessfully besieged by the English under Admiral Vernon.
- B. Dettingen, A.D. 1743. King George II. defeats the French under Marshal Noailles,
- B. Fontenoy, A.D. 1745. The French under Marshal Saxe defeat the English under the Duke of Cumberland.
- B. Prestonpans, A.D. 1745. The Royalists under Sir John Cope are defeated by the Jacobites under Prince Charles Edward, the Young Pretender.
- B. Falkirk, A.D. 1746. Prince Charles Edward defeats the Royalists.
- B. Culloden, A.D. 1746. The Pretender completely defeated by the Duke of Cumberland.
- Pondicherry, A.D. 1748. Besieged by the English. The siege raised after lasting a month.
- S. Arcot, A.D. 1751. Besieged by the French, who are repulsed by the garrison under Clive.
 - Calcutta, A.D. 1756. Captured by Dowlah, the Rajah of Bengal.
- B. Plassey, A.D. 1757. Clive, having retaken Calcutta, defeats the Rajah. This victory laid the foundation of our Indian Empire.
- 8. Quebec, A.D. 1759. Surrendered to the English after General Wolfe had defeated the French under Montcalm on the Heights of Abraham.
- B. Lexington, A.D. 1775. The American colonists defeat the English.
- B. Bunker's Hill, A.D. 1775. The English under General Howe defeat the Americans under Washington.
- B. Brooklyn, A.D. 1776. The Americans defeated.
- S. New York, A.D. 1776. Captured by the English under General Howe.
- B. Brandywine River, A.D. 1777. Howe defeats the Americans and takes Philadelphia.

- Saratoga, A.D. 1777. The English under General Burgoyne compelled to surrender to the Americans.
- S. Gibraltar, A.D. 1779. Besieged by the French and Spaniards. The siege raised after lasting four years.
- S. Charleston, A.D. 1780. Taken by the English under General Clinton after a siege of seven weeks.
- B. Camden, A.D. 1780. The English under Lord Cornwallis defeat the Americans under General Gates.
- B. Eutaw Springs, A.D. 1781. Between the English and the Americans, in which both claimed the victory.
- Yorktown, A.D. 1781. Taken by the Americans under Washington after a siege of three weeks. Lord Cornwallis compelled to surrender.
- N. B. Dogger Bank, A.D. 1781. The Dutch defeated by the English under Admiral Parker.
- S. Toulon, A.D. 1793. Taken possession of by the English and Spanish fleet under Lord Hood. Besieged by the Republican troops under Napoleon Bonaparte.
- N. B. off Ushant, A.D. 1794. Lord Howe defeats the Brest fleet.
- N. B. off Cape St. Vincent, A.D. 1797. The Spanish fleet defeated by Sir John Jervis.
- N. B. off Camperdown, A.D. 1797. The French and Dutch fleets defeated by Viscount Duncan.
- B. New Ross, A.D. 1798. The Irish rebels defeated by General Johnson.
- B. Arklow, A.D. 1798. The Irish rebels defeated.
- B. Vinegar Hill, A.D. 1798. Rebels again defeated.
- N. B. Nile, A.D. 1798. The French fleet destroyed by Admiral Nelson.
- Seringapatam, A.D. 1799. Taken by the English after a month's siege. Tippoo Saib slain.
- B. Alexandria, A.D. 1801. The French defeated by the English under Sir Ralph Abercrombie.
- N. B. Copenhagen, A.D. 1801. The Danes defeated by the English under Lord Nelson.
- N. B. Trafalgar, A.D. 1805. The French and Spanish fleets destroyed by Nelson, who is killed in the action.
- B. Jena, A.D. 1806. The Prussians under the Duke of Brunswick defeated by the French under Napoleon.
- Copenhagen, A.D. 1807. Bombarded by the English, who seized the Danish fleet to prevent it falling into the hands of Napoleon.
- B. Vimiero, A.D. 1808. Sir Arthur Wellesley defeats the French under Marshal Junot.

- B. Corunna, A.D. 1809. The French under Marshal Soult are defeated by the English under Sir John Moore, but Moore fell mortally wounded.
- B. Talavera, A.D. 1809. The French defeated by Sir Arthur Wellesley.
- S. Ciudad Rodrigo, A.D. 1810. Taken by the French.
- B. Busaco, A.D. 1810. The French under Massena defeated by Wellesley, now Viscount Wellington.
- B. Barrosa, A.D. 1811. General Graham defeats the French under Marshal Victor.
- B. Fuentes D'Onoro, A.D. 1811. Wellington defeats the French under Marshal Massena.
- B. Albeura, A.D. 1811. Between the French and the Allies. The French defeated.
- Chudad Rodrigo, A.D. 1812. Taken by Wellington after a siege of twelve days.
- Badajoz, A.D. 1812. Taken by Wellington after a siege of twenty days.
- Salamanca, A.D. 1812. Taken by Wellington after a siege of ten days.
- B. Vittoria, A.D. 1813. The French defeated by Wellington.
- B. Leipsic, A.D. 1813. Napoleon defeated by the Allies, Prussians, Austrians, and Russians.
- B. Orthes, A.D. 1814. The French under Marshal Soult defeated by Wellington.
- B. Toulouse, A.D. 1814. The remnant of Soult's army utterly defeated by Wellington.
- B. Ligny, A.D. 1815. The Prussians under Blucher are defeated by the French under Napoleon.
- B. Quatre Bras, A.D. 1815. The French under Marshal Ney are defeated by Wellington.
- B. Waterloo, A.D. 1815. Napoleon completely defeated by Wellington.
- S. Algiers, A.D. 1816. Bombarded by Lord Exmouth. The Dey sets free all the Christian slaves in his dominions.



TREATIES.

1718. Quadruple Alliance between England, France, the Emperor, and Holland to resist the aggressions of Spain.

1725. Treaty of Vienna, in which Germany, Spain, and Russia

unite against England and France. 1725. Hanover, Treaty of, between England, France, Prussia, Holland, Denmark, and Sweden against the terms of

the Treaty of Vienna.

1745. Aix-la-Chapelle, Treaty of, between Great Britain, France, Holland, and Spain. The continental war was now The King of Prussia obtained Silesia, and the Pretender was refused a refuge in France.

1761. The Family Compact, formed by the Bourbon Sovereigns

of France, Spain, and Naples against England.

1763. Paris, Peace of, by which the War of the Family Compact was brought to a close.

1763. Hubertsburg, Peace of, between Austria, Prussia, and Saxony, by which it was mutually agreed to restore all conquests. This terminated the Seven Years' War.

1780. The Armed Neutrality formed between Russia, Prussia, Holland, Denmark, France, and Spain to support the

rights of Neutrals.

- 1782. America, Treaty with, signed at Paris, by which the Independence of the United States was recognised. A definitive peace was afterwards signed, by which Great Britain acknowledged America as an Independent Power.
- 1783. Versailles, Peace of, concluded between England, France, and Spain.

1800. Armed Neutrality between Russia, Denmark, and Sweden

against England.

1801. St. Petersburg, Treaty of, concluded, by which the Danes agreed to evacuate Hamburg; a free navigation was also granted on the German rivers.

1802. Amiens, Peace of, between England, France, Spain, and Holland, by which England resigned all her conquests

except Ceylon and Trinidad.

1806. Berlin Decree, by which Napoleon declared Britain to be in a state of blockade. All intercourse between the two countries was interdicted.

1808. Cintra. Convention of, by which the French agreed to evacuate Portugal.

1814. Paris, Peace of, between Bonaparte and the Allies; the former abdicates and retires to the island of Elba.

1815. Paris, Second Treaty of, by which France was restricted to her former boundaries.

AUTHORS.

Arbuthnot, John, a physician and miscellaneous writer, born in Scotland, A.D. 1675. He was noted as a wit, and was the associate of Pope and Swift. Said to have been the author of the History of John Bull, a satirical account of the negotiations and War of the Spanish Succession. From this satire arose the term "John Bull." Died A.D. 1735.

Blackstone, Sir William, a distinguished lawyer and judge, born in London, A.D. 1723. Author of the well-known Com.

mentaries on the Laws of England. Died A.D. 1780.

Blair, Hugh, an eminent Scottish divine, born at Edinburgh, A.D. 1718. Author of a Dissertation on the Poems of Ossian, Lectures on Rhetoric and Belles Lettres, and Sermons. Died A.D. 1800.

Boswell, James, born at Edinburgh, A.D. 1740. Distinguished

for his Life of Dr. Johnson. Died A.D. 1795.

Brown, Thomas, the Scottish philosopher, born A.D. 1778. Author of an Examination of the Theory of Hume on Cause and Effect, and Lectures on the Philosophy of the Human Mind. Died at London, A.D. 1820.

Burke, Edmund, a great statesman, orator, and political writer. born in Dublin, A.D. 1730. He entered Parliament in 1765. The affairs of India, the prosecution of Warren Hastings, and the events of the French Revolution successively engaged his attention. He retired from Parliament in 1794. His principal works are the Inquiry into the origin of our Ideas of the Sublime and Beautiful, Reflections on the French Revolution, and his Speeches in the House of Commons. Died at his seat at Beaconsfield, A.D. 1797.

Burns, Robert, Scotland's great national poet, born near Ayr,

A.D. 1759. Died at Dumfries, A.D. 1796.

Butler, Joseph, Bishop of Durham, born at Wantage in Berkshire, A.D. 1692. His great work, The Analogy of Religion to Nature. Died A.D. 1752.

Byron, Lord George, one of England's greatest poets, was born in London, A.D. 1788. His chief works are Childe Harold's Pilgrimage, The Giaour, The Bride of Abydos, Lara, The Corsair, etc. Died at Missolonghi in Greece, A.D. 1824.

Collins, Arthur, a celebrated English genealogist, born A.D. 1682. Author of the English Peerage and Baronetage, and Lives of Cecil, Lord Burleigh, and Edward the Black Prince. Died

A.D. 1760.

Collins, William, born at Chichester, A.D. 1720, was one of the best lyric poets of his century. One of his most celebrated poems is the Ode to the Passions. His life was written by Dr. Johnson. Died A.D. 1756,

Cowper, William, a distinguished English poet, born at Berkhampstead in Hertfordshire, A.D. 1731. Chief works, A Translation of Homer, Triconium, Error, Charity, and many others. Died A.D. 1800.

Defoe, Daniel, born in London, A.D. 1663. Author of one of the most famous and popular of English fictions, The Life and

Adventures of Robinson Crusoe. Died A.D. 1731.

Gay, John, a distinguished poet, born in Devon, A.D. 1688.

Author of the Beggars' Opera, and of the popular ballad of

Black-eyed Susan. Died A.D. 1732.

Goldsmith, Oliver, a celebrated poet, historian, and essayist, was born at Pallas, in the county of Longford, Ireland, A.D. 1728. His chief works are The Traveller, The Deserted Village, The Vicar of Wakefield, and the Histories of England, Greece, Rome, etc. Died A.D. 1774.

Gray, Thomas, a celebrated lyric poet, born in London, A.D. 1716. Author of the famous Elegy in a Country Churchyard. Died

A.D. 1771.

Hume, David, a distinguished historian and philosopher, born in Edinburgh, A.D. 1711. Chief works, Treatise on Human Nature, Essays, Moral, Political, and Literary, and a History of England. Died A.D. 1776.

Johnson, Samuel, one of the most distinguished writers of the eighteenth century, was born at Lichfield, A.D. 1709. Author of Rambler, a well-known and much admired English Dictionary, and Lives of the English Poets. Died A.D. 1784.

Ken, Thomas, an English divine, born in Hertfordshire, A.D. 1637. Author of a beautiful series of Morning and Evening Hymns. He was one of the seven Bishops sent to the Tower

in the reign of James II. Died A.D. 1711.

Mallet, David, whose real name was Malloch, a poet and miscellaneous writer, was born at Creiff, in Perthshire, A.D. 1700. He wrote in conjunction with Thomson the Masque of Alfred, which contains the national ode of Rule Britannia.

Died A.D. 1765.

Newton, Sir Isaac, the most distinguished philosopher, mathematician, etc., of modern times, was born at Woolsthorpe in Lincoln, A.D. 1642. In 1666 he made his grand discovery of the Law of Gravitation, and established the Copernican System. In 1687 he published his great work, the Philosophiæ Naturalis Principia Mathematica, and afterwards gave to the world his learned treatise on the Reflections and Colours of Light. In 1705 he received the honour of knighthood from Queen Anne. Died A.D. 1727, and was buried in Westminster Abbey.

Paley, William, an eminent divine, born at Peterborough, A.D. 1743. Author of Natural Theology, and Evidences of Chris-

tianity. Died A.D. 1805.

- Pope, Alexander, a distinguished poet, born in London, A.D. 1688. His chief works are Rape of the Lock, translation of the Riad and Odyssey of Homer, Essay on Criticism, etc. Died A.D. 1744.
- Richardson, Samuel, an eminent novelist, born in Derbyshire, A.D. 1689. His most famous productions are Pamela, Histories of Clarissa Harlowe, and Sir Charles Grandison. Died A.D. 1761.
- Bowe, Nicholas, a poet and dramatist, born in Bedfordshire, A.D. 1673. His first tragedy, published when 24 years of age, was The Ambitious Stepmother, then followed Tamerlane, The Fair Penitent, Jane Shore, Lady Jane Grey, etc. On the accession of George I. he was made poet-laureate. Died A.D. 1718.
- Smollet, Tobias, a famous novelist, born in Dumbartonshire, A.D. 1721. His first publication was a satire entitled Advice, but he is best remembered by his celebrated novel, Roderick Random. He also wrote a history of England, part of which is commonly appended as a continuation to the History of England, by David Hume, who only carried his work down to the Revolution. Died A.D. 1771.
- Sterne, Lawrence, a divine, and satirical writer, born at Clonmel, A.D. 1713. Author of *Tristram Shandy*, and *Sentimental Journey*. Died A.D. 1768.
- Swift, Dr. Jonathan, a celebrated political and satirical writer, born at Dublin, A.D. 1667. Author of *The Tale of a Tub*, but the best known and most read of his works is *Gulliver's Travels*. Died A.D. 1745.
- Thomson, James, a distinguished poet, born at Ednam, in Roxburghshire, A.D. 1700. Author of the Seasons, the first published being Winter. He also wrote the Castle of Indolence, the Masque of Alfred, etc. Died A.D. 1748.
 Tooke, John Horne, a politician and philologist, born at West-
- Tooke, John Horne, a politician and philologist, born at Westminster, A.D. 1736. He was a determined opponent of the American War. Author of Letter to Dunning, and The Diversions of Purley. Died A.D. 1812.
- Watts, Dr. Isaac, a Nonconformist divine and poet, born at South-ampton, A.D. 1674. Chief works, Psalms and Hymns for Children, which are still among the most popular compositions of their kind. Died A.D. 1748.
- Young, Edward, an eminent poet, born at Upham in Hampshire, A.D. 1684. His chief work, Night Thoughts, a series of poems in proof of the immortality of the soul, and against unbelief in Christianity. Died A.D. 1765.

CHAPTER VI.

GEORGE IV.—1820-1830.

George's Personal History—Cato Street Conspiracy—Proceedings against Queen Caroline—King visits Sootland—Canning becomes Foreign Secretary—
• Ministerial Changes—Battle of Navarino—Roman Catholic Emancipation Bill—Death and Character of the King—General Farts.

George's Personal History—Cato Street Conspiracy— Proceedings against Queen Caroline.

GEORGE IV., eldest son of George III., was born A.D. 1762. In 1795, he married the Princess Caroline of Brunswick, by whom he had an only child, Charlotte Augusta, "England's darling," who was married to

Leopold, King of the Belgians.

Within a month after the accession of George IV., a plot, known as the "Cato Street" conspiracy, was discovered, the object of which was to assassinate the King's ministers, set fire to the capital, and overthrow the Government. The prime mover in this monstrous plot was one Arthur Thistlewood, who, with a number of other miscreants, met from time to time in a house in Cato Street, where they made arrangements for carrying out their infamous design. When about to put their plans into execution, one of the conspirators gave information to the Government, who immediately despatched a number of police and a strong body of military to the place where the assassins were assembled. Thistlewood, with four accomplices, were hanged at Newgate, 1st May A.D. 1820.

The domestic life of the King was far from being a happy one. When Prince of Wales, he married, at the instigation of his father, his cousin, Caroline of Brunswick. From the very first he treated her with great unkindness, and the year after her marriage she separated from her husband and resided for some time at Greenwich, after which she went to the Continent; but on the King's accession, she determined to return to England to claim the rights belonging to her as Queen. A Bill of

 \mathcal{S} B

to have the marriage dissolved, but after an examination of witnesses, the Bill was withdrawn, to the great delight of the people, who testified their sympathy for the Queen by an illumination of the metropolis. The King's coronation took place the following year, but Caroline's claim to be crowned as his consort was rejected. She then desired to be present as a spectator, but this also was refused. Within three weeks she took ill and 7th Aug. died of a broken heart. At her own request her body was conveyed to Brunswick, and there interred with this inscription engraved on her tomb:-"Here lies Caroline of Brunswick, the injured Queen of England."

King Visits Scotland—Canning becomes Foreign Secretary.

Immediately after his coronation the King visited Ireland, where he was received with great enthusiasm. The same year he passed over to Hanover, and the year following paid a visit to Scotland, "to drink a health to its chieftains and clans, and to bless the land of cakes." The Scots accorded him a loyal welcome, and were highly delighted with his gracious and affable manners. living at Holyrood he dressed himself in the Highland garb—the kilt and plaid—and otherwise made himself agreeable to his northern subjects. His visit was rendered still more memorable on account of the restoration of a number of peerages, which had been forfeited in consequence of the rebellions of 1715 and 1745. While in Scotland, the King was informed that one of his ministers, Lord Castlereagh, had committed suicide. called Mr. George Canning to the post of Foreign Secretary. Through his influence a great impulse was given to commerce by the removal of certain restrictions on the importation and exportation of wool, and by the reduction of the duties on silk. In these and other liberal measures he was greatly aided by Mr. Robertson, Chancellor of the Exchequer, and by Mr. Huskisson, President of the Board of Trade.

Ministerial Changes—Battle of Navarino.

The commencement of the year 1827 witnessed the death of the Duke of York, who died on the fifth of January, and was succeeded by the Duke of Wellington as commander-in-chief. Lord Liverpool, who had been Prime Minister for many years, was seized with paralysis, and retired from office (February 1827). Mr. Canning succeeded, but the harassing cares of official life, added to a severe cold caught at the funeral of the Duke of York. brought the career of this great statesman suddenly to a close. He died on the 8th of August, and was buried in Westminster Abbey, at the feet of his illustrious predecessor, Pitt. Lord Goderich next became Premier, but his administration lasted only five months. During his period of office a fierce battle was fought in the Bay of Navarino between the combined English, A.D. 1827. French, and Russian squadrons, and the Turkish and Egyptian fleets. The latter were defeated, and the victory thus gained afterwards secured the independence of Greece from the long domination of Turkey, A.D. 1829. Otho, son of the King of Bavaria, was raised to the He abdicated, June 5th, 1863, and the brother of our present Princess of Wales was called to sway the Grecian sceptre, under the title of George, King of the Hellenes.

Roman Catholic Emancipation Bill—Death of the King.

After the fall of the Goderich administration, the Duke of Wellington became Premier. The most important measure of the new ministry, or of the whole of this reign, was the Catholic Emancipation Act. The great leader in this agitation was an Irish barrister, named Daniel O'Connell, who had formed a society at Dublin in 1823, styled the "Catholic Association." Canning was in favour of the emancipation, but his successor was opposed to it. The hopes of the Catholics, however, were raised when O'Connell obtained a seat in Parliament; and at length, after much stormy debate, both in the House of Commons.

and out of it, the Government yielded to the popular cry, and introduced a Bill for admitting Catholics to Parliament, and to all Government appointments, except those of Regent, Viceroy of Ireland, and Lord Chancellor of England and Ireland. The Bill was passed by large majorities in both Houses, and received the royal assent, 13th April, A.D. 1829. The first Roman Catholic who took his seat in the House of Commons was Lord Surrey, son of the Duke of Norfolk.

The King, after a lingering illness, died in the following year at Windsor, in the sixty-eighth year of his age, and eleventh of his reign. In early life, the handsome appearance, accomplished manners, and agreeable conversation of this monarch gained for him the distinction of being "the first gentleman in Europe." But the irregular life which he afterwards led had so soured his temper, that he became vain, selfish, and tyrannical.

GENERAL FACTS.

The first railway for passengers was opened between Stockton and Darlington in 1821, and in the same year Napoleon Bonaparte died at St. Helena. Mechanics' Institutes were first established in 1824, and in the following year the Society for the Diffusion of Useful Knowledge was founded. The London University was opened in 1828, and in 1829 the foundation of King's College, London, was laid. In this reign the crime of forgery was declared to be no longer a capital offence. Captain Johnson gained a prize of £10,000 for having made the first voyage in a steam vessel from England to India; the time occupied was sixteen weeks and three days.

SUMMARY OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE IV.

A.D. 1820-A.D. 1830.

George IV., son of George III. Born at St. James's, A.D. 1762. Married his cousin, Caroline of Brunswick. Died at Windsor, A.D. 1830. Reigned ten

The "Cato Street" conspiracy for assassinating the King's ministers was discovered, A.D. 1820. A Bill of Pains and Penalties was introduced against Queen Caroline, but was afterwards abandoned. Shortly after his coronation the King visited Ireland and Scotland. The chief statesman of the time was George Canning. An invasion of Greece by Turkey caused England to unite with France and Russia against the Turkish government. The combined fleets of Turkey and Egypt were destroyed in the Bay of Navarino, A.D. 1827. The independence of Greece was acknowledged in 1829, and in the same year the Catholic Eman-cipation Bill was passed. The King died at Windsor, A.D. 1830, after a reign of 10 years

QUESTIONS.

George's Personal History—Cato Street Conspiracy—Proceedings against Queen Caroline-King visits Scotland-Canning becomes Foreign Secretary—Ministerial changes—Battle of Navarino – Roman Catholic Emancipation Bill – Death and Character of the King-General Facts.

- 1. Relate the personal history of George IV.
- 2. What was the Cato Street Con-
- spiracy? Give particulars.
 3. Whom did the King marry?
 4. What is related of his domestic 1827?
- life? 5. What was done to have the marriage dissolved? State the result.
- 6. What is stated regarding the King's coronation?
- 7. What countries did he visit shortly after this?
- 8. How was he received in Scotland? 17. What ge 9. What circumstance rendered his in this reign?
- visit memorable?

- 10. What event called Mr. Canning
- to the post of Foreign Secretary?

 11. How did he benefit the commerce of the country?
- What events mark the year
- 13. What battle led to the independence of Greece? Date.
- 14. When was the Catholic Emancipation Act passed?
- 15. State its chief provisions.
- 16. When, and where, did the King die?
- 17. What general facts are recorded

CHAPTER VII.

WILLIAM IV.—1830-1837.

William's Personal History—Parliamentary Reform—Changes Produced by the Reform Bill—First Reformed Parliament—Slavery Abolished—Poor-Law Bill—Marriage Act—Death and Character of the King—General Facts.

William's Personal History—Parliamentary Reform.

WILLIAM HENRY, Duke of Clarence, third son of George III., and eldest surviving brother of the late King, was born at Buckingham House in 1765. He married Adelaide, daughter of the Duke of Saxe-Meiningen, by whom he had two daughters, who both died in infancy.

The reign of William IV. marks the beginning of a new era in the history of civilization and political freedom. About a month after his accession a revolution took place in France, which expelled Charles X. from the throne, and conferred the crown on Louis Philippe, This event gave a new impulse to the Duke of Orleans. great question of Parliamentary Reform which had been agitating the public mind ever since the close of the great wars with France, and was now pressing for immediate consideration. Parliamentary representation, that is, making the House of Commons a fair representation of the great body of the people, had long stood in need of reform. Owing to the great and increasing development of manufacturing and commercial industry, many large towns had risen up which had no representative in parliament; while, on the other hand, old and decayed boroughs containing sometimes as few as half-a-dozen electors, still retained the privilege of returning members. The property in such boroughs was generally in the possession of one large owner, whose influence it was necessary to secure, in order Improvement upon such to obtain a seat in Parliament. a state of things became necessary, and a widespread feeling prevailed that the representation should be transferred from these rotten, or, as they were called, pocket boroughs, to the large towns; and also that the franchise should be extended so as to embrace the middle as well

as the higher classes. Such measures, tending as they did to diminish the power and influence of the aristocracy, and increase that of the people, met with much opposition at the hands of the Tories, who now took the name of Conservatives, as denoting that they wished to preserve

the ancient institutions of the country.

Wellington having resigned the Premiership, a new ministry was formed by Earl Grey, under whom Lord John Russell took office, and on the part of the new Government introduced his celebrated 1st March, Reform Bill. It passed the second reading by a majority of one, but was ultimately thrown out. second, brought forward in October, shared the same fate, whereupon Earl Grey resigned office. Parliament was dissolved and a new House of Commons elected, which at once passed the Bill, but on reaching the Upper House it was rejected. Great excitement prevailed, and riots took place in different parts of the country. At Derby the mob made an attack upon the gaol and liberated the prisoners; at Nottingham they set fire to the castle of the obnoxious Duke of Newcastle; and at Bristol a dreadful riot broke out, which lasted for more than a week; all the public buildings were destroyed, and it was not before upwards of one hundred persons had been killed or wounded that the military succeeded in quelling the disturbance. A third Reform Bill was brought in by the Government and passed by the Commons, and although Earl Grey was empowered by the King to create new Peers in order to give the ministry a majority in the House of Lords, the expedient was rendered unnecessary, as many of the lords who were opposed to the measure absented themselves on occasion of the third reading, and thus the Reform Bill was carried 7th June through both Houses and received the royal assent. Similar measures were shortly afterwards passed

for Scotland and Ireland.

Changes Produced by the Reform Bill.

The effect of the Bill was to transfer political power. to a large extent, from the aristocracy to the middle classes, whose influence is now more widely extended in all matters relating to legislation and ordinary adminis-The principal changes effected by this tration of affairs. celebrated measure were the disfranchisement of fifty-six boroughs, and the creation of forty-three new ones, together with thirty county constituencies. The elective franchise was also greatly extended. In counties, proprietors of land worth £10 a year were enfranchised, as were also tenants paying a rental of £50. The borough franchise extended the suffrage both to owners and occupants of houses of £10 yearly rental. The Reform Bill almost doubled the number of names on the electoral roll. the increase amounting to nearly 500,000.

First Reformed Parliament-Slavery Abolished.

The first Reformed Parliament assembled on the 29th of January 1833, and was opened by the King in person. This session of Parliament was rendered happily memorable by the emancipation of all the slaves in our colonial possessions. A Bill was passed, A.D. 1833, enacting that the slaves should serve an apprenticeship of seven years previous to their complete liberation, but this period was afterwards abridged, and at the end of four years, eight hundred thousand slaves received their freedom, and the sum of £20,000,000 was paid by the nation as compensation to their late owners.

Poor-Law Bill—Marriage Act—Death and Character of the King.

Next session the subject of the Poor-Laws in England engaged the attention of Parliament. The new Poor-Law Act was passed, by which local boards were placed under Government control, and the right to out-door relief was withdrawn from able-bodied paupers.

Earl Grey, now upwards of seventy years of age, retired into private life, and was succeeded by Lord Melbourne, who, except during a brief period of four months, continued in office till 1841. It was during his administration that the Marriage Act was passed, which permitted Dissenters in England to marry at other places than the Established Church. A Bill, brought in by Lord John Russell, for the Registration of Births, Deaths, and Marriages in England, was also successfully carried through both Houses of Parliament. It was not till 1855 that a similar measure was introduced into Scotland. The King died in the month of June 1837, after a reign of nearly seven years. He was "a just and upright King, a forgiving enemy, a sincere friend, and a gracious and indulgent master."

GENERAL FACTS.

The railway from Liverpool to Manchester was opened in September 1830, on which occasion the celebrated Mr. Huskisson was accidentally killed. In the same year the overland route to India was established. In 1832, cholera made its appearance for the first time in London, Dublin, etc. Both Houses of Parliament were destroyed by fire in 1834. Cheap literature was introduced by Charles Knight of London, and the Messrs. Chambers of Edinburgh.



NEW HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT.

SUMMARY OF THE REIGN OF WILLIAM IV.

A.D. 1830-A.D. 1887.

The short reign of William IV. is chiefly memorable for the passing of the First Reform Bill, which was introduced by Lord John Russell in 1831, and became law in 1832. Various other Various other important Acts were passed, having for their object the reform of the poor-laws and of municipal corporations. Slavery was abolished in all the British colonies, A.D. 1833, and the sum of £20,000,000 paid in compensation to the slave-owners.

QUESTIONS.

William's Personal History—Parliamentary Reform—Changes Produced by the Reform Bill-First Reformed Parliament -Slavery Abolished-Poor-Law Bill-Marriage Act-Death and Character of the King-General Facts.

1. Relate the Personal History of William IV.

2. What took place in France shortly after the King's Accession?
8. How did this affect England?

- What is meant by "Parliamentary
- Representation?" 5. Show that Reform in this was
- necessary. 6. How was it proposed to accomplish
- Parliamentary Reform? 7. Who opposed all such measures?
- Why? 8. Who succeeded Wellington as
- Premier? 9. By whom was the First Reform Bill introduced? Date.
 - 10. What was its fate?
- 11. What led to a dissolution of Parliament?
- 12. What did the new Parliament proceed to do?

- 18. Give an account of the riots which
- took place.

 14. What precaution was taken by Earl Grey to secure a majority in the House of Lords?
- 15. How was this rendered unneces-
- sary? 16. When did the First Reform Bill pass ?
- 17. State some of the changes which
- it produced.
 18. When did the First Reformed Parliament meet?
- 19. What has rendered it memorable? 20. State the provisions of the new
- Poor-Law Act. 21. What measures were passed by Lord Melbourne's administration?
- 22. Describe the character of William
- 23. What general facts are mentioned during his reign?

CHAPTER VIII.

VICTORIA.

Began to Reign A.D. 1837.

Victoria's Personal History—Her Accession—The Chartists—Rebecca and her Daughters—Repeal Agitation in Ireland—The Free Church Secession—Repeal of the Corn Laws—State of Ireland—Home Events—The Great Exhibition—Death of Wellington—The India Bill—The Volunteer Movement—Death of the Prince Consort—The Cotton Famine—Marriage of the Prince of Wales—The Atlantic Cable—Fenianiam—The Reform Bill of 1867—Recent Events—Characteristics of the Reign.

Victoria's Personal History—Her Accession— The Chartists.

ALEXANDRINA VICTORIA, our present Queen, is the only daughter of the late Edward, Duke of Kent, fourth son of George III. She was born at Kensington Palace on the 24th May 1819, and in 1840 married her cousin, Francis Albert, Duke of Saxe, Prince of Coburg and Gotha. From this union have sprung a numerous family. namely, four sons and five daughters, thereby giving a new and welcome security for the permanence of the present dynasty. The Royal Family consists of the Princess Victoria, who married Prince Frederick William, the Crown Prince of Prussia; Albert-Edward, Prince of Wales, who married, 10th March 1863, the Princess Alexandra, eldest daughter of Christian IX., King of Denmark; Princess Alice, married to Prince Frederick William of Hesse; Prince Alfred, who married, 23rd January 1874, the Grand Duchess Marie of Russia; the Princess Helena, married to Prince Christian of Augustenburg; the Princess Louise, married to the Marquis of Lorne: Prince Arthur; Prince Leopold; and the Princess Beatrice.

Victoria had just completed her eighteenth year when she ascended the throne, and a year afterwards the ceremony of coronation was performed at Westminster amidst universal rejoicings. The succession to the throne of Hanover being, by the Salic law, limited to the male line, the crown of that country became at this time separated.

from Great Britain, and passed to Ernest Augustus, Duke of Cumberland, fifth son of George III.

Two years after Her Majesty's accession, a political agitation began to attract attention, and excite fears for the public safety. The working classes being in receipt of low wages and irregular employment, were discontented and turbulent. Under these circumstances a new and numerous body of men arose, styling themselves Chartists. from a document they drew up, called the "People's Charter," in which they demanded—1. Universal Suffrage: 2. Vote by Ballot; 3. Annual Parliaments; 4. Payment of Representatives; 5. Abolition of Property Qualification: and, 6. Electoral Districts. The Chartists were divided into physical force and moral force agitators. A party of the former, under one Frost, assembled in Monmouthshire, and attacked the town of Monmouth, but a few soldiers speedily quelled this outbreak. After this the Chartists were little heard of until 1848, when the revolutionary excitement which that year prevailed in France and over nearly the whole of Europe, roused them into action and induced them to organise a large demonstration in London. Their object was to march to the House of Commons with a petition embodying their demands. which, they said, contained more than five million They failed, however, to carry out their programme, and the whole affair passed off peaceably, in consequence of the firm attitude assumed by the Government.

Rebecca and her Daughters-Repeal Agitation in Ireland.

In 1843, general distress and discontent prevailed, and in many places this discontent found vent in riots. The most singular of these took place in South Wales, where the peasantry had long felt the grievance of oppressive road-taxes and heavy tolls. The rioters, dressed in women's clothes, tore down the obnoxious toll-bars by night, till scarcely one remained. The ringleader and his followers took the name of "Rebecca and her daughters," from a perversion of that passage in Genesis in which the

children of Rebecca are promised the gates of those that hate them. But Ireland was the chief scene of excitement. The agitation for the Repeal of the Union between Great Britain and Ireland had now reached its height. The great agitator was Daniel O'Connell; and monster meetings, attended by tens of thousands, chiefly of the lower orders, had been held in various places. The Government at length interposed to prevent these assemblages, and O'Connell with eight others were arrested, and tried for conspiracy and sedition. 30th May. They were found guilty, but the sentence was set aside by the House of Lords on a technical point of law. O'Connell retired in broken health to Italy, where he died in 1847.

The Free Church Secession—Repeal of the Corn Laws—State of Ireland.

The question of lay patronage had for a lengthened period agitated the Church of Scotland. An act was passed by the General Assemby in 1834, called the Veto Act, which gave powers to a congregation to reject a presentee to a parish. On an appeal to the civil courts, however, it was found that such an act was unconstitutional. Thereupon, after a ten years' struggle in the church courts, a large party, numbering upwards of 400 ministers, with their congregations, separated themselves from the National Church, and formed what is called the Free Church of Scotland. The great leader in this movement was Dr. Thomas Chalmers, a divine of eminent ability and commanding eloquence.

The greatest political struggle since the passing of the Reform Bill, was the Repeal of the Corn Laws, or laws laying heavy import duties on foreign grain. Those who upheld such restrictions were called Protectionists, and those who desired their removal, Free-traders. A number of the latter formed themselves in 1838 into an association, the Anti-Corn-Law League, having for its object the enlightenment of the public on the evils arising from the laws of protection. Its great leader was Richard.

Cobden, whose powerful speaking and writing were largely instrumental in effecting the change. Sir Robert Peel, the Prime Minister during the period of agitation, as leader of the Conservative or Protectionist party, had long resisted the movement, but yielding at length to conviction, he lent his powerful influence to a.D. 1846. effect the repeal. This was accomplished in face of the sternest opposition; and Peel, having thus alienated his former supporters, resigned office a few days after. This measure inaugurated a new period of commercial legislation, on the principles of Free Trade, by which most foreign commodities are now admitted into this country free of duty, or only at a nominal rate.

The wisdom and beneficence of this great measure were speedily perceived and acknowledged in the case of Ireland, which, in the succeeding winter, suffered in many localities all the horrors of famine. The failure of the potato crop, the staple food of the Irish peasantry, brought famine on the land, and with famine its sure attendant, fever, which carried off many hundreds of the people. Food was imported in great quantities, while ten millions sterling from the public purse, and three quarters of a million from private beneficence, were sent over for the relief of the starving population. From the deaths of the period and the subsequent emigration, Ireland was reduced by 2,000,000 of inhabitants.

The year 1848 was a year of revolutionary excitement over nearly all Europe. France, as usual, was the centre of political convulsion. Louis Philippe was driven from his throne to seek refuge with his family in England, and a republic was once more established in France. In Italy, Austria, and Prussia, also, governments were subverted in a day, and sovereigns and ministers had to flee before the storm of popular feeling. But in Britain no political outbreak took place. In Ireland, however, the chronic discontent was stirred into activity by passing events. Smith O'Brien, Mitchell, and Meagher, members of the Repeal party, by violent and seditious speeches

and writings, urged the people to rebellion. But after a period of great excitement, the attempted rebellion was suppressed by a few policemen's batons in a cabbage garden in Tipperary. O'Brien, Meagher, and others were tried at Clonmel, and sentenced to death, but this sentence was commuted to banishment.

The Great Exhibition—Death of Wellington.

After the political convulsions of 1848 had subsided on the Continent, it was fondly hoped a new era of peace, with all its attendant arts, was about to dawn on the To inaugurate this great era, and at the same time to help to realise it, the Prince Consort conceived the design of gathering together in London specimens of the arts and manufactures of all nations. The scheme was eagerly taken up both at home and abroad, and was realised in 1851 with a splendour and success beyond all precedent. A fairy-like fabric of iron and glass, from the designs of Sir Joseph Paxton, rose in Hyde Park to receive into its area of nineteen acres, the industrial products of the world. For five months, on a daily average, it received a living stream of 43,000 persons from almost every land on earth. It thus presented for the first time, the enviable spectacle of an arena for the generous rivalry of nations, in the arts which bless and civilise mankind. The materials of the Great Exhibition of 1851 were largely employed in the formation of the Crystal Palace at Sydenham.

In September, the following year, died the illustrious Duke of Wellington, full of years and honours. He was honoured with a public funeral of great magnificence, attended by the Queen and the noblest in the land. The dust of the great statesman and warrior was borne on the funeral car amid the lowly reverences of a million spectators, and laid in St. Paul's Cathedral, side by side with that of Nelson—the greatest military with the greatest naval hero of their age and country.

The India Bill—The Volunteer Movement.

In 1858, the government of India was transferred from the East India Company to the British Crown, and royal proclamation declared British India, with its 140,000,000 of population, an integral part of the British Empire. The direction of affairs is now vested in a Secretary of State and a council of eighteen. The India Bill. by which this was effected, and a Bill for the admission of Jews into Parliament, were the chief measures passed by Lord Derby's second administration. Mr. Disraeli, the Chancellor of the Exchequer, having introduced a Reform Bill into the House of Commons (1859), the Government were defeated, and were soon after succeeded by Lord Palmerston's second administration. In 1860, Lord John Russell also brought in a Reform Bill, but, chiefly from the public apathy on the question, the measure was abandoned.

Of home events, the most interesting was the Volunteer Movement, which had begun in 1859. The unsettled state of the continent, and the apparently threatening attitude of France, combined with the facilities for the invasion of this country which steam navigation now affords, suggested the desirability of defending our shores with a larger force than that generally available. Civilians of all ranks, having for their motto Defence not Defiance, mustered in volunteer corps in every corner of Britain for cannon and rifle drill. Before the end of 1860 these corps composed an army of 150,000 men; and the continued zeal and efficiency of our reserve forces have added a new guarantee for the peace and independence of Great Britain.

Death of the Prince Consort—The Cotton Famine.

On Sunday morning, the 15th December 1861, as men were going to church, they whispered to each other the heavy and unexpected tidings that Prince Albert was dead! The Prince Consort had died of fever on the previous evening, at the early age of forty-two. His

domestic virtues and prudence, his talents and accomplishments, and disinterested labours for the public weal, had endeared him to the people, and all classes mingled their tribute of admiration for the man, with heartfelt sympathy for their sovereign in her bereavement. Queen, having long nursed her sorrow in seclusion, has recently begun to return into public life.

The disastrous Civil War in America having stopped our supplies of cotton from the Southern States, upon which our cotton manufactures had been chiefly dependent, much suffering was entailed during 1862 upon the operatives of the cotton manufacturing districts, more especially of Lancashire. The patience and fortitude displayed by the sufferers elicited the admiration and sympathy of the more favoured classes, and funds were cheerfully subscribed throughout the country, which served largely to mitigate the distress. The temporary cessation of the cotton supplies from America had the effect of directing attention more largely to cotton fields in other quarters of the world, so that in future our cotton manufactures will be less dependent on the casualties of individual countries.

Marriage of the Prince of Wales—The Atlantic Cable.

On the 10th of March 1863, Albert-Edward, Prince of Wales, married the Princess Alexandra of Denmark. The event was celebrated with the most enthusiastic Bridal banquets were held in every town of rejoicings. note in the kingdom, and in the evening the great cities presented a spectacle in the way of illumination never surpassed for magnificence; while thousands of loval addresses, poetical effusions, and festive orations expressed the nation's lively interest in this auspicious The crown of Greece was offered to our royal event. sailor, Prince Alfred, now Duke of Edinburgh, but, for political reasons, was declined; and in the same year it was accepted by Prince George of Denmark, brother of the young Princess of Wales. At the same time the Ionian Islands, which had been placed under the protectorate of Great Britain, were formally ceded to Greece, in accordance with the wishes of their inhabitants.

The most interesting event of 1866 was the laying of the great Atlantic Cable. In 1858 the wire had been successfully submerged, and words of happy omen had been flashed across to the Western Hemisphere, when it became suddenly silent. In 1865 another attempt had well-nigh proved successful, when the cable snapped; but next summer, with improved appliances and

July, increased experience, the great achievement was successfully accomplished. From the small island of Valentia, on the south-west coast of Ireland, to Heart's Content, on Trinity Bay, Newfoundland, through 1866 miles of wire along the bed of the ocean, are night and day flashed the electric currents which speed the intercourse of nations. Cyrus Field (an American), Professor Sir William Thomson, Sir Charles Bright, and Captain Sir James Anderson, are the names most intimately associated with this great undertaking.

Fenianism—The Reform Bill of 1867.

A secret organization or brotherhood, styled Fenianism, had for some time existed in Ireland; its aim being to wrest Ireland from British sway, to extirpate all who were not of Irish birth, and establish a republic. adherents were chiefly confined to the lower orders, who were largely supplied with money, arms, and leaders by Americans of Irish extraction. In the United States the Fenians were numerous and active; and a large body of them in the autumn of 1866, crossing the River Niagara, made a raid upon Canada, but were speedily repulsed or captured with little bloodshed. In Ireland, the Habeas Corpus Act was suspended for two years, and during that period numerous arrests were made. In the spring of 1867, besides a meditated attack upon Chester in England, which was frustrated by timely precautions, risings were attempted in the counties of Dublin and Kerry, but the few who ventured to show themselves speedily melted away. Several of the ringlesders were

captured, and sentenced to death for treason; but the extreme penalty was commuted to penal servitude.

On the death of Lord Palmerston in October, 1865, Lord John (now Earl) Russell became Premier, and Mr. Gladstone, Chancellor of the Exchequer. This was the second Russell Administration. The government having in 1866 introduced a Reform Bill and been defeated, resigned office, and was succeeded by a Conservative ministry under the Earl of Derby, with Mr. Disraeli as Chancellor of the Exchequer.

The Reform Bill of 1867—The Gladstone Ministry.

Early in the session of 1867, a Reform Bill for England was brought into the House of Commons by the Derby Government, and after numerous changes and modifications passed both houses, and re- A.D. 1867. ceived the royal assent. Similar Acts for Scotland and Ireland followed. In all boroughs in England and Wales a vote is given to every householder who has occupied the same premises for at least one year and paid the rates, and to every lodger who has occupied for one year unfurnished lodgings at a rent of not less In counties the franchise is now conferred than £10. upon owners of property worth £5 a year, and to tenants who pay an annual rent of £12. England was deprived of eight seats, seven of which went to Scotland and one to Wales, but the total number in the United Kingdom remained the same as before—658.

On the 25th February 1868, Earl Derby, on account of failing health, retired from office, and was succeeded by Mr. Disraeli. The last Parliament elected under the Reform Bill of 1832 was brought to a close on the 31st July. A general election took place in December, which resulted in the triumph of the Liberal party. Mr. Disraeli accordingly tendered his resignation, and a new ministry was formed, with Mr. Gladstone as Premier. Shortly after the opening of Parliament, Mr. Gladstone introduced a Bill for the disestablishment and disenderment of the Irish Church, which measure received the

royal assent on the 26th July 1869, but did not come into operation till after the 1st January 1871.

Recent Events.

Two important measures—the Irish Land Act, and A.D. 1870. the Elementary Education Act for England and Wales-were this year passed in Parlia-The former secured to tenant farmers in Ireland a better tenure; as none could be ejected from their holdings without compensation, while, at the same time, it gave them a claim for improvements made by them on their holdings during the time of their lease. gives power to elect School Boards in districts where the voluntary system fails to overtake the educational wants of the district. It also provides for the levying of school rates, allows School Boards to frame bye-laws, and enacts a conscience clause. The revisers of the authorised version of the New Testament met this year for the first time, on the 22nd June, in the Jerusalem Chamber, Westminster Abbev.

The University Test Act was passed, by which all religious tests in the universities were abolished. Mr. Lowe, Chancellor of the Exchequer, proposed a tax on matches, from which he expected to realise £500,000, but from the dissatisfaction it excited, he afterwards announced that it would be withdrawn. The famous Tichborne trial commenced on the 11th May, and, under one form or another, occupied the Courts at Westminster for the greater part of two years. This remarkable trial ended in the conviction of the "Claimant" on a charge of wilful and corrupt perjury. He was sentenced to fourteen years penal servitude.

This year the Ballot Act was passed, which introduced A.D. 1872. a system of secret instead of open voting in parliamentary and municipal elections. The duration of the Act is limited to eight years. On the 6th of August the Scotch Education Bill received the royal assent. This measure renders the establishment of School Boards in every parish and burgh compulsory.

It gives power to levy school rates, and enforces attendance at school. The Prince of Wales, having recovered from a serious attack of typhoid fever, a Thanksgiving Service for his recovery took place in St. Paul's Cathedral, and was attended by the Queen, the Prince and Princess of Wales, and other members of the Royal Family (27th Feb.). Mr. Stanley, an American newspaper correspondent, and the discoverer of Dr. Livingstone, arrived in London, with numerous letters and reports from the great

traveller (25th July).

Louis Napoleon Bonaparte, ex-Emperor of Franco, died in exile at Chiselhurst, near London (9th A.D. 1873. Jan.). An emigrant ship, the Northfleet, was run into and sunk, about two miles off Dungeness, by the Spanish steamer Murillo, which in the most heartless manner left more than three hundred people to perish without the slightest offer of assistance (22nd Jan.). The first contested School Board election in Scotland took place in the parish of Eastwood (28th Feb.). The Irish University Bill having been rejected by the Commons, Mr. Gladstone resigned office, but as the party in opposition were not in a position to construct a cabinet, intimation was made in both Houses of Parliament that Mr. Gladstone and his colleagues would carry on the Government as formerly. Dr. Livingstone died at Ulala. in Central Africa, after having spent twenty-nine years as a traveller and missionary in Africa. His remains were brought to this country and interred in Westminster Abbey in April 1874. The Alexandra Palace, in the suburbs of London, opened on the 24th May, was completely destroyed by fire on the 9th June. His Majesty the Shah of Persia arrived at Dover on a visit to this country (18th June). After a series of splendid entertainments in honour of his visit, he took his departure from London on the 5th July.

The marriage of Prince Alfred, Duke of Edinburgh, to the Grand Duchess Marie of Russia, took place at the Winter Palace, St. Petersburg, 23rd Jan.

To the surprise of the country, Mr. Gladstone suddenly

dissolved Parliament. Since the general election in 1868 the Liberal majority was thought to have fallen from 116 to about 70. The result of the new elections gave the Conservatives such a large majority that the Gladstone Ministry resigned, and a new ministry, with Mr. Disraeli as Premier, was formed. In order to check the progress of Ritualism in the Church of England, an Act was passed to make better provision for the administration of the law respecting Public Worship. Another Act was passed which abolished Lay Patronage in the Church of Scotland, and transferred the appointment of ministers to vacant charges to the members and adherents in each congregation.

Practical steps were this year taken by the English and French Governments to form a railway tunnel beneath the English Channel. In the summer of 1876 the preliminary works were commenced near Calais. The Prince of Wales visited India, and received a loyal welcome from princes and people. The English Government purchased shares in the Suez Canal, for which the sum of £4,000,000 was paid to the Khedive of Egypt. The canal is attracting a large portion of the

traffic between this country and the East.

This year an Act, called the Royal Style and Titles Act, was passed, which conferred the title of Empress of India on the Queen. Lord Northbrook resigned the office of Viceroy of India, and Lord Lytton was appointed his successor. The Prince of Wales having returned from India, a Thanksgiving Service took place at Westminster Abbey, at which the Prince and Princess were present. The Challenger arrived at Portsmouth, having completed her voyage of scientific exploration round the world. She left England in 1872, and the total length of the voyage was 68,184 miles. Captain Nares of the "Alert" returned from the Arctic regions, having deemed it impracticable to reach the North Pole. Mr. Disraeli, first Lord of the Treasury, was raised to the peerage under the title of Earl of Beaconsfield. Lord Napier of Magdala was appointed

Governor of the fortress of Gibraltar. Large quantities of meat preserved by the freezing process were imported into this country from the United States. The traffic continues to increase, the quality and flavour of the meat being excellent, and the price moderate.

Characteristics of the Reign.

Notwithstanding much discontent which continues to prevail in Ireland, under no former sovereign has the country enjoyed so large a measure of political contentment and national prosperity. Believing that the powers of the crown are to be exercised for the good of the people, Victoria is the most constitutional of all our British sovereigns. No former monarch has engaged so largely the affections of her subjects. The pattern afforded to the nation and the world by her Majesty and the Prince Consort of stainless lives, unpretending piety, and solicitude for the welfare of the people and the correct education of the royal family, have added fresh lustre to the crown, and additional guarantees for the stability of the throne from the increased loyalty of the people, and the respect and admiration of the civilised world. progress of the nation in all the elements of civilization, more especially in material prosperity, has never before been equalled. Steam-power in all its applications to machinery, steamboats and railways, iron-clad ships and steel guns, iron bridges and palaces, penny and halfpenny postage, the electric telegraph, gas and photography, are at once the wonders and characteristics of the age. But notwithstanding these material aspects, a kindlier feeling than formerly pervades all classes, and the period is rife with institutions of all kinds, religious, social, and sanitary, for the improvement and amelioration of society. The sympathies of the rich are easily moved, and their charities flow freely forth in behalf of any feasible scheme of philanthropy. Much ignorance, pauperism, and vice still prevail amongst our citizens; but, notwithstanding, no previous era will shed a brighter lustre in our nation's history than that of the good Queen Victoria.

SKETCH OF COLONIAL AND FOREIGN EVENTS.

Canada—Egypt—China—Afghanistan—India—The Russian War—The Indian Mutiny—Quarrels with China—The Civil War in America—Expedition to Abyssinia—The Franco-Prussian War—The War in Turkey.

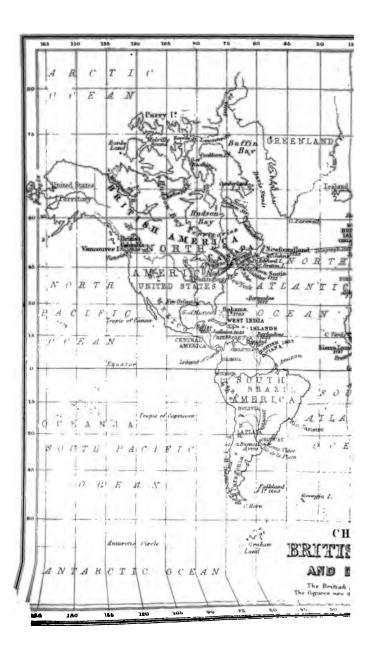
Canada.—At the time of the accession of Queen Victoria a rebellion broke out in Canada, in consequence of certain alleged political grievances. The revolt, however, was soon suppressed, and measures were taken to prevent its recurrence. In 1840 the provinces of Upper and Lower Canada were united, and the seat of Government removed from Quebec to Montreal, and afterwards to Toronto. In 1867 the provinces of Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick were, by Act of Parliament, united into one Dominion, under the name of Canada. These confederate provinces are ruled by a Governor-General, and two Houses of Parliament.

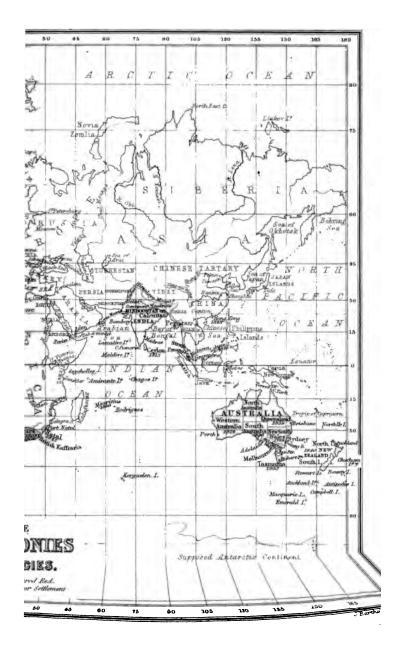
Egypt.—In 1840, Great Britain, together with other European powers, supported the Sultan against his Pacha in Egypt, Mahomet Ali, who had endeavoured to throw off his allegiance to Turkey. An English fleet, under Admiral Stopford, and Commodore Sir Charles Napier, sailed up the Mediterranean, bombarded Beyrout, and captured Acre and other strongholds. The rebellious vassal of the Sultan was now compelled to come to terms; and after differences had been adjusted, an arrangement was entered into which secured to him and his family the

government of Egypt.

China. — In the same year England declared war against China, in consequence of an attempt on the part of the Chinese Government to put a stop to the contraband trade in opium carried on between that country and India. In every action the Chinese were defeated; and after two years' fighting a peace was concluded, by which









the island of Hong-Kong was ceded to the British, and the ports of Canton, Amoy, Foo-choo-foo, Ningpo, and

Shanghai were thrown open to foreign commerce.

Afghanistan.—The war between this country and Afghanistan will be long remembered for the disasters and sufferings experienced by our soldiers during their occupation of that country. The ferocious Afghans, having besieged the British in Cabool, forced them to retreat, and in their march through the Khyber Pass in 1842, they were cut off almost to a man. In the same year, however, the prestige of British power was vindicated. General Pollock and Sir Robert Sale forced the pass, planted the British standard on the citadel of Cabool, and reduced the city to ruins.

India.—In 1843 a war broke out with the Ameers of Scinde, which ended in the conquest of that country and its annexation to our Indian dominions. In 1845 the Sikhs of the Punjaub, our most warlike and determined enemies in the East, crossed the Sutlej, and invaded British territory. After several severe engagements, the province of the Punjaub was annexed by proclamation to the British dominions, A.D. 1849. To these, in 1852 was added the province of Pegu, containing the

towns of Rangoon and Martaban.

The Russian War.—Russia had long cherished the design of reducing the Turkish empire under its sway, and in 1853, the Czar Nicholas claimed to be regarded by the Sultan as protector of the Greek Christians throughout the Turkish dominions. This demand was regarded by England as a blow aimed at the independence of Turkey, and the Porte was advised to resist any such claim on the part of the Czar. After nearly a year of fruitless remonstrance, negotiations were broken off, and on the 27th March 1854, war was declared by Britain and France against the Emperor of Russia. In the autumn the allied armies sailed for the Crimea, where the war was mainly carried on. The chief engagements were the victories of the Alma and of Inkermann; the former on the 20th September, and the latter on the 5th November.

After the battle of the Alma, the allies gained the southern side of Sebastopol, one of the strongest fortresses in Europe, and immediately prepared to besiege it. The operations of the siege were continued throughout the winter, during which our troops suffered the greatest privations from want of food, clothing, and shelter. When news of their sufferings reached home, the active sympathy of the country was aroused, and abundant supplies were speedily raised and forwarded to our starving soldiers. Florence Nightingale, at the head of a devoted band of nurses, went out to tend the sick and wounded in the hospitals. A railway was formed from Balaklava, which conveyed supplies of all kinds to the camp, and an electric wire across the Black Sea flashed

home the tidings of war. The siege lasted 349 AD. 1855. days, at the end of which time the Russians evacuated Sebastopol. This terminated the war. In the following spring a treaty of peace was signed at Paris, by which the independence of Turkey was secured, and the naval power of Russia in the Black Sea reduced.

The Indian Mutiny.—The great event of 1857 was the outbreak of a terrible mutiny in India. This was caused by the Sepoys, or native Indian troops, who had shown signs of disaffection from a mistaken idea that their religious opinions were to be interfered with. The

10th May mutiny broke out at Meerut, where several regi10th May ments of Sepcys brutally murdered their officers,
and committed other atrocities. Within two
months, 50,000 native troops were in rebellion, and
similar scenes of massacre occurred in many places
throughout Bengal, and the North-west Provinces. The
most horrible was at Cawnpore, where a great number
of Europeans, including many women and children, who
had surrendered to Nana Sahib, were murdered in cold
blood by that atrocious monster, and many of their bodies
were thrown into a deep well in the barrack-yard. Delhi
had been seized by the mutineers of Meerut, and was now
besieged by 3000 British troops, who, under the command
of Sir John Lawrence, stormed and captured this great

citadel (20th September). Meanwhile, Sir Henry Lawrence and a number of fugitive Europeans were beleagured by 70,000 mutineers in the residency of Lucknow. Their relief now became a question of engrossing interest. Twice did the pious and heroic Henry Havelock set out from Cawnpore with succour, and although he fought and won no less than twelve battles against fearful odds, twice had he to retire for reinforcements. But when the heroic band gained the Residency they were themselves besieged. It was not till the 17th November that Sir Colin Campbell brought final relief to the fainting but brave hearts shut up in Lucknow. His services were soon after acknowledged by well-won honours—the title of Lord Clyde of Clydesdale, and the baton of a Field Marshal.

The mutiny was quelled the year following (1858).

Quarrels with China.—These were occasioned in 1856 by the Chinese authorities at Canton seizing a small native ship sailing under British colours. Redress having been denied, the allied fleets of England and France stormed and took the city. The forts at the mouth of the Peiho were captured in May 1858, and on the 26th June hostilities ceased by the Chinese signing a treaty at Tien-tsin, which gave permission to British subjects to travel in all parts of the interior of China. Several ports and cities, in addition to those opened up by the treaty of 1842, were also declared open to our traffic. The treacherous Chinese, however, soon broke faith with our Government. In June 1859, whilst the British and French ambassadors were on their way to Pekin to ratify with the Emperor the treaty of Tien-tsin, they were fired upon and repulsed by a party concealed in the Taku forts near the mouth of the Peiho. This breach of good faith had to be avenged. The Taku forts were captured by the English and French troops in August 1860; the Chinese Emperor fled into Tartary, and the city of Pekin surrendered to the Allies, and in revenge for the murder of several captives the summer palace of the Emperor was laid in ashes. A treaty was soon after signed, by which the terms of the previous treaty were confirmed, an ample indemnity promised, Tien-tsin opened up to British trade, a British minister allowed to reside at Pekin, and Kowloon, a portion of the province of Canton, ceded to Britain.

The Civil War in America.—The year 1861 witnessed the commencement of the Civil War in the United States. For a number of years differences of opinion had existed between the Northern and Southern States on the ques tion of slavery, the total abolition of which was advocated by the North. Eleven of the Southern States ultimately seceded from the Union—the first to set the example being South Carolina—and formed themselves into a free and independent Government. They took the name of the Confederate States, and fixed their capital at Richmond, with Mr. Jefferson Davis as President. conflict between North and South lasted four years, and was one of the most gigantic that ever desolated any country. It ended in the complete triumph of the North, but before hostilities ceased an unexpected calamity befel Abraham Lincoln, whose election the American nation. to the Presidency of the United States had caused the secession of the South, was assassinated in his private box in the theatre of Washington. From the commencement of the contest to its close, this country, although largely interested in the struggle from its commercial relations with America, watched its progress with the strictest neutrality.

Expedition to Abyssinia.—In 1867, an expedition, under the command of Sir Robert Napier, was sent to Abyssinia to rescue a number of British subjects and other Europeans held captive by Theodore, King of that country. The almost inaccessible fortress of Magdala was stormed and captured, and Theodore in despair died by his own hand. The British captives and those of other nations were released, and more than ninety of the principal chiefs of Abyssinia regained their freedom. The fortress itself was set on fire, and remains now only a scorched rock. For his distinguished services Sir Robert received the thanks of both Houses of Parlia-

ment, a yearly pension of £2000, and the title of Lord

Napier of Magdala.

The Franco-Prussian War.—On the 15th of July 1870, France declared war against Prussia, in consequence of the action taken by the latter in connection with the throne of Spain, which was now vacant by the abdication of Amadeo, son of Victor Emmanuel of Italy. The Government of Prussia encouraged one of their own princes in his efforts to secure the Spanish crown, but France regarded such proceedings as dangerous to her interest and security. The first serious engagement in the war took place at Weissenburg (Aug. 4), when the French, after a severe struggle, were repulsed and dis-Two days afterwards the French were again defeated at Woerth; and after a succession of severe disasters, the Emperor Napoleon III. gave himself up to the King of Prussia at Sedan (Sept. 2). The fallen Emperor departed under guard next morning for the castle of Wilhelmshöhe, in Cassel, placed at his disposal by the King, France was now proclaimed a Republic. under a government of national defence consisting of eighteen members. The war still continued, and on the 19th September the Prussians in- An 1871 vested Paris, which surrendered after a siege which lasted 131 days. On 26th of February, preliminaries of peace between Germany and France were concluded at Versailles. The principal conditions of this treaty were, the cession to Prussia of Alsace and German Lorraine, including the strong fortress of Metz, and the payment of a war indemnity of £200,000,000. The 11th May., The final treaty was signed at Frankfort. ex-Emperor was permitted to leave Wilhelmshöhe on the 19th March, and on the 20th arrived at Dover. Here he was met by the Empress Eugénie and the Prince Imperial, who accompanied him to Chiselhurst, near London, where he died in 1873.

To add to the misfortunes of France caused by the war, a Communist insurrection broke 18th Mar., out in Paris, which was not put down till

the 28th May, during which time the infuriated mob committed acts of the most dreadful barbarity. Many innocent and peace-loving citizens, including women and children, were murdered, the city itself was set on fire, and a number of its finest public buildings completely destroyed. Order having been restored, M. Thiers was elected President of the Republic, which office he held till May 1873, when he retired. He was succeeded by Marshal MacMahon, who, by an Act of the Assembly, continues in power for seven years. M. Thiers died in

September 1877.

The War in Turkey.—This war arose out of certain complications between Turkey and some of her dependent states. For some time previous, the Christian population of Servia, Bosnia, and Herzegovina complained of Turkish misgovernment and persecution. Signs of disaffection gradually showed themselves, and at length ended in a declaration of war by Servia against the Ottoman Government, July 1, 1876. The cause of the insurgents was at the same time gallantly espoused by the little state of Montenegro, but the struggle for freedom was short-lived, and ended in disaster to the rebellious tributaries of the Porte. An armistice for six months was at length agreed to by Turkey; and, meanwhile, through the agency of Lord Derby, Foreign Secretary to Her Majesty's Government, a Conference, composed of representatives from various European powers, assembled at Constantinople to try to effect a reconciliation between Turkey and her insurgent states. Everything was done in the interests of peace and with a view to secure effectual guarantees for the better government of the Christians of the Ottoman empire. This Conference, however, effected nothing. The negotiations failed, and the Porte remained inflexible. Wise resolutions recommended by the ablest of European statesmen were at once abandoned by Turkey, and a peaceful solution of the difficulty could no longer be looked for. At this crisis, Russia, whose sympathies had all along been well marked, though not so openly expressed, now embraced the cause of the

. Christian states. A short diplomatic correspondence, presumably with a view to peace, ensued, but it, too, failed. In these circumstances, war was declared by Russia, with the avowed intention of 24th April, 1877, exacting from Turkey what European diplomacy had been unable to accomplish. The struggle at once assumed alarming dimensions. Two mighty Russian armies have moved southwards, one of which has already made considerable advances in the north-east corner of Asia Minor: the other has forced the passage of the Danube, having displayed a strategical skill at once admirable, and a military daring which can hardly be surpassed. Next perhaps in point of importance to Waterloo, the great event of our century has been recorded, and the armies of Russia, now encamped around the Black Sea, are engaged in a momentous struggle, the duration and results of which no one can foretell.



CONSTANTINOPLE,

QUESTIONS.

HOME EVENTS IN THE REIGN OF VICTORIA.

Victoria's Personal History-Her Accession-The Chartists-Rebecca and Her Daughters-Repeal Agitation in Ireland -The Free Church Secession-Repeal of the Corn Laws-State of Ireland.

- 1. Relate the personal history of Queen Victoria.
- 2. How old was she when she ascended the throne?
 - 8. Where was she crowned?
- 4. What led to the separation of the grown of Hanover from Great Britain? 5. Who were the Chartists? Why so
- called? 6. State the nature of their demands.
- 7. How did they endeavour to enforce them?
- 8. What took place in the county of Monmouth ?
- 9. When were they next heard of? 10. What led them to take action at this time?
- 11. Give an account of the London demonstration.
- 12. What was the cause of a riot in South Wales in 1843?
- 13. How did the rioters conduct themselves?
- 14. What was the designation of the ringleader and his followers?
- 15. Why did they take this name?
 16. Who was the great agitator for the Repeal of the Union between Great Britain and Ireland?

- 17. What means did he employ to stir up the people?
 18. How was the agitation put down?
 - 19. Relate the circumstances con-
- nected with the Free Church Secession. 20. Who was the great leader in this movement?
- 21. What were the Corn Laws?
- 22. By what names were the upholders of the laws, and those who desired their removal, respectively known?
- 23. What was the Anti-Corn Law League?
- 24. Who was the great leader in this movement? .
- 25. Who was Prime Minister during this period of agitation?
- 26. Give the date of the Repeal of the Corn Laws
- 27. What led to a famine in Ireland in 1847?
- 28. State the results which followed. 29. For what is the year 1848 memorable?
- 30. How did this effect Ireland? 31. Who were the leaders in this rebellion?
 - 32. How was it put down?

The Great Exhibition-Death of Wellington-The India Bill The Volunteer Movement—Death of the Prince Consort-The Cotton Famine—Marriage of the Prince of Wales—The Atlantic Cable—Fenianism—The Reform Bill of 1867— Recent Events-Characteristics of the Reign.

- 1. Give the date of the first Exhibition in London. 2. Who originated the idea, and what
- was its design? 3. Where was it held, and how long
- did it continue? 4. Who designed the building, and
- to what use were the materials afterwards put? 5. When did the Duke of Wellington
- die, and where was he buried?
- 6. What change took place in regard to the Government of India in 1858?

- 7. How was this change effected?
- 8. What other important measure was this year passed in Parliament? 9. When did the Volunteer movement
- begin?
 - 10. What originated the idea?
- 11. What motto was adopted by the volunteers?
- 12. In what year did Prince Albert die?
- Describe his character.
- 14. Account for the suffering which prevailed in Lancashire in 1802.

- relieved?
- 16. Give the date of the marriage of the Prince of Wales.
- 17. How was it celebrated throughout the kingdom?
- 18. What important event marks the year 1866?
- 19. What attempts had been previously made for the same purpose?
 20. State the length of the Atlantic
- Cable. 21. At what points in both countries
- is it connected? 22. What names are associated with
- this undertaking? 23. Tell what you know of Fenianism.
- 24. In what year did Lord Palmerston die?
- 25. Who succeeded him as Premier? 26. How long did this Administration last?
- 27. By whom was a new ministry
- 28. What important measure was carried through both Houses of Parliament? Date.
- 29. Mention the chief provisions of this Reform Bill.
- 30. What caused Earl Derby to resign office?
- 31. By whom was he succeeded? 32. What caused him afterwards to resign?
 - 88. Who then became Prime Minister? tics of the reign of Queen Victoria. 84. What important measure was

- 15. How was it in a great measure passed through Parliament by the new Government? Date.
 - 85. What important legislative enactments mark the year 1870? 36. Relate the chief provisions of
 - each. 37. What was the University Test
 - Act? 38. What great trial commenced in
 - 1871? 39. How long did it last, and how did
 - it end? 40. When did the Ballot Act pass?
 - Its object? 41. Give the date of the passing of
 - the Scotch Education Act. 42. State its provisions.
 - 43. What other events mark the year 1872 ?
 - 44. State the leading events of 1873. 45. When and where was Prince Alfred, the Duke of Edinburgh, married?
 - 46. What caused Mr. Gladstone to dissolve Parliament?
 - 47. What was the result of the new elections?
 - 48. Who became Premier? 49. What important church measures
 - passed through Parliament in 1874? 50. What events are mentioned in connection with the year 1875?
 - 51. State the leading events of 1876. 52. Mention briefly the characteris-

COLONIAL AND FOREIGN EVENTS.

- Canada-Egypt-China-Afghanistan-India-The Russian War-The Indian Mutiny-Quarrels with China-The Civil War in America—Expedition to Abyssinia—The Franco-Prussian War-The War in Turkey.
- 1. What led to a rebellion in Canada at the time of the Queen's accession?
- 2. What event in Canada marks the year 1840?
 3. What is meant by the Dominion
- of Canada?
- 4. How are the Confederate Provinces governed?
- 5. Relate the circumstances connected with the dispute between the Sultan of Turkey and his Pacha in Egypt in 1840.
- How did the matter end?
- 7. What led to a declaration of war by England against China?
 - 3. How long did hostilities continue?

- 9. State the terms of the treaty which brought the war to a close.
- 10. Give an account of the war between this country and Afghanistan in 1842.
- 11. What event in India marks the year 1843?
- 12. What led to the annexation of the Punjaub to the British dominions?
- Date.
 13. What province was afterwards
- 14. What was the nature of the demand made by the Emperor of Russia in 1853 on the Sultan of Turkey ?

- 15. To what did a non-compliance with this demand lead? Date.
- 16. Where was the war chiefly carried on 1
- 17. Give the date and the results of the engagements which took place.

 18. Relate the circumstances con-
- nected with the siege of Sebastopol.

 19. How long did the siege last? 20. Where and when was a treaty of
- peace signed? 21. State the nature of its terms
- 22. Give the date and place of the outbreak of the Indian Mutiny.
- 23. By whom was it caused?
- 24. What is said to have been the cause of their disaffection?
- 25. Relate what took place at Cawn-
- pore, Delhi, and Lucknow.
 26. When was the mutiny put down? 27. What British soldiers rendered distinguished service in quelling the
- rebellion? 28. What led to fresh quarrels with
- China in 1856? 29. Relate the events which took
- place. 30. How were hostilities brought to a
- close? 31. State the terms of the treaty.
- Date. 32. What attack was made upon the
- British and French ambassadors in 1859.
 - 83. How was this outrage avenged? 54. What was the nature of the con-
- cessions made to Britain? 35. Give the date of the commencement of the Civil War in America.
 - 36. What led to this war?
 37. How many states secoded from
- the Union?
- 58. Which was the first to set the example?
- 39. What name did the seceding States take?
- 40. Whom did they choose as their President?
 - 41. How long did the war continue?
 42 How did it end?

- 43. What calamity befel the American nation previous to the cessation of hostilities
- 44. Relate the circumstances
- 45. Give a short account, with date, of the Expedition to Abyssinia.
- 46. When did the Franco-Russian war commence?
- 47. State the circumstances which led to this war.
- 48. Where did the first important engagement take place? Date and result.
- 49. What other engagements followed? Give the result and date of each.
- 50. What important event took place at Sedan? State what followed.
- 51. What was now the Government of France?
- 52. When did the Prussians invest Paris?
- 53. Give the date of its surrender.
- 54. How long did the siege last?
- 55. Where and when were preliminaries of peace concluded?
- 56. What were the conditions of this treaty?
- 57. What now became of the French
- Emperor ? 58. When did he arrive in England? 59. Give the date and place of his death.
- 60. State what you know, with date, of the Communist insurrection which
- broke out in Paris. Relate the circumstances which led to the war in Turkey.
- 62. What states were the first to revolt against the Turkish Government?
- 63. How did this rebellion end? 64. What was afterwards agreed to on the part of Turkey?
- 65. State the object of the Conference held at Constantinople.
- 66. How did it end? 67. What country now declared war
- against Turkey? Date.
- 68. State what you know of the pro gress of the war.

CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY

OF THE

PRINCIPAL EVENTS FROM THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE IV. TO THE PRESENT TIME.

A.D. 1820-A.D. 1877.

Nineteenth Century.

A.D. GEORGE IV., A.D. 1820—1830.

1820. The Cato Street Conspiracy. The object of which was to murder the King's ministers, set fire to London, and overthrow the Government. Thistlewood, the leader, and four other conspirators were taken and executed. Queen Caroline tried and acquitted.

1821. Death of Queen Caroline. King visits Ireland.

1822. King visits Scotland.

1827. Death of the Duke of York.

Mr. George Canning becomes Premier, but dies shortly afterwards. Lord Goderich succeeds, but his administration lasts only five months.

1828. The Wellington Ministry formed.

1829. Catholic Emancipation Bill passed. King's College, London, founded.

1830. Death of the King at Windsor,

WILLIAM IV., A.D. 1830-1837.

1830. Revolution in France. Louis Philippe becomes King.

Duke of Wellington resigns office. Earl Grey becomes

Premier.

1831. Reform Bill introduced by Lord John Russell. It passed the Commons, but was rejected by the Lords.

1832. The Reform Bill again introduced, and carried through both Houses of Parliament.

1833. First Reformed Parliament assembled. Bill passed for Abolishing Negro Slavery in all the British Colonial possessions.

1834. New Poor-Law Act passed. Both Houses of Parliament destroyed by fire. Municipal Reform Act passed. Act passed rendering the Registration of Births, Deaths, and Marriages compulsory. A similar measure was introduced into Scotland in 1855.

1837. Death of the King.

VICTORIA, A.D. 1837.

- 1838. Rebellion in Canada. Chartist agitation. The Anti-Corn Law League established at Manchester. First Ocean steamers sailed for New York.
- 1839. Privy Council grants in aid of Elementary Education commenced.
- 1840. Penny Postage established by Rowland Hill. Marriage of the Queen with Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg Gotha. War with China, arising out of certain disputes about the opium trade.
- 1841. Sir Robert Peel appointed Premier. Birth of Albert Edward, Prince of Wales.
- 1842. Khyber Pass massacre.
- 1843. Rebecca riots in Wales. War with the Ameers of Scinde. Daniel O'Connell's agitation in Ireland for the Repeal of the Union. Secession of the "Free Church" party from the Church of Scotland.
- 1844. Trial and conviction of O'Connell. Sentence set aside by the House of Lords.
- 1845. War with the Sikhs. Railway speculation mania. Failure of potato crop in Ireland.
- 1846. Repeal of the Corn Laws. Lord John Russell becomes Premier.
- 1848. Revolution in France. Louis Napoleon elected President of the French Republic.
- 1849. Punjaub annexed to our Indian Empire.
- 1850. Death of Sir Robert Peel.
- 1851. The Great Exhibition of Industry held in Hyde Park. London. It lasted five months, and was visited by 6,000,000 people.
- 1852. Death of the Duke of Wellington. Burmese War. Province of Pegu annexed to the British dominions.
- 1853. Turkey declares war against Russia.
- 1854. England and France assist Turkey. The Crimean War. 1855. Lord Palmerston becomes Premier. Death of the Czar Nicholas.
- 1856. Second Chinese War.
- 1857. The Indian Mutiny. Outbreak at Meerut. Terrible massacres of the English take place at Delhi, Lucknow, and Cawnpore. Mutiny suppressed (17th Nov.).
- 1858. Lord Derby becomes Premier. Abolition of the East India Company. The Government of India transferred to the English crown.
- 1859. Volunteer movement commenced. The Third Chinese War.
- 1861. American Civil War commenced. The Cotton Famine. Death of the Prince Consort.

1863. Marriage of the Prince of Wales to the Princess Alexandra of Denmark.

1866. Laying of the Atlantic Cable successfully accomplished.

Spread of Fenianism in Ireland, England, and America.

1867. Mr. Disraeli's Reform Bill passed. War with Abyssinia for the release of a number of English captives.

1868. Earl Derby, on account of failing health, retires from office, and Mr. Disraeli becomes Premier. Parliament dissolved. General Election takes place in December. Mr. Disraeli, being in a minority, resigns, and is succeeded by Mr. Gladstone.

1869. Mr. Gladstone's Bill for the Disestablishment and Dis-

endowment of the Irish Church passed.

1870. Irish Land Act passed. Elementary Education Act for England and Wales passed. Franco-Prussian War commenced.

1871. The University Test Act passed. Commencement of the Tichborne trial, Dangerous illness of the Prince of Wales.

1872, The Ballot Act passed. Thanksgiving Service at St. Paul's Cathedral for the Prince of Wales' recovery.

1873. Death of Louis Napoleon Bonaparte at Chiselhurst. War with the Ashantees. Death of Dr. Livingstone at Ulala, in Central Africa. The Shah of Persia visits England.

1874. Parliament dissolved. The Elections which followed having put the Government in a minority, Mr. Gladstone resigns, and Mr. Disraeli again becomes Premier. Public Worship Regulation Act passed. Act passed abolishing Lay Patronage in the Church of Scotland. Tichborne trial ended; the "Claimant" found guilty and sentenced to fourteen years penal servitude. Ashantee War brought to a close by the taking of Coomassie by Sir Garnet Wolselev.

Coomassie by Sir Garnet Wolseley.

1875. The Prince of Wales visits India. Purchase of shares in the Suez Canal by the English Government to the value

of £3,800,000.

1876. Lord Lytton appointed Viceroy of India, Royal Style and Titles Act passed, by which the title of Empress of India was conferred on the Queen. Mr. Disraeli raised to the peerage under the title of Earl Beaconsfield. Servia declares war against Turkey.

1877. Russia declares war against Turkey. Bill introduced to continue the Board of Education for Scotland for one year. Mr. Butt's University Education Bill thrown out by a large majority. Considerable obstruction made to public business in Parliament by several Irish

members. South African Bill passed.

BATTLES AND SIEGES FROM THE COMMENCE-MENT OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE IV. TO THE PRESENT TIME.

B. Battle, N. B. Naval Battle, S. Siege,

- N. B. Navarino, A.D. 1827. Between the Turkish and Egyptian fleets, and the combined English, French, and Russian squadrons. The Turks defeated.
- S. Beyrout, A.D. 1840. Bombarded for six days by Sir Robert Stopford, after which it was evacuated by the Egyptians.
- S. Acre, A.D. 1840. Taken by Admiral Sir Charles Napier after one day's bombardment.
- 8. Canton, A.D. 1841. Taken by the English under Sir Hugh Gough.
- B. Cabool, A.D. 1841. Between the English and the Afghans. The English defeated. In the following year General Pollock and Sir Robert Sale restored the prestige of the British army, and then withdrew from Afghanistan. In 1843, the Ameers, or rulers of the Scinde, were defeated first at Meanee, and afterwards at Hyderabad, by Sir Charles Napier. The war ended in the annexation of Scinde to our Indian empire. In 1845 and 1846, the Sikhs, or inhabitants of the Punjaub, engaged in several unsuccessful battles with the English. Lahore, their capital taken, and ultimately the province was annexed to the British dominions.
- B. The Alma, A.D. 1854. Between the Russians and the English,
- French, and Turks. The Russians defeated.

 B. Balaclava, A.D. 1854. Between the English and the Russians The latter defeated.
- B. Inkermann, A.D. 1854. Between the English, French, and Russians. The Russians again defeated.
- S. Sebastopol, A.D. 1854-55. Taken from the Russians by the English and French after a siege of 349 days.
- Delhi, A.D. 1857. Captured by the English.
 Cawnpore, A.D. 1867. Taken by the Sep Taken by the Sepoys under Nana Sahib.
- S. Lucknow, A.D. 1857. Besieged by the Sepoys. Siege raised by Sir Colin Campbell. General Havelock encountered the Sepoys in several battles, in all of which they were defeated.
- B. Cawnpore, A.D. 1857. The English, under Sir Colin Campbell, defeat the Sepoys.
- Captured by the English under Sir 8. Lucknow, A.D. 1858. Colin Campbell.
- S. Magdala, A.D. 1868. Stormed by the British under Lord Napier.
- B. Weissenburg, A.D. 1870 (Aug. 4). Between the French and Prussians. French defeated.

B. Woerth, A.D. 1870 (Aug. 6). The French again defeated by the Prussians. On the same day another disaster befell the French at Forbach.

S. Sedan, A.D. 1870 (Sept. 1). Commencement of a series of fierce engagements round Sedan. On the 2nd September the town surrendered, the French Emperor giving himself up to the King of Prussia.

S. Paris, A.D. 1870. Surrendered to the Prussians after a siege

of 131 days.

B. Izvor, A.D. 1876 (July 18). Battle between the Servians and

Turks. The Servians defeated.

B. Alexinatz, A.D. 1876 (Sept. 2). Battle between the main Servian and Turkish armies, which ended in the defeat of the former.

Russia having declared war against Turkey (24th April 1877), the passage of the Danube has been forced by Russian soldiers, and, more recently, the Balkan Mountains have been crossed by the invaders (July). Various engagements have taken place between the hostile armies, and although the advantages gained at the commencement of the campaign were on the side of Russia, the Turks have since inflicted severe losses on the enemy, particularly at Plevna, where they gained a great and memorable victory.

TREATIES.

1842. Washington, Treaty of, between England and America, which settled the boundaries between Canada and the United States.

1842. Nankin. Treaty of, between England and China, by which, in addition to the payment of about four millions and a quarter, the Chinese ceded Hong-Kong, and opened up the ports of Canton, Ningpo, Amoy, Foo-choo-foo, and Shanghai to British merchants.

1856. Paris, Treaty of, by which the Black Sea and Danube were opened up for merchant vessels of every nation; Russia agreed to dismantle the fortifications of Sebastopol, and pledged herself not to keep ships of war in the Black

Sea.

1858. Tien-Tain, Treaty of, between England and China, by which the interior and several Chinese ports were opened up to the English, and a British ambassador permitted to reside at Pekin.

1860. Pekin, Treaty of, between England and China, which ratified the Treaty of Tien-Tsin, and exacted from China a

large sum to meet the expenses of the war.

1871, Versailles, Treaty of, between Germany and France, by which it was agreed that France should give up Alsaca and German Lorraine, and pay a sum of £200,000,000.

AUTHORS.

- Arnold, Thomas, Head Master of Rugby School, born at Cowes, Isle of Wight, A.D. 1795. Author of a History of Rome. Died A.D. 1842.
- Campbell, Thomas, an eminent poet, born in Glasgow, A.D. 1777. He published at the age of twenty-two his *Pleasures of Hope*, which all at once obtained great popularity, and which still retains its rank as one of the finest poems of sentiment in the language. The key-note of his fame, however, rests with his splendid lyrics, *The Battle of Hohenlinden*, *The Battle of the Baltic*, and *Ye Mariners of England*. In A.D. 1842 he received a pension of £200. Died at Boulogne, A.D. 1844, and was buried in Westminster Abbey.
- Carlyle, Thomas, born near Dumfries, A.D. 1792. In historical and general literature he is the most singular and original writer of the nineteenth century. Author of the French Revolution, Oliver Cromvell's Letters and Speeches, Life of Schiller, Sartor Resartus, etc. Carlyle still survives, and resides at Chelsea.
- Coleridge, Samuel Taylor, poet, philosopher, and theologian, was born in Devonshire, A.D. 1772. He began his literary career by the publication of his poems in 1794, the best known of which are Remorse, The Ancient Mariner, and Christabel. Of his prose works the most popular are Lay Sermons, Aids to Reflection, Confessions of an Inquiring Spirit, etc. The influence exercised by Coleridge as a philosopher and theologian has been, and is still, very great. He died at Highgate, A.D. 1834.
- Cunningham, Allan, an eminent poet, novelist, and miscellaneous writer, was born at Blackwood, in Dumfriesshire, A.D. 1785. Chief of his numerous works are Paul Jones, and Sir Michael Scott, novels; the Lives of Burns and Sir David Wilkie, besides many poems, ballads, and lyrics; but perhaps his most important work is The Lives of British Painters, Sculptors, and Architects. Died A.D. 1842.
- Davy, Sir Humphry, born at Penzance, in Cornwall, A.D. 1778. He is justly regarded as one of the most eminent of modern chemists. While still young he published his Chemical and Philosophical Researches. He is also distinguished as the inventor of the Miner's Safety Lamp, and for several important discoveries in Chemistry and Electricity. He died at Genoa, A.D. 1829.

. --

- Dickens, Charles, a distinguished novelist, born A.D. 1812. His chief works are the *Pickwick Papers*, Old Curiosity Shop, and David Copperfield. Died A.D. 1870.
- Hall, Robert, a celebrated Baptist Preacher, and theological writer, was born in Leicestershire, A.D. 1764. Principal works, Christianity not inconsistent with the Love of Freedom, Vindication of the Freedom of the Press, Sermon on Modern Infidelity. It was this last which established his fame as a divine, Died A.D. 1831.
- Hallam, Henry, the most illustrious of English historians, was born at Windsor, A.D. 1777. He was one of the first contributors to the Edinburgh Review. His first great published work was, View of the State of Europe during the Middle Ages; then followed his Constitutional History of England. His next great work was his Introduction to the Literature of Europe in the 15th, 16th, and 17th Centuries. Died A.D. 1859.
- Hamilton, Sir William, a distinguished metaphysician, born at Glasgow, A.D. 1788. In 1836 he was appointed Professor of logic and metaphysics in the University of Edinburgh. In 1852 he published his Discussions in Philosophy. His Lectures on Metaphysics have been published since his death. He died 1856.
- Hemans, Felicia Dorothea, an accomplished poetess, born at Liverpool, A.D. 1793. Chief works, Vespers of Palermo, The Forest Sanctuary, and Songs of the Affections. Better known by her shorter compositions, The Treasures of the Deep, Graves of a Household, Voice of Spring, etc. Died A.D. 1835.
- Lytton Lord (Sir Edward Bulwer), a famous writer of novels, dramas, history, poems, and political pamphlets, born in Norfolk, A.D. 1805. His first publication was a poem on Sculpture, 1825. His first novel, Falkland, appeared in 1827. Afterwards followed The Pilgrims of the Rhine, The Last Days of Pompeii, Rienzi, The Last of the Barons, The Caxtons, and My Novel. Among the most popular of modern plays are The Lady of Lyons, and Richelieu. It is, however, on his novels that Lytton's fame must chiefly rest. He died A.D. 1872.
- Macaulay, Lord (Thomas Babington), the most brilliant and interesting historian of the present time, was born in Leicestershire, A.D. 1800. He also shines as an historical essayist. Chief works, History of England during the Reign of James II. and part of William III., The Lays of Ancient Rome, and a number of Essays contributed to the Edinburgh Reviews. Died A.D. 1859.

- Miller, Hugh, a distinguished geologist, born in Cromarty, A.D. 1802. Chief works, First Impressions of England and its People, Footprints of the Creator, My Schools and Schoolmasters, Testimony of the Rocks. Died A.D. 1856.
- Moore, Thomas, an Irish lyric poet, born in Dublin, A.D. 1779. Author of Irish Melodies, Lallah Rookh, an Eastern tale, History of Ireland. Died A.D. 1852.
- Bogers, Samuel, a banker and poet, born near London, A.D. 1762. Chief works, An Ode to Superstition, The Pleasures of Hope, with which his name is most frequently associated. The Voyage of Columbus, Human Life, and Italy, a descriptive poem in blank verse. Died A.D. 1855.
- Scott, Sir Walter, the great poet and novelist, born in Edinburgh, A.D. 1771. His principal poems are The Lay of the Last Minstrel, Marmion, The Lady of the Lake, and Rokeby. He is also the author of the Waverley Novels, the chief of which are Ivanhoe, Rob Roy, The Monastery, The Heart of Mid-Lothian. Died A.D. 1831.
- Shelley, Percy Bysshe, an illustrious English poet, born in Sussex, A.D. 1792. His principal poems are Queen Mab, The Revolt of Islam, Prometheus Unbound, The Triumph of Life. His remarkable lyrics, The Cloud, and To a Skylark, are well known. Drowned A.D. 1822.
- Southey, Robert, a distinguished poet and historical novelist, born at Bristol, A.D. 1774. Having in after life taken up his residence at Keswick, in Cumberland, he has on that account been designated one of the Lake Poets. His chief poetical works are Thalaba, Madoc, and Curse of Kehama; and his prose writings, Life of Nelson, and Histories of Brazil and Portugal. He was appointed Poet-Laureate, A.D. 1813, and in A.D. 1835 received a pension of £300. Died A.D. 1843.
- Stewart, Dugald, an eminent Scottish philosopher, born at Edinburgh, A.D. 1753. Chief works, *Philosophy of the Human Mind*, and *Philosophical Essays*. Died A.D. 1828.
- Tennyson, Alfred, our present Poet-Laureate, born at Somersby, A.D. 1810. His characteristic excellencies are a descriptive splendour, melodious rhythm, and vigorous, yet severe style. His best poems are Locksley Hall, In Memoriam, The Idylls of the King, and Enoch Arden. He enjoys a pension of £200.
- Thackeray, William Makepeace, a distinguished novelist, belonged to a Yorkshire family, and was born in Calcutta, A.D. 1811. He was early brought to England, and was educated first at the Charterhouse, and afterwards at Cam-

bridge University. He wrote Vanity Fair, Pendennis, History of Henry Esmond, The Virginians, etc. He started the Cornhill Magazine. Died A.D. 1863.

Wordsworth, William, chief of the Lake Poets, was born in Cumberland, A.D. 1770. His chief work is The Excursion, a long poem in blank verse, perhaps the most philosophical poem in the language. Other productions, The White Doe of Rylstone, and The Prelude, published after his death. He was Southey's successor as Poet-Laureate. Died A.D. 1850.

THE BRITISH CONSTITUTION.

The Constitution of any country is the form of government established in that country. The British Constitution is a limited monarchy, consisting of the Sovereign, the House of Lords, and the House of Commons. These three powers or estates form what is called the Parliament or Legislature of the country.

The Sovereign.

The Sovereign is the supreme head of the state, and has no superior but God and the laws. The duties of the Sovereign are to govern the people according to law, to execute judgment in mercy, to maintain the laws of God and the Protestant religion, with all the rights and privileges of the Established Church. He is entrusted with the sole executive power, that is, the power of enforcing the laws; he is the fountain of justice, for he appoints judges, and can grant pardon or mitigate punishment; he is also the fountain of honour, for he can confer titles of dignity; he appoints the officers of the army and navy, makes war or peace, treats with foreign nations, regulates the currency, and can at any time dissolve or prorogue Parliament. In the discharge of his regal functions, it is a fixed maxim that the "Sovereign can do no wrong," which means, that he can act only through his ministers, who are responsible for every act they perform. and are therefore liable to impeachment. The ministers of the Sovereign, or, as they are called, Ministers of State, form the Cabinet Council, of which the following are the principal members:—the Premier, or Prime Minister; the Lord High Chancellor, or the legal adviser of the Crown; the Chancellor of the Exchequer, who manages the revenue and expenditure of the country; the Secretary of State for Home Affairs; the Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs; the Secretary of State for the Colonies; the Secretary of State for the War Department; the President of the Privy Council; the Secretary of State for India; the President of the Board of Trade; the President of State for India; the President of the Board of Trade; the President of the Local Government Board; the First Lord of the Admiralty; the Lord Privy Seal; the Chief Secretary for Ireland; and the Postmaster-General.

The House of Lords.

The House of Lords is composed of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal; the former consisting of Archbishops and Bishops, and the latter of Dukes, Marquises, Earls, Viscounts, and Barons of Great Britain. The number of Members in the House of Lords varies at different times; at present there are 5 Princes of the blood-royal, 2 Archbishops, 21 Dukes, 19 Marquises, 114 Earls, 24 Viscounts, 24 Bishops, 249 Barons, 14 Scottish representative peers, and 28 Irish representative peers—in all, 500 Members. The number of temporal peers may, from time to time, be increased at the will of the Sovereign. Besides its legislative functions, the House of Lords is the highest court of justice in the realm; appeals in all civil cases may be made to it from any of the inferior courts, and its decision is final. The Lord Chancellor is the President of the House of Lords, and is appointed by the Sovereign.

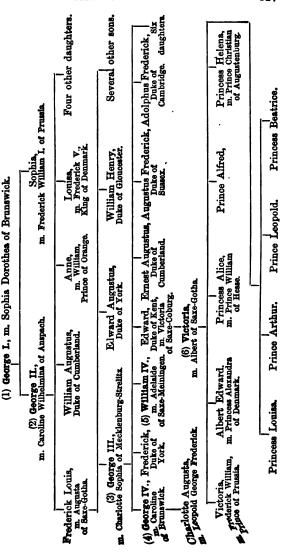
The House of Commons.

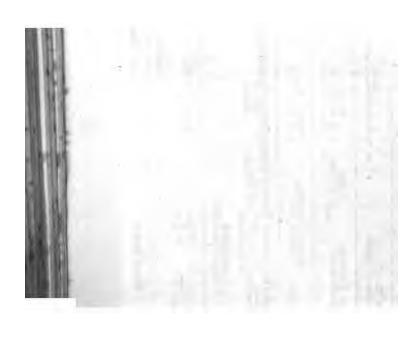
The House of Commons occupies the third rank in the legislature of the country. Its members are chosen by the constituents of counties, cities, boroughs, and universities, as their representatives. The Reform Bill of 1867 has greatly increased the number of persons entitled to vote in the election of members of Parliament; and large and populous towns have also received additional representatives.

The House of Commons exercises a powerful influence in the affairs of the nation. Besides its share in the work of legislation, it has the power of granting or withholding all supplies of money; and bills for taxing the people must be introduced first in that House; the Lords can only accept or reject such measures as a whole; they have no power to alter them. All other bills, with the exception of money bills, may be introduced by any member of either House of Parliament. But before any measure can become law, and therefore binding on the subject, it must command a majority of the members of both Houses, and receive the Royal assent.

Parliament may be adjourned, prorogued, or dissolved. By an adjournment is meant the continuance of the session from day to day; a prorogation, the continuance of Parliament from one session to another, which is done only by the Sovereign, either in person, by proclamation, or by Commissioners; and a dissolution, the end of the Parliament, which is executed by the will of the Sovereign, but it is also effected by the expiry of the term during which each Parliament can continue, namely, seven years.

BRUNSWICK. E O HOUSE Fio TABLE GENEALOGICAL





INDEX.

Abbeville, 122.
Abereromby, Sir Ralph, 861.
Aboukir, bay of, 859.
Abyssinia, expedition to, 410.
Acre, battle of, 859.
Acre, siege of, 100, 140.
Addison, Joseph, 315, 326.
Adelicia of Brabant, 77.
Admiral Lord High, 120 Admiral, Lord High, 129. Adrian, 15, 16. Æsop's Fables, 50. Æthelings, 47. Ætius, 25. Afghanistan, 407. Agatha, 37. Agaran, 37. Agincourt, battle of, 147, 171. Agricola, Julius, 15, 18, 20. Agrim, battle of, 295, 324. Air-la-Chapelle, treaty of, 281, 325, 340. Albert, Prince, death of, 398. Albuera, battle of, 364, 378. Alcuin, 61. Aldhelm, 61 Aldred, 64, 91. Alexander II., reign of, 224, 225. Alexander III., reign of, 228. Alexander III., reign of, 228, 229. Alexandra Palace, 403. Alexandria, battle of, 361. Alford, battle of, 268, 323. Alfred the Great, 30-32, 50. Algiers, siege of, 368. Allectus, 17. Alma, battle of, 407. Alnwick, 95. Alnwick Castle, siege of, 90, 133, 140. Ameers of Scinde, 407. America, discovery of, 180. Amiens, Peace of, 362, 370. Amusements, 87, 134, 168, 212. Angles, 26, 27. Angle-land, 28. Anglesea, 12. Anglo-Saxon Kings, 29-36. Angus, 225, 248. Anlaf, 33. Anne of Bohemia, 126. Anselm, 77, 88, 91. Antoninus, 15. Arbuthnot, John, 880.

Arch-Druid, 11. Architecture, Gothic, 182. Ardoch, 15. Argyle, Earl of, 289. Armada, Spanish, 204, 205, 213, 315. Armed Neutrality, 361, 379. Armed Neutrainty, 901, 912.
Armorica, 26.
Arnold, Thomas, 422.
Arthur, King, 27.
Arthur, son of Geoffrey, 93, 103.
Arthur, son of Henry VII., 175, 179.
Articles, Thirty-nine, 195.
Arundel Castle, 82.
Ash-Weinheadav. 65. Ash-Wednesday, 65. Ashley, Earl of Shafteebury, 283, 284. Assembly, General, 265. Asser, 61. Assizes, The Bloody, 290. Atheling, Edgar, 225, Athelney, 31. Athelstane, 33, 34. Atherton Moor, battle of, 267, 822. Athlone, siege of, 295, 324. Attila, 25. Augusta Charlotte, 383. Auldearn, battle of, 268, 323. Author Flautius, 14.
Austerlitz, battle of, 368.
Authorian Succession, War of, 340.
Authors, 90, 141, 172, 326-380, 380-382, 422-425.

Babington, Anthony, 203, 253.
Bacon, Lord, 314, 326.
Bacon, Roger, 141, 177.
Badajos, siege of, 365, 378.
Baliou of Burleigh, 285.
Baliou of Burleigh, 285.
Baliou of Burleigh, 285.
Ballot Act, 402.
Balmerino, Lord, 343.
Bane, Donald, 224, 225.
Bank of England, 299.
Bank of Scotland, 299.
Bank of Scotland, 299.
Bannockburn, battle of, 117, 234.
Barbour, John, 141.
Barcelona, siege of, 303.
Barclay, 298.
Barebone's Parliament, 274.
Barfleur, 78.

Barnet, battle of, 158, 172. Barons, 104, 106. Barossa, battle of, 364, 378. Barrow, Isaac, 326. Bastile, 356. Bath, order of the, 144. Battles, 90, 140, 171, 172, 219, 322-324, 376-378, 420, 421.
Baxter, Richard, 526.
Bayeur, Tapestry, 70.
Beaton, Cardinal, 250. Beaulieu, 178. Beaumont, Francis, 221. Beaumont, Sir John, 221. Becket, 93-95. Bede, 50. Bedford, Duke of, 150. Benefice, 68. Berengaria, 99. Berkeley Castle, 118, Berlin Decree, 363, Bertha, 27. Berwick, Castle of, 243. Berwicz, Castel et 0, 23.
Bible, Translation of, 107, 188, 257.
Bill of Rights, 299.
Bishops, trial of the seven, 290
Blackfriars, Monastery of, 241
Blackheath, 127.
Blacklow Hill, 116. Black Mail, 312. Black Prince, 120, 122, 124. Blackstone, Sir William, 380. Blair, Hugh, 380. Blake, Admiral, 274. Blanket, Thomas, 124. Blenheim, battle of, 302, 324. Bloody Statute, 188, 193, 220. Bloreheath, battle of, 153, 171, Blucher, 366. Blunt, Sir John, 333. Boadicea, 14, 15, 22. Boleyn, Anne, 182, 186, 188. Bolingbroke, Henry, 128. Bonaparte, 357-359, 361, 362, 365, 366, 368. Bonaparte, Louis Napoleon, 403, 411. Bonn, siege of, 302, 324. Bonner, Bishop, 193, 200. Books, scarcity of, 135. Borders, state of the, 312. Bosnia, 412. Boston, 350. Boswell, James, 380. Bosworth, battle of, 164, 172.
Bothwell Bridge, battle of, 285, 323.
Bothwell, Earl of, 203, 252.
Boulogne, 177, 189, 220.
Bounty, Queen Anne's, 306.
Boyds, The, 243. Brackenbury, 163. Bradshaw, 272, 278. Braemar, 232.

Bramham Moor, 143, 171. Brandywine River, battle of, 351, 376. Breda, treaty of, 281, 325. Bredalbane, Earl of, 296. Brest, battle off, 357. Bretigny, peace of, 124. Bretwalda, 27. Bristol, 82. Bristol, siege of, 267. Britain Independent, 17. British Museum, 106.
Britishay, 26, 177.
Brooklyn, battle of, 351, 376.
Browne, Sir Thomas, 326.
Brown, Thomas, 380.
Bruce, reign of, 233-235.
Bruce, Robert, 114, 120, 229, 230.
Bruces, giese of, 303. Bruges, siege of, 303. Brunanburgh, 83. Buccaneering, 214. Buchanan, George, 221. Buckingham, Duke of, 162-164, 262. Buildings, 132. Bunker's Hill, battle of, 351. Bunyan, John, 327. Burgh-on-Sands, 114, 234. Burgos, 365. Burgoyne, General, 350. Burke, Edmund, 380. Burleigh, Lord, 202. Burnet, Gilbert, 327 Burnet, Thomas, 327. Burns, Robert, 380. Bury St. Edmunds, 104, 110. Busaco, battle of, 364, 378. Bute, Earl of, 349. Butler, Joseph, 380. Butler, Samuel, 327. Byng, Admiral, 343. Byron, Lord George, 380.

Cabal Ministry, 281.
Cable, Atlantic, 400.
Cabot, Sebastian, 180, 213.
Cade, Jack, 152.
Cadiz, battle off, 206, 262, 302.
Caedmon, 50.
Caen, 67.
Caer-Caradoc, 14, 20.
Cæsar, Julius, 9, 13, 14.
Calais, 183, 184, 200, 219.
Calais, siege of, 123, 151.
Calcutta, 344, 345.
Caledonians, 15, 16, 223.
Calendar, change on, 345
Calvin, 204.
Camden, battle of, 352, 377.
Camden, William, 327.
Cambuskenneth, 245.
Cameron of Lochiel, 341.
Camlan, 27.
Camp of Refuge, 86.

Campbell, Captain, 296. Campbell, Sir Colin, 409. Campbell, Thomas, 422. Camperdown, battle off, 357, 377. Canada, 343, 406. Canary Islands, 129 Canning, George, 884. Canterbury, 95. Cantyre, 289. Cantyre, 259.
Canute, 35-37.
Caractacus, 14, 22.
Carausius, 17.
Carberry Hill, 219.
Cardiff Castle, 78. Cardross, 235. Carisbrooke Castle, 269. Carlyle, Thomas, 422. Carnwath, Lord, 332. Caroline of Brunswick, 383. Caroline, Queen, 337, 339. Carrickfergus, 117. Carr, Robert (Earl of Somerset), 258. Carrin, Robert (Lari of Somerset Carthagena, siege of, 339, 376. Cassivellaunus, 14, 20. Castlereagh, Lord, 384. Catesby, Robert, 257. Cathedral, St. Paul's, 308. Cathedral, York, 132. Catherine of France, 146. Catherine of Spain, 179, 182, 186, 197. Catholics disqualified for sitting in Parliament, 283. Catholic Emancipation Act, 385. Cato Street Conspiracy, 383. Cavaliers, 266, 310. Cawnpore, 408. Caxton, William, 159, 172. Cecil, Sir Robert, 206. Cecil, Sir William (Burleigh), 202. Cecil, Earl of Salisbury, 257. Celts, 10. Coorles, 47. Cerdio, 27, 28. Chalgrove, battle of, 322. Chalmers, Dr. Thomas, 395. Chaluz, 100, 140.
Chancery, Court of, 70.
Chariot, Britisb, 10.
Charles II., reign of, 261-271.
Charles II., reign of, 278-285.
Charles V of Spain, 184, 186, 197.
Charles, Archduke of Austria, 301. Charleston, siege of, 852, 877. Charts, 180. Chartists, 394. Chaucer, Geoffrey, 141. Cheapside, 178. Chelsea Hospital. 285. Chester, 34. Chevy Chase, 239. Chillingworth, William, 827. China, 406, 407.

Chinon, Normandy, 96. Chippenham, 31. Christianity, 19, 27, 81. Christmas, 12. Chronological Table, 62. Cinque Ports, 70. Ciudad Rodrigo, siege of, 365, 378. Civil War, 266-268. Civil War (American), 899, 410. Clarence, Duke of, 157, 158. Clarence, Duke of, 101, 106. Clarendon, 281, Clarendon, Earl of, 328. Claudius, 14, 20. Clement VII. (Pope), 186. Cleves, Anne of, 182, 189, 197. Clinton, General, 350. Clive, Lord, 344, 345. Clocks, 114. Clonmel, siege of, 272, 323. Coal discovered, 110. Coalition Ministry, 355. Cobden, Richard, 396. Cobham, Lord, 146, 256. Cochrane, 244. Coins, Roman, 19. Coleridge, Samuel Taylor, 422. Colleges founded, 216. Collingburn, Sir William, 172. Collins, Arthur, 380. Collins, William, 380. Columbus, Christopher, 180, 213. Commonwealth, 272-277 Commission, Court of High, 263, 266. Communist Insurrection (Paris), 411. Compiègne, 151, 171. Compurgators, 49. Comyn, 283. Concilium Ordinarium, 180. Conservatives, 389. Constantine the Great, 17. Constantine, King of Scotland, 33. Constantine II., 223. Constantius, 17, 20. Constitution, British, 425, 426. Constitutions of Clarendon, 94. Consuls, Foreign, 165. Conventicle Act, 279. Conventions, 275, 278, 292, 294. Conway Castle, 128. Cope, Sir John, 841. Copenhagen, battle of, 861. Copenhagen, siege of, 365, 377. Cropredy Bridge, battle of, 267. Corfe Castle, 35. Cork, 177. Corn Laws, Repeal of, 395. Cornwall, 17, 26. Cornwall, Earl of, 183. Cornwallis, Lord, 852. Corporation Act, 279. Corsned, 49.

Count of Britain, 17. Count Guy, 41. Count of Saxon Shore, 16. Counties, 48. Courts of Justice, 48. Coverdale, Miles, 188, 221. Cowley, Abraham, 328. Cowper, William, 381. Cranmer, Thomas, 186, 189, 193, 200. Creasingham, Hugh, 230. Cressy, battle of, 122, 140. Crevant, battle of, 150, 171. Crichton, Sir William, 242. Crimea, 407. Cromwell, Oliver, 265-278. Cromwell, Richard, 275. Cromwell, Richard, 275. Cromwell, Thomas, 187, 197, 199. Crusades, 74, 99, 100, 110. Cudworth, Ralph, 328. Culloden, battle of, 342, 376. Cumberland, 26. Cumberland, Duke of, 340. Cumbria, 11, 223. Cunningham, Allan, 422. Curfew Bell, 69.

Danegelt, 35, 38. Danelagh, 31.
Danes, 29, 30, 35, 42.
Darnley, Lord, 203, 251, 255. David I., reign of, 82, 224, 225, David II., reign of, 235, 237. Davis, Jefferson, 410. Davy, Sir Humphry, 422. Deal, 13. Defender of the Faith, title of, 185. Defoe, Daniel, 381, Delhi, 408. Derby, Lord, 398, 332. Dermot, 95. Derwentwater, Earl of, 332. Dettingen, battle of, 376, 340. Dickens, Charles, 423. Dieu et mon Droit, 102. Dighton, 163. Diocletian, 17, 19. Disraeli, 398, 401, 404. Domesday Book, 69. Don Pedro, 124. Douglas, Gavin, 221. Douglas, House of, 242, 243. Douglas, Sir James, 233. Dover, 13, 64. Drake, Admiral (Sir Francis), 204, 213, Dress of Periods, 50, 86, 133, 167, 211. 310. Drogheda, siege of, 272, 295, 323. Druidism, 10, 11. Drumclog, battle of, 285, 82%. Drummond, William, 328.

Dryden, John, 828. Dublin University, 118. Dudley, 179, 182. Dudley, Duke of Northumberland, 194, 195, 197. Dudley, Earl of Warwick, 194. Dudley, Lord Guildford, 195, 199. Duel, 134. Duke of Britain, 17. Dumfries, 233, Dunbar, battle of, 273, 275, 323. Dunbar, William, 221. Duncan, Admiral, 357. Duncan, reign of, 224. Dundalk, 117. Dundee, battle of, 268, 323. Dundee, Viscount, 295. Dunfermline, 261. Dunkirk, 280, 305. Dunsinnan, 224, Dunstan, 34, 61. Durham, 90. Dutch War, First, 280. Dutch War, Second, 282, Ealdormen, 47.

East Anglia, 26. East India Company, 214. Edgar, 33, 34. Edgar Atheling, 41, 64. Edgar, reign of, 224, 225. Edgehill, battle of, 267, 322. Edinburgh Castle, 117, 240, 294. Editha, 39. Edmund, Earl of March, 142. Edmund I., 33. Edmund II., 36. Edred, 33. Edward the Confessor, 35, 39, 42. Edward the Elder, 83. Edward the Martyr, 35. Edward the Outlaw, 41. Edward, James Francis, 288, 291. Edward, Prince Charles, 840-342. Edward I., reign of, 113-115. Edward II., reign of, 116-119. Edward III., reign of, 120-125. Edward IV., reign of, 156-160. Edward V., reign of, 161-162. Edwy, 33. Egbert, 28, 29. Egypt, 406. Elba, 365. Eleanor of Castile, 113. Eleanor of Poitou, 92. Eleanor of Provence, 108. Elementary Education Act, 402. Elfrida, 35. Elizabeth of York, 164. Elizabeth, Princess, 182, 188, 189, 1 195, 197. Elizabeth, reign of, 202-208.

Elizabeth, daughter of James I., 255. Elliot, General, 858. Emma, 87. Empson, 179, 182. England under the Danes, 86-39. England a Republic, 272. Eric, 34. Essex, 26. Essex, Earl of, 206, 266, 284. Estaples, peace of, 177, 220. Ethandune, 31. Ethelbald, 80. Ethelbert, 27, 28, 30. Ethelred, 30. Ethelred the Unready, 35. Ethelwald, 88. Ethelwulf, 29. Eton College, 154. Euclid, 207. Eugene, Prince of Savoy, 302, 803. Eva., 96. Evelyn, John, 328. Evesham, battle of, 110, 140. Exchequer, Court of, 70. Exchequer, shutting up of, 282. Excise Bill, 338. Exclusion Bill, 283 Exeter Cathedral, 132. Exeter, siege of, 65, 90, 178, 219. Exhibition, The Great, 397.

Fair Rosamond, 97. Fala, camp at, 249. Falkirk, battle of, 232, 842, 876. Family Compact, treaty of, 349. Farringdon, 82. Farthingale, 211. Faust, 154. Faversham, 289. Fealty, 68. Felton, 262. Fenianism, 400. Feud or Fief, 68. Feudal System, 68 Field of Cloth of Gold, 184. Fife, Earl of, 236. Fire of London, 279, 280, 809. Fisher, Bishop of Rochester, 187. Fishmongers' Company, 129. Fitz-Osborne, 65. Fitz-Walter, Robert, 105. Five Mile Act, 279. Flavia Cæsariensis, 16, 20. Fletcher, John, 221. Flodden, battle of, 183, 219, 247. Flying Coach, 812. Fontainebleau, 865. Fontenoy, battle of, 840, 876. Food, 50, 85, 86, 133, 167 Forest, the assassin, 163. Fortescue, Sir John, 172, Fort-William, 296.

Forts, Roman, 15-17. Fotheringay Castle, 163, 203, Fox, Charles, 355. Fox, George, 276. Francis I., 184. Francis the Dauphin, 193, 202. Francis II., 250. Franco-Prussian War, 411. Free Church of Scotland, 395, Freebooters, 313. Free Traders, 395. Frobisher, Admiral, 204. Fuentes D'Onoro, battle of, 364, 578. Gage, General, 850. 197, 200.

Galgacus, 15, 20. Gallio, 18. Gardiner, Bishop of Winchester, 193, Garter, Order of, 124. Gascoigne, Sir William, 144, Gauls, 9-13.
Gay, John, 381.
Geddes, Jenny, 264.
Genealogical Tables, 91, 131, 173, 208. Geoffrey of Monmouth, 88. Geoffrey Plantagenet, 77. George I., reign of, 831-335. George II., reign of, 837-345. George III., reign of, 848-370. George IV., reign of, 383-387. Gerberoi, 67. Germany, 17. Ghent, siege of, 303, 324. Gibraltar, capture of, 802, 324, 335. Gildas, 50 Gipsies, 215. Gladstone, 401. Glastonbury, 27, 136 Glencoe Massacre, 296. Glendower, Owen, 143. Glenfinnan, 341. Gloucester, Duke of, 150, 158, 299, 301. Gloucester, Robert of, 141, Goderich, Lord, 385. Godwin, Earl, 38-40. Goldsmith, Oliver, 381. Gordon, Catherine, 178. Gordon, Duke of, 295 Gordon Riots, 353. Goths, 20: Gourdon, 101. Government under Romans, 16. Government under Saxons, 47. Gower, John, 141. Gowrie Conspiracy, 254.

Graham's Dyke, 15. Graham of Claverhouse, 295. Grahame, Sir Robert, 241. Graham, Marquis of Montrose, 268. Grampians, 223. Greenland, 259.

Greenwich Hospital, 297.
Gregory, Pope, 27.
Gregory, Pope, 27.
Grenville, Lord, 250, 362.
Greyfriars' Church, 264.
Grey, Lady Jane, 195, 197, 199, 216
Grey, Earl, 389.
Grey, Thomas, 381.
Guardian Periodical, 315.
Gualdres, siege of, 301, 324.
Guiana, 256.
Guidahall, 149.
Guiness first coined, 285.
Guise, Duke of, 200, 248.
Guisnes, 184.
Gunhida, 35.
Gunpowder Plot, 257.
Gutbrurn, 31.
Guttenberg, 154.

Habeas Corpus Act, 283, 400. Haco, 84, 229. Hague, 291, 294. Halidon Hill, battle of, 120, 140, 286. Hall, Robert, 423. Hallam, Henry, 423. Hall-Motes, 49 Hamilton, Sir William, 423. Hammond, Colonel, 269. Hampden, John, 263, 266, 267, 284. Hampton Court, 257, 268, 299. Harald Hardrada, 44. Hardicanute, 38. Harfleur, siege of, 147, 171. Harlaw, battle of, 241. Harley, Robert (Earl of Oxford), 305, 332. Harold, 38. Harvey, William, 329. Hastings, battle of, 45, 46. Hastings, John, 229, 230, Hastings, Lord, 162. Hastings, Warren, 355. Hawisa, 103 Haxton of Rathillet, 285. Hedgeley Moor, battle of, 157, 172. Hemans, Felicia Dorothea, 423. Hengist and Horsa, 25, Hengston Hill, 29. Henry I., reign of, 77-80. Henry II., reign of, 92-98. Henry III., reign of, 108-112. Henry 111., reign of, 108-112. Henry IV., reign of, 142-145. Henry V., reign of, 146-149. Henry VII., reign of, 150-155. Henry VIII., reign of, 175-181. Henry Mill., reign of, 182-192. Henry, Matthew, 329. Heptarchy, 27. Hereward, 66, 91. Hertford, Earl of, 193. Herzegovina, 412. Hosse, Prince of Darmstadt, 802,

Hexham, battle of, 157, 172, Highlands, Scottish, 312. Hildebrand, 43. Hobbes, Thomas, 829. Holmby House, 268. Holyrood, 251, 309, 884. Homildon Hill, battle of, 171. Hooke, Robert, 329. Hooker, Richard, 221. Honorius, 20. Hospital, Christ's, 195. Hospital, St. Thomas's, 195. Hot-iron Ordeal, 49. Hot-water Ordeal, 49 Houses, 50, 85, 132, 166, 209, 808. Howard, Catherine, 182, 189. Howard, Lord, 204, 284. Howe, General, 350. Hubert, Archbishop of Canterbury, 103. Hubert de Burgh, 108. Hubertsburg, peace of, 849, 879. Huddlestone, 284. Hudson's Bay, 259. Hudson's Bay Company, 805. Hugh le Despenser, 117. Hugh O'Neil, 206. Huguenots, 262 Hume, David, 381. Hundred-mote, 48. Huntingdon, Henry of Huy, siege of, 302, 324. Hyde, Anne, 288,

Iceni, 14. Ich Dien, 123. Indemnity, Act of, 278. Independents, 268. India Bill, 898. India, Empress of, 404. Ingulphus, 88, 91. Inkermann, battle of, 407. Inoculation, 335. Insurance Offices, 285. Inverary, 296. Inverlochy, battle of, 268, 823, Ireland, Conquest of, 95. Ireland, Discontent in, 396, 897. Ireland, Famine in, 396. Ireland, Rebellion in, 358, Ireland, Union with, 359, Ireton, 269, 278. Irish Church, 401. Irish Land Act, 402. Isabella of Angouleme, 103. Isabella of France, 116, 118. Isabella, Queen of Richard II., 126. Isle of Ely, 70. Isle of Thanet, 13, 25, 29. Istria, 100.

Jacobite Rebellions, 332, 340-342 James L. of Scotland, reign of, 240-342.

James II. of Scotland, reign of, 242-248. James III. 248-245. ., James IV. 246-247. ,, James V. 248-249. James VI. 258-254. James I. of England, 255-260. 99 James II. 288-293. Jedburgh Abbey, 226. Jeffreys, Judge, 289, 290. Jena, battle of, 863, 877. Jennets, Spanish, 312. Jews, Massacre of, 99. Joan of Arc, 150, 151. Joanna of Navarre, 142. John Bull, 806. John of France, 128. John of Gaunt, 120, 126, John de Grey, 103. John, King, 103-107. Johnson, Samuel, 381. Joyee, Cornet, 268. Judith, 80. Julius Astricols. 15, 18, 2 Julius Agricola, 15, 18, 20. Justices of Peace, 70. Jutes, 26. Juxon, Bishop, 269.

Kelso Abbey, 226, 248.
Kemble, 48.
Ken, Thomas, 381.
Kenilworth, 110, 138.
Kennew, Bishop, 242.
Khyber Pass, 407.
Kildare, Earl of, 176.
Killicerankie Pass, battle of, 295, 824.
Kilmarneck, Lord, 343.
Kilsyth, battle of, 268, 323.
Kimbolton, 186.
Kinghorn, 229.
King of Ireland, Title of, 190.
King's Cross, 15.
King's Cross, 16.
Kirk-of-Field, 252.
Knight's Fees, 69.
Knights of the Round Table, 27.
Knight Templars, 79, 118.
Knox, John, 251.

Lambert, General, 278.
Lancaster, House of, 142-155.
Lanfranc, 72, 88, 91.
Langelande, Robert, 141.
Langside, battle of, 219, 252.
Langton, Stephen, 104.
Language of Norman Period, 88.
La Hogue, battle of, 197, 324.
La Rochelle, siege of, 262.
Largs, battle of, 239.
Latimer, 197, 199.
Lauda, Archbishop, 263-265.
Lauder, Council of, 244.

League, Anti-Corn-Law, 395. League, Solemn, 264, 267. Learning of Plantagenet Period, 135 Learning of Stuart Period, 315. Learning of Tudor Period, 215, 216. Leathersellers' Company, 129. Leicester, Earl of, 203. Leighton, 268. Lennox, Earl of, Lenx, Pope, 185. Leopold of Austria, 101. Leople General, 264, 265, 267, 272. Levellers, 269. Lewes, battle of, 109. Lexington, battle of, 350, 376. Liege, siege of, 302, 324. Lieutenants of Counties, 195. Lightfoot, John, 329. Ligny, battle of, 366, 378, Lille, siege of, 303, 324. Limburg, siege of, 302, 324. Limerick, siege of, 295, 324. Lincoln, Abraham, 410. Lincoln, battle of, 82, 90, 108. Lionel, 120. Lindsay, Earl of, 262, 266. Literature of Normans, 88. Literature of Plantagenets, 135. Literature of Saxons, 49. Literature of Stuarts, 315. Littleton, Edward, 72. Liturgy, Introduction of, 198, 202. Liverpool, Lord, 385. Livingstone, Dr., 403. Livingstone, Sir Alexander, 242. Llandweyr, 113. Llewellyn, 113. Lochleven Castle, 203, 252. Locke, John, 329. Lollards, 118, 144, 146, 193. Lollius Urbicus, 15. Lombards, 114. London Bridge, 75. Londonderry, siege of, 295, 323. London, University of, 386. Long Marston Moor, battle of, 267. Lord of Ireland, Title of, 190. Lorraine, Mary of, 248. Loudon Hill, battle of, 284. Louis XII., 182 Lovat, Lord, 343. Lovel, Lord, 176. Lowestoft, 280, 282. Lucknow, 409. Ludlow, battle of, 153, 161. Luther, Martin, 185. Lydgate, John, 141. Lytton, Lord, 423. MacAlpin, Kenneth, 228. Macaulay, Lord, 428.

Macbeth, 224. Macdonalds of Glencoe, 296. Macdonald, Flora, 342. MacMahon, 412. Madeira Islands, 129. Magdala, 410. Magna Charta, 104-106, 283, 368. Magnus, 229. Magus Moor, 285. Malcolm, 33, Malcolm Canmore, 66, 73, Malcolm III., reign of, 224. Malcolm IV., reign of, 227. Mallet (Malloch), David, 381. Malmesbury, William of, 88. Malplaquet, siege of, 303, 324. Mandeville, Sir John de, 141. Mantes, 67. Mar, Earl of, 244, 252. Margaret, daughter of Henry VIII, 175, 179, 255. Margaret, Maiden of Norway, 229. Margaret of Anjou, 150, 151, 157 Margaret of Burgundy, 177. Maria Henrietta of France, 259, 261. Marlborough, Duke of, 301-305, 335. Marlowe, Christopher, 221. Marriage Act, 391. Mary de Bohun, 142. Mary, Princess, 182, 186, 195, 282. Mary Queen of Scots, reign of, 250-253. Mary, reign of, 197-201. Masham, Abigail, 305. Mass, Latin, 193, 198, 202. Massachusetts, Colony of, 263. Massinger, Philip, 221. Matilda, 63, 77, 82, 83, 225. Maxima Cæsariensis, 16, 20. Maximilian, Emperor of Germany, 183. Maypole, 311. Mechanics' Institutes, 386. Meerut, 408. Melrose Abbey, 132, 226. Menteith, Sir John, 232. Mercers' Company, 129. Mercia, 26. Merry Monarch (Charles II.), 309. Merton, 30. Methven, battle of, 233. Milford Haven, 128, 164. Mill, John, 329. Miller, Hugh, 424. Milton, John, 272, 329. Milton, village of, 244. Minorca, 343. Mint, Royal, 276. Missal, 41. Mistletoe, 12 Modes of Trial (Saxon), 49. Moidart, 341. Monasteries, 187. Monk, Admiral, 274.

Monk, General, 273, 275. Monks, Gisterdan, 169.
Monmouth, Dake of, 284, 285, 239.
Montagle, Lord, 257.
Moore, Sir John, 364.
Moore, Thomas, 424
Moore, 111.
Moray, Earl of, 252.
Moray Firth, 16.
Mordy 497 Monks, Cistercian, 169. Mordred, 27. More, Sir Thomas, 186, 187, 221. Mortimer's Cross, battle of, 154, 171. Mortimer, Roger, 118. Morton, Earl of, 252. Moscow, 365. Mountjoy, Lord, 206. Mount St. Michael, 73. Mutiny, Indian, 408, Mutinies, Naval, 358. Vantes, Edict of, 314. Nantwich, battle of, 267. Naseby, battle of, 268. National Industry—Plantagenet Period 134; Lancaster and York Period, 169; Stuart Period, 314. Navarino, battle of, 383, 420. Navigation Act, 273. Navy, Royal, 213. Nelson, Lord, 361, 362. Nennius, 61. Nero, 14. Neville's Cross, battle of, 123, 236. Newark, 106, 268. Newburn-on-Tyne, 265, 322. Newbury, battle of, 267, 322. New Forest, 69, 73, 77. Newfoundland, 180, 305. Newspapers, 207. Newton, Sir Isaac, 381. Nightingale, Florence, 408. Nile, battle of, 359, 377. Nithisdale, Lord, 332. Nonconformists, 204. Norfolk, 17. Norfolk, Duke of, 190, 197. Norsemen, 64. Northampton, battle of, 153, 171. Northampton, treaty of, 121, 140, 235. North Foreland, 280. North, Lord, 350. Northumbria, 26. Nova Scotia, 305. Oates, Titus, 282. O'Connor, 95. Odo, 34, 65, 72. Offa, 28. Oldcastle, Sir John, 146. Orleans, siege of, 150, 171. Ormond, Duke of, 305. Ormond, Earl of, 272. O'Rnarc, 96.

Otway, Thomas, 330. Oudenarde, battle of, 303, 824. Oxford, Earl of, 179.

Paita, 839. Palmerston, Lord, 398, 401. Paper, Manufacture of, 207. Paris, Peace of, 349, 879. Parma, Duke of, 205. Parliament, Origin of, 110. Parliament, The Long, 265, 274. Parochial Schools of Scotland, 299. Parr, Catherine, 182, 189, 194. Paterson, Founder of the Bank of England, 299. Patronage, Lay, 404. Paxton, Sir Joseph, 397. Peel, Sir Robert, 396. Peel-towers, 313. Pembroke, Earl of, 108. Penn, Admiral, 274. Penn, William, 286. Percies' Rebellion, 143. Peterborough, Earl of, 802. Peter des Roches, 108. Peterhead, 333. Peter's Pence, 29. Peter the Hermit, 74 Petition of Right, 262. Philadelphia, 350. Philip I. of France, 67. Philip II. of Spain, 197-203. Philip III. of Spain, 305. Philip, Grandson of Louis XIV., 801, 805. Philiphaugh, battle of, 268, 828. Philip of Valois, 121. Philippa of Hainault, 120. Philippe, Louis, 388. Picts, 17, 23, 223. Picts Wall, 15. Piers de Gaveston, 116. Pilgrim Fathers, 268.
Pinkie, battle of, 193, 219, 250.
Pitt, William, 348, 849, 855-863.
Plague of London, 279, 280. Plantagenet, Geoffrey, 92.
Plantagenet, Geoffrey, 92.
Plassey, battle of, 245, 376.
Pointiers, battle of, 123, 140.
Pole, Cardinal, 199.
Pondicherry, siege of, 244, 376.
Pontefract Castle, 129, 161. Ponthieu, 41. Poor-Law Act, 890. Pope Alexander II., 4 Pope Alexander III., 49. Popish Plot, 282. Porteous Riot, 888. Portland, Duke of, 855. Porto Bello, 839. Postal System, 159, 276. Potato, Introduction of, 214. Poundage, 278.

Poyning's Law, 220. Pragmatic Sanction, 340. Presbyterians, 268. Preston, battle of, 269. Prestonpans, battle of, 841, 376. Pretender (Old), 832. Pride's Purge, 269.
Prince of Wales, Title of, 118.
Prince of Wales, Marriage of, 403. Principal Events during-Roman Period, 24. Saxon Period, 60. Norman Period, 89, 90. Plantagenet Period, 137, 140. York and Lancaster Period, 170-171. Tudor Period, 217-219. Stuart Period, 318-322 Brunswick Period, 417-419. Printing, 159. Protectionists, 395. Protectorate, 274. Protectants, 186, 202. Psalms, Book of, 195. Puritans, 204, 256, 257, 261, 263, 310. Quatre Bras, battle of, 866, 878, Quebec, siege of. 344. Questions on reign of William I. (the Conqueror), 71. William II., 76. Henry I., 80. Stephen, 84. Henry II., 98 Richard I., 102. John, 107. Henry III., 112. Edward I., 115. Edward II., 119. Edward III., 125. Richard II., 180. Henry IV., 145. Henry V., 149. Henry VI., 155. Edward IV., 160. Edward IV., 160. Edward IV., 160. Edward III., 166. Henry VIII., 181. Richard I., 102. Henry VII., 181. Henry VIII., 191, 192. Edward VI., 196. Mary, 201. Elizabeth, 208. James I., 260. Charles I., 271 Commonwealth, 277. Charles II., 287. James II., 293. William and Mary, 800. Anne, 307. George I., 386. George II., 846, 847. George III., 854, 860, 872. George IV., 887.

Questions on reign of— William IV., 392, Victoria, 414-416. Questions—

Roman Period, 21-23. Saxon Period, 54-59. Social Life Norman Period, 89. Plantagenet Period,

186, 187. Lancaster and York Period, 169.

Tudor Period, 217.
Stuart Period, 316-317.
Scottiah History, 226, 287, 288, 245, 247-249, 258, 254.

Raleigh, Sir Walter, 204, 206, 222, 256. Ramillies, buttle of, 303, 824. Randolph, 236. Rathlin, 233. Ravenna, 18. Ravenspur, 128, 158. Reading Abbey, 79. Rebecca and her daughters, 894. Reform Bill, 401. Reform, Parliamentary, 388. Reformation, 185, 186, 193, 202, 215. Regalia of Scotland, 230. Registers of Births, etc., 190. Registration Act, 891. Religion of Ancient Britons, 17. Religion, Protestant, Established in England, 193. Religion, Catholic, Re-established, 197-Repeal, Agitation, 395.

Repeal, Agitation, 395.
Resby, James, 240.
Restoration of Saxon Line, 39.
Restoration of Monarchy, 278, 320.
Revival of Letters, 215.
Revolution, English, 292.
Revolution, French, 356.
Rheims, 150, 151.
Richard I., reign of, 99-102.

Richard I., reign of, 99-102. Richard II., reign of, 126-130. Richard III., reign of, 163-165. Richardson, Samuel, 382.

Richelieu, Cardinal, 262. Richmond Palace, 189. Ridley, Bishop of London, 198, 197, 199.

Riot Act, 332. Ripon, treaty of, 265. Risings Castle, 120. Rivera, Earl, 162.

Rivers, Earl, 162. Rizzio, 251. Roads, 312. Robert of Gloucester, 82.

Robert of Normandy, 63, 67, 74, 77. Robert II., reign of, 239, 240.

Robin Hood, 101.
Rockingham, Marquis of, 350.

Rogers, 244.

Rogers, Samuel, 424.
Rollo, 63.
Romans leave Britain, 18.
Roman Provinces, 16.
Roman Wells, 16.
Romney, 64.
Rooke, 8ir George, 202.
Roses, Wars of the, 158-158
Rouen, 67, 79, 103, 151.
Roundheads, 266, 310.
Rounding Down, battle of, 267, 322.
Rowe, Nicholas, 383.
Roxburgh Castle, 117, 248.
Royal Progresses, 211.
Rullion Green, battle of, 285, 323.
Rump Parliament, 269.
Rupert, Prince, 266, 267.
Russell, Lord, 284, 289.
Ruthven, Raid of, 254.
Ruyter, De, 274.
Rye House Plot, 284, 289.

Ryswick, Peace of, 298, 325. Sacheverel, trial of, 804. Saladin, 100. Salamanca, siege of, 365, 378. Salic Law, 121, 393. Salisbury Cathedral, 132. Santa Cruz, 204. Saratoga, siege of, 351, 377. Sauchieburn, battle of, 244, Sautre, William, 144. Saxons, 25, 26. Saxon Kingdoms United, 28, Saxon Literature, 49. Scandinavia, 29. Scarborough Castle, 116. Schoeffer, 154. Scone, 114. Scote, 228. Scott, Sir Walter, 424. Scriptorium, 136. Scrope, Bishop, 143. Sebastopol, siege of, 408. Sebert, 27. Sedgemoor, battle of, 289, 328. Sepoys, 408. Septennial Act, 833, 838. Seringapatam, siege of, 359, 377. Servia, 412. Settlement, Act of, 299. Seven Years' War, 343. Severus, wall of, 15-17. Seville, treaty of, 337. Seymour, Jane, 182. Seymour, Lord, 194. Shakespeare, William, 222, Sharp, Archbishop, 285. Shaw, Dr., 162.

Shelley, Percy Bysshe, 424. Sherifimuir, battle of, 332, 276.

INDEX.

Sherwood Forest, 101. Ship Money, 263. Shire-mote, 48. Show, Lord Mayor's, 184. Shrewsbury, battle of, 148, 171. Sidonia Medina, Duke of, 204, Sieges— Norman Period, 90. Plantagenet Period, 140. Lancaster and York Period, 171, 172. Tudor Period, 219. Stuart Period, 322-324. Brunswick Period, 876-378, 420, 421. Sikhs, 407. Simnel, Lambert, 176. Simon de Montfort, 109. Sir Loin, 309. Siward, 224. Six Articles, Act of, 188 Slavery, Abolition of, 390. Sluys, battle of, 121. Smith, Sir Sydney, 359. Smollet, Tobias, 382. Snowdon, 113. Social Life-Norman Period, 85-88. Plantagenet Period, 132-136. Lancaster and York Period, 166-169. Tudor Period, 209-216. Stuart Period, 808-316. Solemn League and Covenant, 200, 219. Solway, 15. Solway Moss, battle of, 249. Somerset, Duke of, 193, 194. Somerset House, 194. Sophia of Hanover, 299, Soult, Marshal, 864. South, Robert, 830. South Sea Company, 334. Southey, Robert, 424. Southwell, Robert, 222, Spain, War with, 205, 261. Spanish Succession, War of, 801. Spectacles, 111. Spectator, 315. Spencer, Dr. John, 830. Spenser, Edmund, 222. Spires, Diet of, 186. Spurs, battle of, 183. Stair, Master of, 297. Stamford Bridge, battle of, 44. Stamp Act, 850. Standard, battle of, 82, 90, 225. Stanley, Mr., 408. Star Chamber, Court of, 180, 220, 268, 266. Steele, Sir Richard, 815. Stennes, 12. Stephen, reign of, 81-84. Sterne, Lawrence, 882. Stewart, Dugald, 424.

Stigand, 64. Stirling, battle of, 231.

Stockings, Silk, 207. Stoke, battle of, 176, 219. Stonehenge, 11, 12. Storm, The Great, 302. Stratton, battle of, 276, 322. Strongbow, 96. St. Albans, battle of, 153, 154, 171. St. Andrews, 225, 240. St. Augustine, 27 St. Christopher, 805. St. Clement's, 39. St. Columba, 223. St. Giles's Church, 264. St. Helena, 368. [305-332. St. John, Henry (Lord Bolingbroke), St. Ninian, 223. St. Quentin, battle of, 200, 219. St. Ruth, 295. St. Vincent, battle, 857, 377. Stuart, Captain James, 254. Stuart, Esme, 254. Stuart, Lady Arabella, 256. Suctonius Paulinus, 12, 15. Suez Canal, 404. Suffolk, Duke of, 176, 183, 199. Sully, 259. Surrey, Lord, 183, 190, 886. Sweyn of Denmark, 65. Swithun, 30. Sydney, Algernon, 284, 289. Sydney, Sir Philip, 222. Taku forts, 409. Talavera, battle of, 364, 878. Tallard, Marshal, 302. Tatler, 815.

Taku forts, 409.
Talavers, battle of, 364, 878.
Tallard, Marshal, 302.
Tatler, 815.
Taunton, 289.
Taylor, Jeremy, 330
Tas first imported, 207.
Tenchebrai, battle of, 78, 90.
Tennyson, Alfred, 424.
Terouenne, siege of, 183, 219.
Taxel, battle, 273, 327.
Thackeray, William Makepeace, 424.
Theress, Maris, 340.
Thiers, M., 412.
Thistlewood, Arthur, 383.
Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, 116
Thomson, James, 882.
Thon, 29.
Tichborne Trial, 402.
Tillotson, John, 330.
Tippermuir, battle of, 263, 323.
Tithings, 48.
Tone, 31.
Tooke, John Horne, 382.
Tonnage, 273.
Torbay, 292.
Torres Vedras, Lines of, 364.
Tory, 283.
Tostig, 40, 42, 44.

Toulouse, battle of, 865, 878. Tournament, 87, 134. Tournay, 117, 303, 324. Tower of London, 70. Towns, Manufacturing, 207. Towton, battle of, 156, 172. Trafalgar, battle of, 362, 377. Treaties

Norman Period, 90. Plantagenet Period, 140. Lancaster and York Period, 172. Tudor Period, 220. Stuart Period, 325. Brunswick Period, 379, 421. Trial by Ordeal, 49. Triennial Act, 297, 333. Triple Alliance, 281. Tromp, Van, 274. Tudor, Edward, 175.

Tudor, Henry, 164. Tudor, Owen, 146, 154. Turkey, War in, 412. Tyburn, 120, 178. Tyrconnel, 295. Tyrell, Sir James, 163. Tyrell, Sir Walter, 73.

Ulster, Province of, 259, 295. Uniformity, Act of, 279. Union of the Crowns, 256. Union of the Parliaments, 301. University of Glasgow, 154. University Test Act, 402, 403. Utrecht, treaty of, 305, 325.

Valentia, 16. Vandals, 20. Vandyke, 310. Vane, Sir Henry, 278. Vasco de Gama, 180. Vendome, Duke, 303. Verneuil, battle of, 150, 171. Versailles, treaty of, 352, 354. Veto Act, 395. Vicarius, 16. Victoria, reign of, 393-413. Vikings, 29. Villeins, 48. Vimeiro, battle of, 364. Vinegar Hill, battle of, 358. Virginia, Colony of, 214. Vittoria, battle of, 365. 370. Volunteer Movement, 398,

Wakefield, battle of, 153, 171. walcucin, patter of, 105, 171.
Wales, conquest of, 113, 190.
Walker of Londonderry, 295.
Wallace, Sir William, 114, 231, 232.
Waller, Edmund, 330.
Waller, General, 267.
Walls, Roman, 26. Wallingford, Richard, 114. Walpole, Sir Robert, 334, 387.

Walter the High Steward, 239. Walworth, 127. Wantage, 30.
War, The Civil, 153, 166, 266, 311, 315.
Warbeck, Perkin, 177, 178.
Wardlaw, Bishop of St. Andrews, 240. Ward-motes, 49. Warenne, John de, 230. Warwick Castle, 133. Warwick, Earl of, 153, 157, 158, 176. Washington, George, 351. Waterloo, battle of, 366-368. Wat Tyler, 126. Watts, Dr. 1saac, 382. Weaving, 124. Weissenburg, battle of, 411.
Wellesley, Sir Arthur (Duke of Wellington), 359, 363-368, 385, 389, 397. Wentworth, Thomas, 263, 265. Wessex, 26. Westminster Abbey, 77, 81. Westminster Hall, 75, 129. Westminster School, 70. Wexford, siege of, 272, 323. Whig and Tory, 283, 304, 305. Whitehall, 186. White Ship, 78. Whittington, Richard, 144. Wigmore Castle, 152. Wilhelmshöhe, 411. Wilkes, John, 349, 350. William of Scotland, reign of, 227, 228, William, Prince of Orange, 282, 291.
William I., reign of, 63-70.
William II., reign of, 72-76.
William III., reign of, 294-300. William IV., reign of, 388-391. Wills, General, 333. Winchester, 69, 74, 90. Windsor Castle, 70, 124 Winton, Lord, 332. Witchcraft, 314. Witenagemote, 48. Witt, De, 274. Wittenberg, University of, 185. Woden, 29. Woerth, battle of, 411. Wolfe, General, 344. Wolsey, Cardinal, 183-187. Wood, Sir Andrew, 246. Woodstock, 302. Woodville, Elizabeth, 156, 162. Worcester, battle of, 273, 275, 323. Wordsworth, William, 425 Wren, Sir Christopher, 309, 335. Wyatt, Sir Thomas, 198. Wycliffe, John, 124, 129, 141.

York, Duke of (James II.), 283. York, siege of, 65, 90. Yorktown, siege of, 352, 377. Young, Edward, 382.





London, 1	Edinburgh, and I	Herriot Hil	l Works,	Glasgow.
	OL AND CO			
Thomson, Scott,	RICHARD II., SEW RICHARD III., SE MERCHART OF V. KING LEAR, SEWCHERNY VIII., SE PARADISE LOST, B FABRY QUEEN, BL SEASONS—SUMMIN. LAY OF THE LAST	wed 9d; clo ENICE, sewe ed 9d; cloth wed 9d; clot ks. I. and II. Er, and Cast MINSTREL,	oth, od 9d; elot oth, ,,&c.,sewe ctoV.sewe rle of Ind , sewed 9d	d 9d; el., l d 9d; el., l olence, l ; eloth, l
SCHOOL	CLASSICS, wit		iction an	d Notes.
Goldsmith,	ANCIENT MARINE LYRICAL BALLAD EXCURSION, BOOK PARADISE LOST, COMUS, PLEASURES OF H ESSAY ON MAN, ESSAY ON CRITIC THE TRAVELLER TASK, BOOKS I. & ODES AND ELECY LADY OF THE LAST THE SEASONS—V SONGS OF THE A	OPE, IISM, AND THE DI nd II., KE, Cantos		
,*	AMMAR AN		POSITIO	N.
PRACTICAL GR. Analysis of Young Schol. Rice. 126 Text-Book of Thomas M Amalysis of	ARY GRAMMAR. 4 AMMAR OF THE E f Sentences, &c. Ar's Spelling AR 5 pp., Fcap. 8vo, o English Compo- lorrison, A. M. Sentences. By Chelsea. Post 8v	MGLISH LAI 144 pp., 18 ND WORD I cloth limp, SITION, WILL 160 pp., Po WALTER I TO, cloth,	NGUAGE, in Smo, cloth, Book. By 9d; cloth, h Exercise st 8vo, clot M'LEOD, I	cluding y. Wm. s. By
		RAPHY	-	
COUNTY GEOGRAPHY for Physical Groce	ography, 64 pp., 1 Modern Geograph Raphies of Engli Raphies of Scottle of Standards IV., 7 Braphy for Standa Physical Geogr	HY, 4 Maps AND AND V AND, J., and VI., LIV., V., and	, 12mo, clo VALES, . New Code LVINew C	.each 0 .each 0

COLLINS' SERIES OF SCHOOL ATLASES.

Carefully Constructed and Engraved from the best and latest Authorities, and Beautifully Printed in Colours, on Superfine Cream Wove Paper.

and Beautifully Printed in Colours, on Superfine Cream Wove Pap	er.	
MODERN GEOGRAPHY—Crown Series. THE PRIMARY ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, 9 inches by 71 inches,	4.	d.
4to, Stiff Wrapper, - THE JUNIOR, OR YOUNG CHILD'S ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps,	0	6
4to, with 16 pp. of Questions on the Maps, in Neat Wrapper, - The Standard School Atlas, consisting of 24 Maps, Crown 4to,	1	0
in Neat Wrapper, The Progressive Atlas, consisting of 32 Maps, 9 inches by 71	1	0
inches, 4to, cloth lettered, THE NATIONAL ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, 4to, with a Copious	2	0
Index, cloth lettered,	2	6
MODERN GEOGRAPHY—Imperial Series.		
THE SELECTED ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, Imperial 4to, 13 by 11 inches, Stiff Cover,	1	6
THE ADVANCED ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, Imperial 4to, cloth lettered.	3	6
THE ACADEMIC ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, Imperial 4to, with a Copious Index, cloth lettered,	5	0
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, and 6 Ancient Maps,	ß	0
with a Copious Index, Imperial 8vo, cloth lettered, - THE COLLEGIATE ATLAS, consisting of 32 Modern, 16 Historical, and 2 Ancient Maps, mounted on Guards, with a Copious Index,	0	U
Imperial 8vo, cloth lettered,	7	6
PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY-Imperial Series.		
THE JUNIOR ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 10 Maps, 13 by 11 inches, Stiff Cover,	· 1	0
THE PORTABLE ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 20 Maps, on Guards, Imperial 8vo, cloth,	2	6
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 20 Maps, with Descriptive Letterpress, by James Bryce, LL,D., Imp. 8vo.	5	0
	•	U
HISTORICAL AND CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY,	_	_
POCKET ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, Imp. 16mo, THE CROWN ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, with	1	6
Letterpress, by Wm. F. Collier, LL.D., Imperial 16mo, cloth, POCKET ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 15 Maps, Imp. 16mo, cl.,	2 1	6
THE CROWN ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 15 Maps, with Letterpress, by Leon. Schmitz, LL.D., Imperial 16mo, cloth,	2	6

SCRIPTURE

THE ATLAS OF SCRIPT on each Map, Stiff

London, Edinh

h Questions

· WOBBELLD

